

HQMC
20 Aug 04

E R R A T U M

to MCO 3501.15

MARINE CORPS, COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM
(SHORT TITLE: MCCRES); VOLUME X PART B, LIGHT ARMORED
RECONNAISSANCE UNITS

1. For administrative purposes, the Publications Control Number (PCN) has been reidentified. Change the PCN "10203354300" to read: "10203362200".

PCN 10203362280



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
WASHINGTON, DC 20380-0001

MCO 3501.15
C 461
14 Oct 94

MARINE CORPS ORDER 3501.15

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS, COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM (SHORT
TITLE: MCCRES); VOLUME X PART B, LIGHT ARMORED
RECONNAISSANCE UNITS

Ref: (a) MCO 3501.1B

Encl: (1) Volume X Part B - Mission Performance Standards
(MPS's) for Light Armored Reconnaissance (LAR) Units

1. Purpose. To promulgate Volume X Part B of MCCRES for use in the training and evaluation of LAR units per reference (a).
2. Information. The reference establishes MCCRES for implementation within the Marine Corps. The enclosure, supported by the policies and procedures set forth in the reference provides the MPS's for use in evaluation of the combat readiness of LAR units to perform combat operations.
3. Action. Commanders will:
 - a. Use the MPS's contained in the enclosure as guidelines for establishing training goals, training programs, and to prepare for formal readiness evaluations as directed by higher headquarters per the reference.
 - b. When appropriate, use the MPS's for informal evaluations, and/or as an inventory to determine a unit's current training status and areas for future progressive training programs.
 - c. Make every effort to conduct evaluations when the unit is participating in their appropriate role as part of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF). This method will strengthen integration efforts and give a more complete evaluation of realistic combat readiness.

MCO 3501.15
14 Oct 94

4. Reserve Applicability. This Order is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.



B. B. KNUTSON, JR.
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10203362200

Copy to: 7000110 (55)
7230004 (30)
7000120 (10)
8145005 (2)
8145001 (1)
7000144 (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>INTRODUCTION</u>	1
 <u>SECTION 10A - LAR BATTALION</u>	
MPS 10A.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL	X-A-1
MPS 10A.2 INTELLIGENCE	X-A-12
MPS 10A.3 MANEUVER	X-A-19
MPS 10A.4 FIRE SUPPORT	X-A-69
MPS 10A.5 MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY	X-A-77
MPS 10A.6 AIR DEFENSE	X-A-93
MPS 10A.7 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	X-A-95
MPS 10A.8 COMMAND POST/H&S COMPANY/TRAINS	X-A-105
 <u>SECTION 10B - LAR COMPANY</u>	
MPS 10B.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL	X-B-1
MPS 10B.2 INTELLIGENCE	X-B-14
MPS 10B.3 MANEUVER	X-B-20
MPS 10B.4 FIRE SUPPORT	X-B-54
MPS 10B.5 IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT (CAS)/CLOSE-IN FIRE SUPPORT (CIFS)	X-B-55
MPS 10B.6 MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY	X-B-61
MPS 10B.7 AIR DEFENSE	X-B-81
MPS 10B.8 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	X-B-85
 <u>SECTION 10C - LAR SCOUT PLATOON</u>	
MPS 10C.1 COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS	X-C-1
MPS 10C.2 INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE	X-C-11
MPS 10C.3 MANEUVER	X-C-16
MPS 10C.4 MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY	X-C-32
MPS 10C.5 AIR DEFENSE	X-C-43
MPS 10C.6 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	X-C-45
 <u>SECTION 10D - MORTAR PLATOON/SECTION</u>	
MPS 10D.1 FIRE AND MOVEMENT	X-D-1
MPS 10D.3 MOVE	X-D-1
MPS 10D.4 SHOOT	X-D-5

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10D.5	. . . . .	X-D-19
	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	
MPS 10D.6	. . . . .	X-D-28
	SUSTAIN	
MPS 10D.7	. . . . .	X-D-44
	NBC	

SECTION 10E - (AT) TOW PLATOON/SECTION

MPS 10E.1	. . . . .	X-E-1
	MANEUVER	
MPS 10E.2	. . . . .	X-E-11
	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	
MPS 10E.3	. . . . .	X-E-16
	SUSTAINMENT	
MPS 10E.4	. . . . .	X-E-25
	NBC	

ENCLOSURE (1)

VOLUME X PART B

MISSION PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

LAR UNITS

INTRODUCTION

This MCCRES is divided into five sections: section A contains the LAR battalion tasks, section B contains the LAR company tasks, section C contains the LAR scout platoon tasks, section D contains the mortar platoon tasks, and section E contains the AT(Tow) platoon/section tasks.

MCCRES MPS's establish the minimum acceptable standards to properly execute the LAR communities basic missions. Fundamental to the mission of the LAR community is the battalion's ability to execute standard tactical missions listed in the mission performance standards table of contents. The tasks and standards within the MPS's are derived from doctrine, tactics, techniques and procedures, Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) elements and recommendations from Marine Commands.

The MCCRES and its MPS's have been developed with the goal of enhancing the training readiness of Marine Corps units. The system endeavors to accomplish this by developing a comprehensive series of MPS's for all functional areas of the MAGTF. The MPS's, tasks and standards, attempt to cover the basic missions a LAR unit is expected to perform in combat. The MCCRES is not an end "in and of itself" but a basis from which to prepare for "fighting smart" in accordance with FMFM 1. It is understood that only a certain number of these elements can be evaluated during any one exercise. Available training areas, environmental restrictions, units to be supported, external support, time, and scenario will influence the number of MCCRES MPS's that can be evaluated. However, a series of exercises based upon evaluation objectives derived from a viable unit training program should expand the number of MCCRES tasks to be evaluated and assist in assessing a unit's overall combat readiness. Opportunities should be sought to evaluate those standards not evaluated in a given recent exercise. Keeping this in mind will help avoid the problem of going year after year with certain areas repeatedly not being evaluated.

It is preferred that a LAR unit be evaluated as part of a MAGTF in the field. Herein, the role of LAR unit commanders is critical. Dynamic leadership and the unit's proficiency in executing their tactical missions will be the basis for a successful demonstration of combat readiness.

Tasks are evaluated using the "90 percent rule". This rule allows the evaluator to score a "YES", when based on his observation the unit/element attempted and successfully met the standard's criteria at least 90 percent of the time. See the current edition of MCO 3501.1.

EVALUATOR

MCCRES MPS's for LAR units presupposes that personnel and logistics support are sufficient to meet minimum acceptable standards; but it is acknowledged that sufficient people, supplies, and equipment are not always available. The unit is not penalized if they cannot attempt all the standards. When such external factors contribute to limiting a unit's combat readiness, it should be noted in the "COMMENTS" column of an evaluation sheet and recorded in the overall evaluation report.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.15
14 Oct 94

SECTION 10A
LAR BATTALION

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10A.1 - COMMAND AND CONTROL</u>	
TASK 10A.1.1	X-A-1
ESTABLISH/CONTROL BATTALION COMMUNICATION NETS	
TASK 10A.1.2	X-A-2
FACILITATE MOVEMENT FOR FRIENDLY UNITS	
TASK 10A.1.3	X-A-3
PREPARE/ISSUE AN OPERATIONS ORDER	
TASK 10A.1.4	X-A-5
CONDUCT REHEARSALS	
TASK 10A.1.5	X-A-7
GAIN/MAINTAIN CONTACT WITH A FRIENDLY UNIT AT BATTALION LEVEL	
TASK 10A.1.6	X-A-8
PROCESS TACTICAL INFORMATION	
TASK 10A.1.7	X-A-10
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	
<u>MPS 10A.2 - INTELLIGENCE</u>	
TASK 10A.2.1	X-A-12
CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF BATTLEFIELD (IPB)	
TASK 10A.2.2	X-A-13
DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	
TASK 10A.2.3	X-A-14
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIAL	
TASK 10A.2.4	X-A-15
PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	
TASK 10A.2.5	X-A-17
PROCESS PRISONERS OF WAR	
<u>MPS 10A.3 - MANEUVER</u>	
TASK 10A.3.1	X-A-19
CONDUCT ZONE RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10A.3.2	X-A-20
CONDUCT AREA RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10A.3.3	X-A-21
OCCUPY A BATTALION ASSEMBLY AREA	
TASK 10A.3.4	X-A-24
CONDUCT A ROAD MARCH	
TASK 10A.3.5	X-A-27
CONDUCT A STATIONARY GUARD	
TASK 10A.3.6	X-A-29
CONDUCT A MOVING FLANK GUARD	
TASK 10A.3.7	X-A-30
CONDUCT A MOVING REAR/ADVANCE GUARD	
TASK 10A.3.8	X-A-32
CONDUCT A MOVING SCREEN	
TASK 10A.3.9	X-A-34
CONDUCT A STATIONARY SCREEN	
TASK 10A.3.10	X-A-36
DEFEND	
TASK 10A.3.11	X-A-37
CONDUCT A BATTALION DELAY	
TASK 10A.3.12	X-A-39
CONDUCT A WITHDRAWAL	
TASK 10A.3.13	X-A-41
CONDUCT A MOVEMENT TO CONTACT	
TASK 10A.3.14	X-A-43
CONDUCT A HASTY ATTACK	
TASK 10A.3.15	X-A-45
BYPASS AN ENEMY/FRIENDLY POSITION AT BATTALION LEVEL	
TASK 10A.3.16	X-A-46
CONDUCT A RAID	

TASK 10A.3.17	. . . . .	X-A-48
	CONDUCT A BREAKOUT FROM ENCIRCLEMENT	
TASK 10A.3.18	. . . . .	X-A-50
	CONSOLIDATE ON A BATTALION OBJECTIVE/ POSITION	
TASK 10A.3.19	. . . . .	X-A-51
	CONDUCT A LINKUP	
TASK 10A.3.20	. . . . .	X-A-53
	FILL A GAP	
TASK 10A.3.21	. . . . .	X-A-54
	CONDUCT A REARWARD PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10A.3.22	. . . . .	X-A-57
	ASSIST A REARWARD PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10A.3.23	. . . . .	X-A-60
	CONDUCT A FORWARD PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10A.3.24	. . . . .	X-A-62
	ASSIST A FORWARD PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10A.3.25	. . . . .	X-A-65
	CONDUCT A RELIEF	

MPS 10A.4 - FIRE SUPPORT

TASK 10A.4.1	. . . . .	X-A-69
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING	
TASK 10A.4.2	. . . . .	X-A-71
	FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.4.3	. . . . .	X-A-72
	EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES	
TASK 10A.4.4	. . . . .	X-A-73
	EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE	
TASK 10A.4.5	. . . . .	X-A-74
	PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT	
TASK 10A.4.6	. . . . .	X-A-75
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION ASHORE	

MPS 10A.5 - MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK 10A.5.1	. . . . .	X-A-77
	CONDUCT IN-STRIDE BREACH OF AN OBSTACLE	
TASK 10A.5.2	. . . . .	X-A-79
	CONDUCT A HASTY RIVER/GAP CROSSING	
TASK 10A.5.3	. . . . .	X-A-81
	REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10A.5.4	. . . . .	X-A-83
	REACT TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10A.5.5	. . . . .	X-A-85
	CONDUCT DELIBERATE DECONTAMINATION	
TASK 10A.5.6	. . . . .	X-A-86
	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	
TASK 10A.5.7	. . . . .	X-A-87
	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	
TASK 10A.5.8	. . . . .	X-A-88
	COORDINATE NBC OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.5.9	. . . . .	X-A-91
	COORDINATE ENGINEER SUPPORT	

MPS 10A.6 - AIR DEFENSE

TASK 10A.6.1	. . . . .	X-A-93
	COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE SUPPORT	

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10A. 7 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK 10A.7.1	. . . . .	X-A-95
	COORDINATE LOGISTICAL PACKAGES	
TASK 10A.7.2	. . . . .	X-A-96
	REORGANIZE ON A BATTALION OBJECTIVE POSITION	
TASK 10A.7.3	. . . . .	X-A-98
	COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION OF PRISONERS OF WAR	
TASK 10A.7.4	. . . . .	X-A-99
	CONDUCT STRENGTH ACCOUNTING	
TASK 10A.7.5	. . . . .	X-A-100
	PROCESS REPLACEMENTS	
TASK 10A.7.6	. . . . .	X-A-102
	COORDINATE VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT RECOVERY TO THE UMCP	
TASK 10A.7.7	. . . . .	X-A-103
	MAINTAIN EQUIPMENT LOSS STATUS	
TASK 10A.7.8	. . . . .	X-A-104
	COORDINATE EVACUATION OF CASUALTIES	

MPS 10A.8 - COMMAND POST/H&S COMPANY/TRAINS

TASK 10A.8.1	. . . . .	X-A-105
	RECONNOITER A TRAINS SITE	
TASK 10A.8.2	. . . . .	X-A-107
	MOVE INTO A TRAINS SITE	
TASK 10A.8.3	. . . . .	X-A-109
	CONDUCT A TAILGATE STATION RESUPPLY	
TASK 10A.8.4	. . . . .	X-A-110
	CONDUCT SERVICE STATION RESUPPLY	
TASK 10A.8.5	. . . . .	X-A-112
	CONDUCT A QUARTERING PARTY	
TASK 10A.8.6	. . . . .	X-A-114
	EVACUATE CASUALTIES	
TASK 10A.8.7	. . . . .	X-A-115
	EMPLACE CHEMICAL AGENT ALARMS	
TASK 10A.8.8	. . . . .	X-A-116
	EMPLACE A HASTY MINEFIELD	
TASK 10A.8.9	. . . . .	X-A-118
	REMOVE A HASTY MINEFIELD	
TASK 10A.8.10	. . . . .	X-A-119
	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE	
TASK 10A.8.11	. . . . .	X-A-120
	REACT TO AIR ATTACK (PASSIVE)	
TASK 10A.8.12	. . . . .	X-A-121
	REACT TO AIR ATTACK (ACTIVE)	
TASK 10A.8.13	. . . . .	X-A-122
	RECONNOITER A BATTALION CP SITE	
TASK 10A.8.14	. . . . .	X-A-123
	OCCUPY A BATTALION CP SITE	
TASK 10A.8.15	. . . . .	X-A-125
	MOVE THE BATTALION CP	
TASK 10A.8.16	. . . . .	X-A-127
	DEPART A TRAINS SITE	
TASK 10A.8.17	. . . . .	X-A-128
	EMPLOY OPSEC MEASURES	
TASK 10A.8.18	. . . . .	X-A-129
	ESTABLISH THE COMBAT TRAINS CP	
TASK 10A.8.19	. . . . .	X-A-130
	MOVE BY INFILTRATION	
TASK 10A.8.20	. . . . .	X-A-132
	CONDUCT VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE	
TASK 10A.8.21	. . . . .	X-A-133
	REACT TO GROUND ATTACK	

10A.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL

TASK: 10A.1.1 ESTABLISH/CONTROL BATTALION COMMUNICATIONS NETS

CONDITION(S): The battalion is moving or stationary in a tactical environment. CEOIs and an SOP have been issued.

STANDARDS: EVAL: T: N: NE

- .1 ____ Battalion staff sections use the CEOI to determine and post call signs, frequencies, passwords, and other coded data.
 - a. Post CEOI data where it can be seen by the radio operators.
 - b. Post CEOI data for the next 24 hours.
- .2 ____ Section radio operators set up wire communications.
- .3 ____ Battalion radio operators set radio frequencies and TSEC/KY57 on assigned radio nets and change frequencies at the proper time as determined by the CEOI and SOP.
 - a. Direct lower units when to change frequency (if not specified in SOP).
 - b. Ensure higher units make net call after frequency changes.
- .4 ____ Battalion staff sections open internal command and tactical nets.
 - a. Operators make net calls and receive acknowledgment from appropriate stations.
 - b. Operators tell unauthorized operators to leave the nets.
- .5 ____ Battalion staff sections open external command and tactical nets and battalion logistics net.
- .6 ____ NCOICs and OICs receive and issue orders and reports from higher, lower, and supporting elements.
 - a. Use secure equipment.
 - b. Are prepared to encode and decode messages if secure equipment fails or is unavailable.
 - c. Process reports and messages LAW traffic precedence.
- .7 ____ Prepare, post, and close daily journal.
 - a. Write legibly and in chronological order all messages received and transmitted.
 - b. Open journals at 0001 hours and close at 2400 hours local.
 - c. Maintain closed journals in historical files.
- .8 ____ Close all nets as required.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Battalion nets are controlled by using priority of traffic and requesting unauthorized users leave the net. CEOI call signs and frequencies are used at all times. Operators use correct radio procedures at all times. Secure equipment is utilized when available. Information is received and disseminated to higher and subordinate units accurately and quickly. All messages are logged in a journal.

TASK: 10A.1.2 FACILITATE MOVEMENT FOR FRIENDLY UNITS

CONDITION(S): Higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to assist a ground combat element in moving from its present location to the higher headquarters main area of effort. Significant battlefield debris may be present. The battalion has received information from the higher headquarters and other sources on general routes, friendly and enemy activity, battlefield clutter, minefields, and residue.

STANDARDS: EVAL: T; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the moving unit.
 - a. Coordinate general movement routes.
 - b. Exchange frequencies and call signs.
 - c. Exchange information concerning friendly and enemy activity.
 - d. Coordinate type and location of minefields.
 - e. Coordinate location of DPICM residue.
- .2 ____ Battalion concurrently performs reconnaissance of the primary and alternate route(s) and AAs.
 - a. Reconnoiters from the moving unit's SP to BP.
 - b. Establish TCPs at critical points.
 - c. Post temporary road signs to regulate, guide and control movement along the route.
 - d. Performs a subsequent area reconnaissance of an attack position if tasked.
 - e. Reports route information continuously to follow-on elements.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander and staff finalize movement plan with the moving unit.
 - a. Specify travel time from SP to RP.
 - b. Specify numbers of routes required or available.
 - c. Specify deployment times.
 - d. Identify locations of all TCPs routes, and passage lanes.
 - e. Identify location of CSS assets to assist with maintenance and medical operations, if necessary.
 - f. Coordinate traffic control, area responsibilities, air defense, communications, and fire support.
- .4 ____ Battalion assists the moving unit.
 - a. Provides guides, if necessary.
 - b. TCP personnel or guides direct moving unit vehicles along the route, through minefields, and around obstacles, if necessary.
 - c. TCP personnel and guides report enemy interference, engineer problems on the routes, and disruption in movement at critical points.
 - d. Maintain visual contact with the moving unit.
 - e. TCP personnel and guides report when moving unit reaches RP.
- .5 ____ Battalion transitions into its follow-on mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion establishes traffic control points (TCPs) at critical points along the route and provides guides to the moving unit. The battalion assists the moving unit across the battlefield so the moving unit progresses from the SP to the RP and retains its freedom of maneuver.

TASK: 10A. 1.3 PREPARE/ISSUE AN OPERATIONS ORDER

CONDITION(S): Given a battalion staff, a special staff and a tactical headquarters area that allows space for planning and writing. Battalion commander has received an order from higher headquarters and has developed a tactical mission plan. Battalion is conducting troop-leading procedures.

STANDARDS: EVAL: T: N: NE

- .1 ____ S3 section prepares the OPORD heading.
 - a. Classifies the order (secret, unclassified and so forth)
 - b. Indicates whether changes to oral orders have been made.
 - c. Identifies the copy number (such as copy 2 of 15)
 - d. Designates unit issuing the order
 - e. Identifies place of issue
 - f. Specifies date-time group.
 - g. Identifies message reference number.
 - h. Identifies OPORD number.
 - i. Lists references to include maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the order.
 - j. Designates time zone.
 - k. Designates task organization.
- .2 ____ S3 and S2 sections prepare the situation paragraph (para 1).
 - a. S2 provides enemy forces information to include composition, disposition, morale, estimated strength, and enemy capabilities and probable courses of action.
 - b. S3 section prepares friendly forces paragraph to include division mission statement, and adjacent, supporting and reinforcing units.
 - c. S3 section identifies attachments and detachments.
- .3 ____ S3 states the mission (para 2).
- .4 ____ S3 prepares the execution paragraph (para 3).
 - a. States the commander's concept of the operation.
 - b. Describes the scheme of maneuver, which includes maneuver element missions and detailed movement instructions
 - c. The FSC and S3 prepare a fire support plan that supports the scheme of maneuver.

- d. S3 and engineer officer (if available) prepare an obstacle plan that includes mobility, countermobility, and survivability task priorities.
 - a. Identifies specific missions and tasks for each subordinate unit.
 - f. Specifies necessary coordinating instructions.
- .5 ____ S4 prepares CSS paragraph (para 4), which supports the scheme of maneuver.
- a. Identifies locations and proposed locations of combat trains, field trains, MSR, and LRPs.
 - b. Designates status of each class of supply, maintenance and times and methods of resupply.
- .6 ____ Communications officer and S3 prepare command and signal paragraph (para 5).
- a. Identify initial locations of battalion commander and CPs.
 - b. Designate succession of command.
 - c. Specify all CEOI data and alternate or emergency signals.
- .7 ____ S3 section prepares the ending.
- a. Specifies time by which recipients must acknowledge.
 - b. Includes commander or designated representative signature.
 - c. Includes authentication, when appropriate.
 - d. Designates distribution.
- .8 ____ Staff members submit annexes, when necessary, to the S3 section for inclusion in the order.
- .9 ____ Battalion commander and staff issues OPORD to the command group.
- a. S3 assembles all subordinate units at the time and place specified by the battalion commander.
 - b. Company commanders are provided, as a minimum, a copy of the graphics and an execution matrix, but preferably a written order.
- .10 ____ Battalion staff and company commanders effect last minute coordination after the briefing.
- a. Battalion commander issues any changes to the order through a FRAGO.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The order addresses who, what, when, where, and how the mission is conducted and time permitting, is written in OPORD format. Graphic overlays and supporting material are completed prior to issue of order.

TASK: 10A.1.4 CONDUCT REHEARSALS

CONDITION(S): For reconnaissance, security and offensive operations, unit is in an AA. For defensive operations, it is in a BP or an AA. Enemy contact is not likely. Unit leader has received an OPORD from higher headquarters. The OPDRD specifies the operation's start time. The unit leader has conducted backward planning to allow time for rehearsals, field expedient materials are available to construct a terrain model for area of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander selects one or more type of rehearsal.
 - a. Selects full-up dry run.
 - b. Selects scaled-down dry run.
 - c. Selects leader walk-through over actual terrain.
 - d. Selects leader walk-through using a terrain model
 - e. Selects CPX.
 - f. Selects talk-through using an operation map.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander develops a rehearsal plan.
 - a. Determines rehearsal start and end times.
 - b. Determines primary tasks to be rehearsed.
 - c. Determines rehearsal location.
 - d. Determines assignment of missions to subordinate leaders so they may initiate lower-echelon rehearsals.
- .3 ____ NCOIC supervises construction of a field-expedient model of the area of operations if a terrain model is required.
 - a. Shows major terrain features (hills, roads, and so forth).
 - b. Shows obstacles (existing and reinforcing).
 - c. Shows graphic control measures to be used during the mission.
 - d. Shows location of known or suspected enemy elements.
 - e. Shows location of friendly support elements.
 - f. Shows markers for each platoon and vehicle.
 - g. Unit leader rehearses key personnel using a terrain model or map.
 - h. Orients personnel to terrain model or map.
 - i. Reviews the OPORD.
- .4 ____ Demonstrates (using markers or graphic control symbols) the unit's scheme of maneuver and actions at critical points.
- .5 ____ Battalion commander focuses the rehearsal on critical events and tasks that will take place during the operation if there is not time to rehearse the entire operation.
 - a. Rehearses breaching an obstacle.
 - b. Rehearses actions on the objective
 - c. Rehearses passage of lines.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- .6 ____ Battalion rehearses one or more of the listed actions if unit leader directs a full-up or scaled-down dry run of a defensive mission.
- a. Rehearses vehicle movement from hide to turret-down and hull-down firing positions.
 - b. Rehearses fire distribution and control.
 - c. Rehearses displacement (covered and not covered) of subsequent BPs.
 - d. Rehearses passage of a covering force.
 - e. Rehearses battle handover.
- .7 ____ Rehearses one or more of the listed actions if unit leader selects to conduct a full-up or scaled-down dry run of an offensive or movement mission.
- a. Rehearses movement into and out of tactical formations.
 - b. Rehearses fire and maneuver.
 - c. Rehearses actions on contact.
 - d. Rehearses actions on the objective (to include consolidation and reorganization).
 - e. Rehearses breaching activities.
 - f. Rehearses interface with adjacent and supporting units.
- .8 ____ Rehearses one or more of the listed actions if unit leader directs a full-up or scaled-down dry run of a reconnaissance or security mission.
- a. Rehearses movement to and from area, zone, or route.
 - b. Rehearses key terrain and routes to be reconnoitered.
 - c. Rehearses screen and guard activities.
 - d. Rehearses actions on contact.
- .9 ____ Battalion commander conducts an AAR.
- a. Reviews critical events.
 - b. Critiques subordinate units.
 - c. Obtains feedback from subordinates.
 - d. Modifies operations plan to reflect lessons learned during rehearsal.
- .10 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters.
- a. States completion of rehearsals.
 - b. States operation plan changes initiated at his level.
 - c. Recommends changes to higher headquarter's operation plan.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Rehearsals are conducted prior to the operation start time stated in OPORD. Unit leader orients personnel to map or terrain and demonstrates the unit's scheme and actions at critical points. AAR identifies and corrects mistakes.

TASK: 10A.1.5 GAIN/MAINTAIN CONTACT WITH A FRIENDLY UNIT AT
BATTALION LEVEL

CONDITION(S): Enemy tactical operations, NBC, or intense conventional fire strikes have severely disrupted the battalion commander's ability to see the battlefield through normal subordinate echelons of command. A mass casualty situation is present at one or more subordinate levels. The situation is critical. Enemy contact is possible and the terrain must be held. The higher headquarters ordered the battalion to locate cut-off or disrupted units and restore communications. The OPORD specifies the route, area or zone to be searched, the line of departure, and the limit of advance or objective.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan for operation.
- a. Task organize as if conducting a zone or area reconnaissance or movement to contact.
 - b. Select an appropriate formation based on likelihood of enemy contact and terrain.
 - c. Select a movement technique based on likelihood of enemy contact.
 - d. Determine last known location of subordinate unit.
 - e. If location covers a single area, commander divides it into company zones.
 - f. If location covers multiple areas (more than one subordinate unit), commander assigns a company to each area.
 - g. Plan for bypassing of obstacles and enemy, as necessary.
- .2 ____ Battalion moves to the area(s).
- a. Moves to and crosses the LD.
 - b. Moves rapidly to the area(s).
 - c. Reports and bypasses enemy or obstacles encountered en route.
 - d. Uses covered and concealed routes, if possible.
- .3 ____ Battalion reconnoiters area and locates the subordinate unit(s).
- a. Reconnoiters forward and to the flanks to cover as much ground as possible and to provide early warning.
 - b. Reports location of any element of subordinate unit.
 - c. Continues search until subordinate unit commander or CP is located or directed by higher headquarters to end search.
 - d. Reports subordinate unit's situation to battalion headquarters.
- .4 ____ Battalion restores temporary communication links.
- a. Functions as a radio relay station.
 - b. Provides messenger and LNO functions if radio communication is not possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Battalion and company gains contact and restores communication by locating the commander or CP of the subordinate unit(s). Establishes and maintains temporary communication links between the subordinate units and with higher headquarters until normal communication channels are restored.

TASK: 10A.1.6 PROCESS TACTICAL INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The main CP has received a spot report or dispatch from a subordinate unit and/or acquired significant tactical information while either monitoring the battalion intelligence net or conducting combat operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Subordinate units report raw tactical information to higher headquarters.
 - a. Use secure net, if available.
 - b. Use coding procedures or courier if nets are not secure.
 - c. Use courier if communications are damaged.
- .2 ____ CP records information received.
 - a. Records time of receipt.
 - b. Records method of transmission.
 - c. Records unit making the report and its location.
 - d. Records enemy location and size.
 - e. Records enemy direction of travel and actions.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander and staff process raw information to determine its tactical significance on current mission.
 - a. Evaluate information to determine impact on situation within unit.
 - b. Correlate new information with existing information to determine trends in enemy activities.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander and staff analyze intelligence data received from higher headquarters.
 - a. Determine impact on current mission.
 - b. Revise essential elements of information.
 - c. Analyze information to assess enemy's current dispositions, capabilities and probable courses of action.
 - d. Analyze the situation or enemy activity impact on unit.
- .5 ____ CP updates SITMAP to reflect current location of friendly forces.
 - a. Updates friendly unit locations.
 - b. Updates enemy situation.
 - c. Updates and refines graphic control measures.

- .6 ____ CP displays essential situational information.
- a. Includes enemy strengths, weaknesses, personnel, and equipment by type.
 - b. Includes PIR and OIR.
 - c. Includes lists of critical indicators.
 - d. Displays weather data.
 - e. Displays time of message.
- .7 ____ CP posts the information for easy reference.
- a. Posts likely enemy positions.
 - b. Posts likely air and ground AAs.
 - c. Posts key terrain.
 - d. Posts natural and manmade obstacles.
 - e. Posts current weather forecasts.
 - f. Posts current light tables.
 - g. Posts PIR and OIR Listings.
- .8 ____ S3 supervises updating SITMAPs, information displays, and journals.
- a. Displays maneuver unit locations and C2 graphics.
 - b. Displays maneuver task organization for combat.
 - c. Displays maneuver unit activity and commander's assessment.
 - d. Displays maneuver unit critical shortages of class III and V.
 - e. Displays maneuver unit weapons status.
- .9 ____ CP disseminates critical tactical information to subordinate units.
- a. Uses secure net, if available.
 - b. Uses courier if communications have been interrupted.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit records and analyzes tactical intelligence received from higher headquarters. Updates the SITMAP to reflect location of friendly and enemy forces, terrain conditions, essential situational information, and easy reference information. Disseminates information to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.

TASK: 10A.1.7 CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES

CONDITION(S): The battalion commander has received an order from higher headquarters directing the battalion to conduct a tactical operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander initiates process using troop leading procedures.
 - a. Reviews OPORD with key staff members.
 - b. Exchanges information.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff conduct preliminary METT-TSL analysis.
 - a. Identify mission and tasks and purpose.
 - b. Identify enemy unit, size and type.
 - c. Identify area of operation, whether movement is required, and time it starts.
 - d. Identify all attachments and detachments.
 - e. Schedule time available for planning and issuing orders using one third/two-third rule.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander issues planning guidance to his staff.
 - a. States his intentions.
 - b. Directs possible courses of action to be analyzed.
 - c. Determines what critical intelligence and information is needed from higher headquarters, his staff and reconnaissance.
 - d. Directs scouts to begin reconnaissance, if necessary.
- .4 ____ Battalion staff prepares warning order.
 - a. Identifies the tactical situation, to include enemy situation and probable missions.
 - b. Identifies attachments and detachments.
 - c. Identifies earliest time of movement.
 - d. Identifies nature and timer of operation in sufficient detail to allow preparation and prioritization of tasks.
 - e. Identifies time and place of OPDRD.
 - f. Identifies administrative and logistic movement that may direct movement to AAs.
- .5 ____ Battalion staff issues warning order.
 - a. Issues warning order either orally or as a written order.
 - b. Begins with the words "Warning Order."
 - c. Ensures acknowledgment of order.
- .6 ____ Battalion commander directs subordinate units to begin preliminary actions.
 - a. Ensures leaders initiate their reconnaissance.
 - b. Ensures subordinate unit performs precombat checks.
 - c. Ensures necessary administrative and logistical actions are performed.

- .7 ____ Battalion staff develops a tentative plan.
- a. Analyzes the mission to identify specified and implied tasks.
 - b. Restates the mission.
 - c. S2 section continues IPB process.
 - d. Prepares estimates and provides requested facts and recommendations.
 - e. S3 section develops tentative courses of action based on the commander's guidance and staff estimates.
 - f. S3 war-games and compares courses of action, in conjunction with other staff and special staff members.
 - g. Commander selects or modifies courses of action and gives concept of the operation.
- .8 ____ Battalion commander directs battalion to begin movement.
- a. Initiates administrative movements or preparations.
 - b. Alerts battalion of REDCON status.
 - c. Task organizes battalion, if necessary.
- .9 ____ Battalion staff and subordinate unit leaders conduct reconnaissance.
- a. Move to site of operation(s), if possible.
 - b. Evaluate terrain to determine feasibility of plan.
 - c. Conduct specific reconnaissance mission directed by battalion commander.
 - d. Conduct detailed map reconnaissance if movement is not possible.
- .10 ____ Battalion staff completes the plan.
- a. Examines latest reconnaissance and intelligence data.
 - b. Receives input from subordinate unit Leaders.
 - c. Revises plan to reflect changes.
 - d. Plans details of the operation(s).
 - e. Identifies and requests requirements for additional support.
 - f. Compensates for disadvantages of selected course of action.
 - g. Develops contingency plans.
 - h. Coordinates with subordinate, adjacent and higher headquarters.
 - i. Develops overlays and execution matrix.
- .11 ____ Battalion commander implements and refines the plan.
- a. Supervises preparations to include coordination, reorganization, fire support, engineer activities, maintenance, resupply, and movement.
 - b. Identifies necessary changes based on subordinate unit leader's detailed planning or significant changes to METT-TSL.

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion's mission and all specified and implied tasks are identified. A warning order is prepared and issued. Courses of action are identified, compared, selected, and modified. A tactical plan is developed and implemented.

10A.2 INTELLIGENCE

TASK: 10A.2.1 CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF BATTLEFIELD (IPB)

CONDITION(S): The battalion commander has directed the command estimate process for an area of potential employment. The S2 section has been given the area of operation, terrain data, weather data, enemy data, and an updated intelligence summary from higher headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Section chief performs battlefield area evaluation (BAE).
 - a. Identifies commander's area of operations from OPDRD.
 - b. Displays area of operations on overlay.
 - c. Recommends the area of interest (AOI) to the commander.
 - d. Displays the AOI on overlay based on commander's decision.
 - e. Recommends PIR to the battalion commander.
- .2 ____ Section member performs terrain analysis.
 - a. Requests data as needed from higher headquarters.
 - b. Determines mobility corridors.
 - c. Identifies friendly and enemy avenues of approach.
 - d. Analyzes avenues of approach.
 - e. Develops course(s) of action.
- .3 ____ Section chief performs weather analysis.
 - a. Places multiple weather overlays over multiple terrain overlays (if more than one is developed) to determine if weather information will affect the avenues of approach and mobility corridors.
 - b. Develops a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO) using products of BAE, terrain analysis, and weather analysis.
- .4 ____ Section member performs threat evaluation.
 - a. Identifies threat forces expected to be found in the area of operations and AOI as well as their capabilities.
 - b. Develops applicable doctrinal templates for threat forces.
- .5 ____ Section chief performs threat integration.

- a. Develops situation templates based on obstacles, terrain, weather, known enemy positions, and doctrinal templates.
- b. War-games enemy courses of action and determines most probable course of action.
- c. Develops event template that includes NAI and time phase lines (TPL).
- d. Prepares an event analysis matrix.
- e. Develops decision support templates.
- f. Participates with the staff in developing the decision support template which depicts TAI's to the commander.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The S2 section conducts an IPB, incorporating all useful intelligence and combat information; assesses significant battlefield events and enemy actions by war-gaming the enemy's probable courses of action; and makes all information available to the battalion commander and his staff.

TASK: 10A.2.2 DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The S2 section has received intelligence information that must be processed and disseminated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S2 section processes incoming intelligence data.
 - a. Compares incoming data with intelligence estimate.
 - b. Determines validity of incoming data.
 - c. Analyzes information and intelligence.
 - d. Disseminates routine intelligence products to higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ S2 section determines the impact of new information on operations.
 - a. Compares incoming data with friendly unit information posted on S3 operations map.
 - b. Compares incoming operation information and intelligence received from higher headquarters to determine the impact on close operations within the next 24 hours.
 - c. Disseminates routine intelligence products to higher headquarters.
- .3 ____ S2 section disseminates combat information within the main CP.
 - a. Ensures the S3, FSC, other staff sections, and all separate elements within the main CP receive a copy of pertinent combat information reports.
 - b. Disseminates highly perishable combat information immediately after receipt.
 - c. Disseminates all other combat information within 5 minutes of receipt.
- .4 ____ S2 section disseminates combat intelligence outside of main CP.
 - a. Disseminates CP intelligence assessments to higher headquarters in appropriate format by most expeditious means available.

- b. Disseminates intelligence to all subordinate elements within the battalion in the form of an INTSUM.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The intelligence information must be disseminated and must, as a minimum, disseminate intelligence information within the CP and outside the CP as quickly as possible using the most expeditious and secure means.

TASK: 10A.2.3 PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIAL

CONDITION(S): Enemy documents or materiel have been captured. The capturing unit has secured the captured documents or materiel and has analyzed them for immediate intelligence value. The unit leader has reported the capture of the documents or materiel and has requested disposition from the battalion.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S2 section coordinates with capturing unit to determine if documents or materiel will be evacuated or destroyed.
 - a. Determines location and type of captured materiel.
 - b. Obtains a general description of documents or materiel.
 - c. Classifies materiel as sensitive or specialized equipment or routine equipment.
 - d. Determines potential intelligence value of captured documents or materiel.
 - e. If documents or materiel contain little intelligence value or cannot be evacuated due to the tactical situation, S2 initiates evacuation procedures.
 - f. If documents or materiel are to be evacuated, S2 initiates evacuation procedures.
- .2 ____ S2 section coordinates with the capturing unit to ensure it has tagged documents or materiel.
 - a. Annotates type of document or materiel.
 - b. Annotates date and time of capture.
 - c. Annotates place of capture.
 - d. Annotates circumstances of capture.
- .3 ____ S4 section coordinates evacuation of documents or materiel with capturing unit.
 - a. Specifies where documents or materiel will be picked up.
 - b. Specifies when pickup will take place.
 - c. Specifies how evacuation will be accomplished.
- .4 ____ S2 section receives documents or materiel.
 - a. Analyzes them to determine effect on current battalion mission.
 - b. Processes intelligence information.
- .5 ____ S2 and S4 sections coordinate evacuation of documents or materiel to the intelligence collection point.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- a. S2 secures documents or materiel until they are evacuated.
- b. S2 section designates a messenger to transport intelligence-critical documents to the intelligence collection point.
- c. S4 section directs the transportation of sensitive or specialized equipment to the higher headquarters intelligence collection point.
- d. S4 section prioritizes evacuation so that NBC and signal equipment are evacuated first, then weapon and command and control systems.
- e. S4 sections prepares turn-in documentation for routine captured equipment.
- f. S4 section coordinates transportation of routine captured materiel to the higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Documents and materiel are tagged and secured until evacuated through chain of command to higher headquarters intelligence personnel. If captured materiel cannot be evacuated, it is photographed and destroyed in accordance with higher headquarters disposition instructions.

TASK: 10A.2.4 PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The S2 section has observed an event or received a report, message, or captured document of potential intelligence value. Information processing must be done under all battlefield conditions.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S2 section records the information in the intelligence journal and workbook.
 - a. Logs the message, report, or event in a clear, concise manner.
 - b. Notes sender of report.
 - c. Notes times of receipt or dispatch and method of transmission.
 - d. Notes action taken as a result of a message or event, to include dissemination of reports or where information has been filed.
- .2 ____ S2 section posts and identifies information to the SITMAP.
 - a. Posts enemy unit identification.
 - b. Posts enemy disposition and situation.
 - c. Posts time of information.
 - d. Identifies and posts boundaries.
 - e. Posts major roads or trails for movement of personnel, weapons, and equipment.
 - f. Posts CP locations.
 - g. Posts and identifies NBC contaminated areas.
 - h. Posts locations of weapons, obstacles, and ground surveillance devices.
 - i. Posts aircraft staging areas, landing zones, and drop zones.

- .3 ____ S2 section prepares a SITMAP overlay.
 - a. Depicts enemy fortifications.
 - b. Depicts potential nuclear targets.
 - c. Depicts destruction of bridges.
 - d. Depicts order of battle information.
 - e. Depicts friendly reconnaissance patrols.
 - f. Depicts surveillance activities.
 - g. Depicts enemy obstacles and minefields.

- .4 ____ S2 section creates a reference file.
 - a. Includes data not of immediate interest, but of potential future interest.
 - b. Cross-indexes data.

- .5 ____ S2 section updates the order of battle data base to ensure it contains current information.
 - a. Updates composition with current information.
 - b. Updates disposition with current information.
 - c. Updates strength with current information.
 - d. Updates tactical information with current information.
 - e. Updates logistical information with current information.
 - f. Evaluates and updates combat effectiveness with current information.
 - g. Updates electronic technical data with current information.
 - h. Updates training with current information.
 - i. Updates miscellaneous requirements with current information.

- .6 ____ S2 section evaluates the information to determine its usefulness.
 - a. Determines tentative reliability.
 - b. Determines tentative credibility.

- .7 ____ S2 section analyzes the information to determine its intelligence value.
 - a. Searches existing files for corresponding information.
 - b. Sorts the evaluated information with respect to mission and operations command.
 - c. Relates the information to the mission.
 - d. Formulates and tests a hypothesis of enemy activities or the influence of operational area characteristics on the mission.
 - e. Formulates conclusions based on available information on enemy situations, disposition, and probable courses of action.
 - f. Identifies enemy courses of action still available.

- .8 ____ S2 section updates decision support template and event analysis matrixes.
 - a. Updates combines intelligence estimate.

- b. Updates operations estimate in graphic form.
- .9 ____ S2 briefs battalion commander or XO.
- a. Briefs or updates situation.
 - b. Briefs on probable enemy courses of action.

.10 ____ S2 passes information to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Intelligence information is recorded, then analyzed to determine its tactical significance. The data is posted to the battalion SITMAP and briefed to battalion commander or XO, as required.

TASK: 10A.2.5 PROCESS PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): Enemy soldiers have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Capturing personnel search prisoners.
- a. Uses hand-and-arm signals, if necessary.
 - b. Directs prisoners to drop all weapons.
 - c. Instructs prisoners to lie face down on the ground with their hands on the back of their necks.
- .2 ____ Trains or main CP OIC designates search and overwatch personnel.
- .3 ____ Overwatch personnel position themselves.
- a. Position themselves to have a clear view of EPW.
 - b. Position themselves to have a clear shot at the EPW.
- .4 ____ Search personnel conduct a thorough search of the prisoners, equipment, and vehicles.
- a. Treat prisoners humanely.
 - b. Inspects and returns all personal property and protective items.
 - c. Confiscates all weapons and equipment belonging to the enemy personnel.
- .5 ____ Search personnel collect all items of tactical significance.
- a. Tags and inventories items.
 - b. Extracts information that is of immediate value.
 - c. Reports items to higher headquarters (usually the S2).
- .6 ____ Search personnel tag all EPW.
- a. Specifies date and time of capture.
 - b. Specifies place of capture.

- c. Specifies capturing unit.
 - d. Summarizes circumstances of capture.
- .7 ____ Trains or main CP recovers enemy KIA.
- .8 ____ Search personnel segregate prisoners into different groups.
- a. Separates by rank, sex, and national origin.
 - b. Separates WIA and deserters from other prisoners.
 - c. Keeps NBC contaminated prisoners away from all other prisoners.
 - d. Keeps enemy WIA segregated from friendly WIA.
 - e. Keeps the majority of prisoners away from CP's. Brings only individual prisoners who are under positive control into the command areas.
- .9 ____ If guards are needed, trains or main CP provides guards for enemy WIA.
- .10 ____ Search personnel silence all prisoners.
- a. Takes special care to eliminate communication between groups of prisoners;
 - b. Gags prisoners when necessary.
- .11 ____ Overwatch personnel safeguard prisoners.
- a. Confines prisoners in a cantonment area, when available.
 - b. Constrains movement of prisoners, especially while transporting.
- .12 ____ Friendly personnel search prisoners each time prisoners are transferred from the control of one unit to another.
- .13 ____ Trains or main CP personnel take action to initiate hasty decontamination of contaminated EPW, if necessary.
- .14 ____ Trains or main CP speeds prisoners to the rear.
- a. Coordinates with S4 for transportation of EPW and captured material.
 - b. Trains or main CP personnel provide guards for prisoners until relieved of responsibility by competent authority.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Prisoners of war are processed using the five "S" method and are tagged with necessary information. Prisoners are treated humanely and accorded their rights under international law.

10A.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10A.3.1 CONDUCT ZONE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is ordered to conduct a zone reconnaissance. Included in this order is the specific zone to be reconnoitered, the LD, the LOA, or objective, and the commander's intent. Adequate time to accomplish the mission and gather critical information has been allocated by higher headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan and prepare for the mission.
 - a. Perform command estimate, or perform formal decision-making.
 - b. Perform troop-leading procedures.
 - c. Integrate CS and CSS into the plan.
 - d. Prepare orders and graphics.

- .2 ____ Battalion conducts movement to the zone.
 - a. Moves to the LD.
 - b. Conducts passage of lines.
 - c. Companies cross LD simultaneously.
 - d. Mortars cross LD with capability to maintain continuous fire support (only if mortars are under centralized control from battalion).
 - e. AT (TOW) platoon follows the company that gives the greatest flexibility of employment.

- .3 ____ Battalion conducts a zone reconnaissance.
 - a. Conducts zone or route reconnaissance as ordered, using appropriate movement techniques.
 - b. Employs AT (TOW) platoon in central location to provide for rapid employment anywhere in sector as the battalion reactionary force.
 - c. Mortars locate where it can provide continuous fire support to the lead companies (only if mortars are under centralized control from battalion).
 - d. Reconnoiters all terrain within the zone and locates routes for the main body.
 - a. Inspects and evaluates all bridges within the zone.
 - f. Locates suitable fording and crossing sites near all bridges.
 - g. Inspects and evaluates all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
 - h. Locates and clears all mines, obstacles, and barriers in the zone, within its capability.
 - i. Locates bypasses around all built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
 - j. Finds and reports all enemy forces within the zone.
 - k. Collects and reports detailed information rapidly.
 - l. Conducts breaching or crossing operations, as required.

- .4 ____ Battalion makes contact with the enemy.
 - a. Performs actions on contact and develops the situation in zone.
 - b. Maintains contact with enemy elements it cannot destroy.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Conducts hasty attack, conducts hasty defense, or bypasses enemy force.
- d. Maintains command and control.
- e. Sustains combat capability.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion conducts a zone reconnaissance under all battlefield conditions. Unless otherwise directed, the battalion will, as a minimum, reconnoiter all terrain within the zone, to include built-up areas; inspect and evaluate all bridges within the zone; locate fords or crossing sites near all bridges; inspect and evaluate all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts; locate and clear all mines, obstacles, and barriers in zone within capability; locate a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas; find and report all enemy forces within the zone; and report reconnaissance information.

TASK: 10A.3.2 CONDUCT AREA RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. Included in this order is specific area to be reconnoitered, the LD, the LOA or objective, and the commander's intent. Adequate time to accomplish the mission and gather critical information has been allocated by higher headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan and prepare for the mission.
 - a. Perform command estimate, or perform formal decision-making.
 - b. Perform troop-leading procedures.
 - c. Integrate CS and CSS into the plan.
 - d. Prepare orders and graphics.
- .2 ____ Battalion conducts movement to the area.
 - a. Moves to and crosses the LD.
 - b. Move rapidly to the area.
 - c. Reports and bypasses enemy or obstacles encountered en route.
 - d. Mortars are positioned prior to companies crossing LD and provides fire support (only if mortars are under centralized control from battalion). Mortars cross LD by section to maintain continuous fire support capability.
 - e. Avoids known enemy outside the area.
 - f. Arrives in the area undetected.
- .3 ____ Battalion conducts an area reconnaissance.
 - a. Deploys and conducts a zone or route reconnaissance as ordered.
 - b. Uses appropriate maneuver techniques.
 - c. Employs AT (TOW) platoon in central position to provide for rapid employment anywhere in sector as the battalion reactionary force.

- d. Mortars locate where it can provide continuous fire support to the lead companies (only if mortars are under centralized control from battalion).
- e. Reconnoiters all terrain within the area and locates routes for the main body.
- f. Inspects and evaluates all bridges within the area.
- g. Locates suitable fording and crossing sites near all bridges.
- h. Inspects and evaluates all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
- i. Locates and clears all mines, obstacles, and barriers in the area, within its capability.
- j. Locates bypasses around all built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
- k. Finds and reports all enemy forces within the area.
- l. Collects and reports detailed information rapidly.
- m. Battalion conducts breaching or crossing operations as required.

.4 ____ Battalion makes contact with the enemy.

- a. Performs actions on contact and develops the situation in its area.
- b. Maintains contact with enemy elements it cannot destroy.
- c. Conducts hasty attack, conducts hasty defense, or bypasses enemy force.
- d. Maintains command and control.
- a. Sustains combat capability.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion conducts an area reconnaissance under all battlefield conditions. Unless otherwise directed, the battalion will, as a minimum, reconnoiter all terrain within the area, to include built-up areas; inspect and evaluate all bridges within the area; locate and clear all mines, obstacles, and barriers in area within capability; locate a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas; find and report all enemy forces within the area; and report reconnaissance information.

TASK: 10A.3.3 OCCUPY A BATTALION ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): Battalion has been directed by higher headquarters to occupy an AA in preparation for future operations. Higher headquarters has specified latest time by which AA must be occupied and earliest time by which battalion must be prepared to depart the AA.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander designates tentative location for AA.
 - a. Conducts map reconnaissance.
 - b. Reviews battalion mission.
 - c. Provides guidance to battalion staff.
- .2 ____ Battalion staff coordinates for AA.

- a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for area authorization.
 - b. Coordinates with units adjacent to AA.
 - c. Issues warning order to battalion.
 - d. Provides guidance to quartering party OIC.
- .3 ____ Quartering party OIC organizes quartering party.
- a. Contacts subordinate units.
 - b. Specifies quantity of personnel and equipment needed in accordance with unit SOP.
 - c. Determines need for security force.
 - d. Establishes assembly point and SP time.
- .4 ____ Subordinate units prepare quartering parties.
- a. Select unit representatives.
 - b. Upload equipment.
 - c. Top off vehicles, if necessary.
 - d. Unit commanders issue guidance to OIC and NCOIC.
- .5 ____ Quartering party moves to AA.
- a. Uses prescribed route.
 - b. Employs OPSEC measures.
 - c. Reconnoiters route to AA.
 - d. Maintain security and air guards.
- .6 ____ Quartering party occupies tentative site.
- a. Clears and establishes security.
 - b. Conducts hasty reconnaissance.
 - c. Reports results to quartering party OIC.
- .7 ____ Quartering party reconnoiters and secures the AA.
- a. Identifies enemy presence in the area.
 - b. Clears and secures the AA.
 - c. Conceals area from air and ground observation.
 - d. Ensures AA has space for dispersion against massed conventional, chemical, and nuclear fires.
 - e. Identifies adequate entrances, exits, and internal routes.
 - f. Reconnoiters AA for adequate drainage, slope, terrain, and soil conditions that can support battalion vehicles and equipment.
 - g. Designates and reconnoiters landing zones.
 - h. Identifies and marks obstacles and contaminated areas.
- .8 ____ Quartering party OIC selects site.

- a. Selects a rear AA.
 - b. Selects a forward AA.
 - c. Evaluates reconnaissance reports.
 - d. Determine adequacy of site.
 - e. Designates subordinate units positions.
 - f. If site is inadequate, moves to alternative AA and evaluates site.
 - g. Reports to battalion main CP.
- .9 ____ Quartering party prepares site.
- a. Selects and marks vehicle and unit positions.
 - b. Improves and marks entrances, exits, and internal routes.
 - c. Establishes local security.
 - d. Marks or removes obstacles.
 - e. Marks NBC hazards.
 - f. Moves guides to RP.
- .10 ____ Battalion moves into AA based on unit order of march.
- a. Quartering party guides vehicles through RP without stopping.
 - b. Quartering party guides vehicles to unit locations and vehicle positions.
- .11 ____ Battalion establishes security.
- a. Places guards at all entrances and exits to control traffic flow.
 - b. Places OPs to cover key terrain features and likely avenues of approach.
 - c. Prepares fire plans and coordinates flanks.
 - d. Restricts unnecessary vehicle movement.
 - e. Enforces noise and light discipline.
 - f. Emplaces hasty protective minefields.
 - g. Emplaces chemical agent alarms.
- .12 ____ Battalion established wire and messenger communications, if time is available.
- a. Establishes communications within battalion elements.
 - b. Establishes communications with higher headquarters.
- .13 ____ Battalion elements report time AA was occupied.
- a. Subordinate elements report times to battalion CP.
 - b. Battalion CP elements report times to higher headquarters.
- .14 ____ Battalion prepares for future operations.
- a. Performs required vehicle and weapons maintenance.
 - b. Conducts resupply operations, as necessary.

- c. Performs precombat checks and inspections if combat operations are pending.
- d. Battalion staff develops and implements a plan for continuous operations.
- e. Leaders issue orders.
- f. Reconnoiters routes of movement.
- g. Conducts stand-to, as required.

.15 ____ Battalion departs from AA.

- a. Recovers communications wire.
- b. Recovers minefields.
- c. Departs in march order, as directed.
- d. Departs under radio-listening silence.
- e. Makes a security sweep of areas upon departure.
- f. Battalion commander reports departure and clearing times from initial location.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Battalion assembly area is occupied not later than specified time. Elements occupy positions without halting, and are prepared to conduct future operations not later than specified time. Elements conduct preparations and precombat checks in accordance with battalion commander's guidance and unit SOP.

TASK: 10A.3.4 CONDUCT A ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received an order to move to a new location. SP and RP times are designated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander issues a warning order.
 - a. States nature of operations.
 - b. States earliest time of move.
 - c. States time and place OPORD or FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander or S3 conducts a map reconnaissance, and selects a movement route or routes.
 - a. Ensures route provides cover and concealment.
 - b. Ensures route provides trafficable terrain.
 - c. Ensures route provides the ability to mass and disperse combat power to support scheme of maneuver.
- .3 ____ Battalion performs route reconnaissance.
 - a. Collects information on availability and conditions of route and choke points.
 - b. Collects information for SP and RP confirmation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- c. Confirms location of critical points.
 - d. Determines bridge and underpass capacities.
 - e. Collects information on location and suitability of holding areas, AAs, and areas for maintenance and refueling.
 - f. Collects information on distances between critical points and total distance between SPs and RPs.
 - g. Collects information on travel times and location of obstacles and bypasses.
 - h. Collects information on NBC monitoring of AA.
 - i. Collects information on all enemy routes and alternate routes, if required.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander selects a road march technique.
- a. Selects open column formation, or;
 - b. Selects close column formation, or;
 - c. Selects infiltration.
- .5 ____ S3 determines distance factors.
- a. Determines space between vehicles.
 - b. Determines column gap.
 - c. Determines traffic density.
 - d. Determines length of column.
 - e. Determines road gap.
- .6 ____ S3 determines movement rate factors.
- a. Determines vehicle column speed.
 - b. Determines rate of march.
- .7 ____ S3 determines time factors.
- a. Determines pass time.
 - b. Determines time distance.
 - c. Determines arrival time.
 - d. Determines completion time.
 - e. Determines extra time allowance for motor marches.
- .8 ____ Battalion commander or S3 determines order of unit and vehicle movement.
- a. Positions command vehicles where they can best control movement.
 - b. Positions quartering party as lead element.
 - c. Positions maneuver elements, their trains, battalion trains, and CP in middle of column.
 - d. Organizes vehicles by mobility capability or vehicle type when speed is essential.
 - e. Divides unit into mixed columns when speed is not essential and unit integrity is primary consideration.
- .9 ____ Battalion commander and staff finalize and issue a march order.

- a. Formulate order based on route reconnaissance.
 - b. Include items in accordance with unit SOP.
 - c. Include other items as stated in the OPORD.
- .10 ____ Battalion commander or S3 organizes and dispatches a quartering party.
- a. Includes a representative from each company and CSS element.
 - b. Includes unit NBC personnel.
 - c. Includes communications element.
- .11 ____ Quartering party reconnoiters route.
- a. Determines trafficability.
 - b. Identifies key terrain.
 - c. Locates friendly and enemy forces.
 - d. Identifies likely areas for critical points, checkpoints, and scheduled halts.
 - e. Determines entrances and exits to AAs.
 - f. Reports to battalion main CP.
- .12 ____ Battalion prepares for road march.
- a. Performs PMCS on all vehicles before movement and identifies all vehicles that are not operationally ready.
 - b. Completes LOGPAC.
 - c. Loads all vehicles in accordance with load plans and CSS plan.
- .13 ____ Battalion forms a column or staggered column.
- a. Battalion commander gives command to form a column or staggered column.
 - b. Battalion commander places his vehicle in a position where he can best control movement.
- .14 ____ Battalion reports to battalion CP as they pass SP.
- a. Use secure net.
 - b. Employ radio-listening silence.
- .15 ____ Battalion S3 monitors unit movement.
- a. Monitors unit movement for adherence to unit SOP.
 - b. Directs changes when necessary.
 - c. Monitors maintenance and recovery operations as necessary, in accordance with unit SOP.
 - d. Directs movement of column if break occurs.
 - e. Directs LOGPAC activities, if necessary.
- .16 ____ Road guides control flow of vehicles.
- a. Use hand-and-arm signals to control vehicle flow during daylight hours.
 - b. Use night devices to control vehicles during hours of darkness.
- .17 ____ Battalion maintenance elements perform recovery operations, as necessary.

- a. All vehicles rejoin battalion or are moved to designated maintenance collection points within an hour of completion of road march.
 - b. Repair only vehicles with minor damage.
- .18 ____ Subordinate companies maintain air guards in accordance with unit SOP.
- .19 ____ Battalion maintains communications.
- a. Maintains radio-listening silence or minimal radio use.
 - b. Reports passing critical points and checkpoints.
- .20 ____ Battalion clears RP.
- a. Moves through RP without halting.
 - b. Reports clearing RP.
 - c. Moves into battalion designated location.

KIT INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The road march is conducted in accordance with the OPORD and unit SOP.

TASK: 10A.3.5 CONDUCT A STATIONARY GUARD

CONDITION(S): Higher headquarters main body is conducting a mission requiring greater protection than a screen. Higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to conduct an advance, flank, or rear guard of a stationary force. The battalion is reinforced with additional maneuver and combat support assets. The battalion has been given the trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate; the width and rear boundary of the guard sector; the location and concept of the force to be protected; and the higher headquarters commanders intent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander.
- a. Determine the reinforcements necessary to accomplish the guard mission, to include ground maneuver and combat support assets.
 - b. Determine the general trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate.
 - c. Determine area of responsibility for the guard force.
 - d. Determine the force to be secured.
 - e. Determine the distance between the guard force and the protected force.
 - f. Determine special requirements or constraints, such as NAI or TAI.
 - g. Coordinate considerations for battle handover.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the guard mission.
- a. Plan missions for subordinate companies.
 - b. Plan defense in depth.

- c. Plan for fire support.
 - d. Plan positioning of command and control, combat support, and CSS assets.
 - e. Plan limited visibility surveillance requirements.
 - f. Plan movement to initial security line.
 - g. Plan additional control measures.
 - h. Conduct defensive IPB.
- .3 ____ Battalion moves to initial guard positions.
- a. Uses appropriate movement technique and occupies position.
 - b. Deploys companies abreast with an appropriate reserve.
- .4 ____ Battalion establishes a defense.
- a. Defends assigned positions or sectors.
 - b. Screens forward of their positions.
 - c. Battalion commander uses attached assets as reserve or assigns defensive sector.
- .5 ____ Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
- a. Observes enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.
 - b. OPs report all observed enemy activity.
- .6 ____ Battalion defends or delays as necessary to protect the main body.
- a. Defeats enemy reconnaissance and security forces.
 - b. Employs indirect fire whenever possible.
 - c. Defeats, fires, or repels enemy ground forces before they can engage the main body with direct fire.
 - d. Continually updates the protected force on enemy situation through spot reports.
- .7 ____ Battalion performs required actions, if it encounters enemy forces that are beyond its capability.
- a. Continues to defend.
 - b. Conducts battle handover and rearward passage of lines with the protected force.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion maintains continuous surveillance of enemy battalion-size avenues of approach. It destroys, repels, or fixes enemy ground forces before they can engage the protected force with direct fire.

TASK: 10A.3.6 CONDUCT A MOVING FLANK GUARD

CONDITION(S): Higher headquarters is conducting a mission requiring greater protection than a screen. The higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to conduct an advance, flank, or rear guard of a stationary force. The battalion is reinforced with additional maneuver and combat support assets. The battalion has been given the trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate; the width and rear boundary of the guard sector; the location and concept of force to be protected; and the higher headquarters commander's intent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander.
 - a. Coordinate any reinforcements necessary to accomplish the guard mission, to include maneuver and combat support assets.
 - b. Coordinate the general trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate.
 - c. Reaffirm area of responsibility for the guard force.
 - d. Analyze the force to be secured.
 - e. Coordinate special requirements or constraints, such as observing NAI or TAI.
 - f. Coordinate considerations for battle handover.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the guard mission.
 - a. Staff conducts IPB.
 - b. Assign missions to subordinate units.
 - c. Plan sectors or zones for subordinate companies.
 - d. Plan route of advance and phase lines.
 - e. Plan for fire support.
 - f. Plan positioning of command and control, combat support, and CSS assets.
 - g. Plan limited visibility surveillance requirements.
 - h. Plan movement to guard positions.
 - i. Plan additional control measures.
 - j. Plan for movement of flank guard.
 - k. Plan for alternate bounds, successive bounds, or continuous marching.
- .3 ____ Battalion deploys into guard sector.
 - a. Crosses the LD and LC with the protected force and then deploys into the guard sector if higher headquarters is making its own penetration of the LD or LC.
 - b. Crosses the LD separate from the protected force and then deploys into the guard sector if the LC has been penetrated by another force or the protected force is not in contact with the enemy.
 - c. Lead company reconnoiters the zone between the protected force and battalion route of advance.
 - d. Regulates movement along the route of advance used in accordance with the pace of the protected force, the distance to the objective, and the enemy situation.
 - e. The remainder of the battalion moves along the route of advance and occupies battle positions as they are reached.

- f. Occupies battle positions that are parallel to the axis of the protected force, exterior to the battalion route of advance, and along avenues of approach.
- .4 ____ Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
- a. Observes enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.
 - b. OPs report all observed enemy activity.
- .5 ____ Battalion displaces as required to maintain security for the main body.
- a. Defeats the enemy reconnaissance and security forces along axis of advance.
 - b. Employs indirect fire whenever possible.
 - c. Defeats, fixes, or repels enemy ground forces before they can engage the main body with direct fire.
 - d. Continually updates the protected force on enemy situation through spot reports.
- .6 ____ Battalion performs required actions, if it encounters enemy forces that are beyond its capability.
- a. Continues to defend.
 - b. Provides main body reaction time to maneuver forces against the enemy.
 - c. Conducts battle handover and rearward passage of lines with the protected force.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion maintains continuous surveillance of enemy battalion-size avenues of approach. It reconnoiters the zone between the protected force and the guard force BPs. It defeats, repels, or fixes enemy ground forces before they can engage the protected force with direct fire. The battalion maintains contact with and provides early warning to the protected force.

TASK: 10A.3.7 CONDUCT A MOVING REAR/ADVANCE GUARD

CONDITION(S): Higher headquarters is conducting a mission requiring greater protection than a screen. Higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to conduct an advance or rear guard of a moving force. The battalion is reinforced with additional maneuver and combat support assets. The battalion has been given the trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate; the location or direction of movement and concept of the force to be secured; and the higher headquarters commander's intent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander.
- a. Coordinate any reinforcements necessary to accomplish the guard mission, to include maneuver and combat support assets.
 - b. Coordinate the general trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate.
 - c. Reaffirm area of responsibility for the guard force.
 - d. Determine the force to be secured.
 - e. Determine special requirements or constraints, such as observing NAI or IAI.

- f. Determine the interval to be maintained between the protected force and the battalion, if conducting an advance guard.
 - g. Determine the rear boundary, if conducting a rear guard.
 - h. Determine how rear guard will be established during retrograde operations.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the guard mission.
- a. Plans missions for subordinate units.
 - b. Plan sectors or zones for subordinate units.
 - c. Plan for routes of advance and phase lines, if conducting an advance guard.
 - d. Plan successive battle positions along phase lines in depth for a rear guard.
 - e. Plan for fire support.
 - f. Plan positioning of command and control, combat support, and and CSS assets.
 - g. Plan limited visibility surveillance requirements.
 - h. Plan for movement to guard positions, if conducting rear guard.
 - i. Plan additional control measures.
- .3 ____ Battalion moves to initial guard positions.
- a. Uses appropriate movement technique.
 - b. Maintains appropriate reserve.
- .4 ____ Battalion performs required actions if conducting an advance guard.
- a. Crosses LD at designated time.
 - b. Performs reconnaissance along the protected force's axis of advance.
 - c. Performs either a zone reconnaissance or movement to contact.
- .5 ____ Battalion performs required actions if conducting a rear guard.
- a. Rear guard deploys to initial guard positions and prepares to defend.
 - b. Maintains continuous surveillance of enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.
 - c. Destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance and security forces.
 - d. Maintains contact with the protected force.
 - e. Defeats, repels, or fixes enemy ground forces before they can engage the protected with direct fire.
 - f. Displaces to successive BPs along PLs in depth as the protected force moves.
 - g. Continually updates the protected force on enemy situation through spot reports.
- .6 ____ Battalion performs required actions, if the advance guard encounters enemy forces that are beyond its capability.
- a. Assumes hasty defense.
 - b. Continues reconnaissance of enemy positions.
 - c. Prepares to pass the main body forward.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

If conducting a rear guard, the battalion reconnoiters the zone between the protected force and the guard force BPs, and displaces to successive BPs along phase lines in depth as the main body moves. If conducting an advance guard, the battalion performs reconnaissance along the protected force's axis of advance. For both advance and rear guards, the battalion destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements and security forces within its capabilities, and maintains contact with and provides early warning to the protected force.

TASK: 10A.3.8 CONDUCT A MOVING SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The main body is conducting a movement requiring protection to its flanks or rear. Higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to conduct a screen of the moving main body. The battalion may be reinforced with additional maneuver and combat support assets. Artillery may be provided in direct support. The battalion has been given the trace of the screen and effective time, if appropriate; the width and rear boundary (BHL) of the screened sector; the location or direction of movement of the main body and the concept of the force to be screened; and the higher commander's intent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander.
 - a. Coordinate any reinforcements necessary to accomplish the screen mission.
 - b. Coordinate the general trace of the screen and effective time, if appropriate.
 - c. Reaffirm area of responsibility.
 - d. Determine the force to be secured.
 - e. Determine the interval to be maintained between the battalion and the protected force.
 - f. Determine the rear boundary.
 - g. Coordinate special requirements or constraints, such as observing NAI or TAI.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the moving flank screen mission.
 - a. Staff conducts IPB.
 - b. Plan movement to the initial screen line.
 - c. Plan phase lines to control movement and to serve as company boundaries.
 - d. Plan location of subsequent screen lines.
 - e. Plan missions for subordinate companies.
 - f. Plan sectors or zones for subordinate companies.
 - g. Plan for air and ground integration.
 - h. Plan for fire support.
 - i. Plan for the positioning of command and control, CS, and CSS assets.
 - j. Plan for limited visibility surveillance requirements.
 - k. Plan for movement of units performing flank screen.

- .3 ____ Battalion crosses the LD and moves to the initial screen line.
- a. Crosses the LD separately from the protected force and conducts a tactical road march along a parallel route of advance if speed is essential and enemy contact is not likely.
 - b. Crosses the LD separately from the protected force and conducts a zone reconnaissance forward if speed is less important and security is a greater concern.
 - c. Crosses the LD with the protected force and conducts a zone reconnaissance out to the screen line if enemy contact is likely.
- .4 ____ Companies establish screen lines.
- a. Occupy assigned positions or sectors.
 - b. Companies screen forward of their positions.
 - c. Companies follow an axis of advance parallel to the protected force.
 - d. Maintain contact with the protected force.
- .5 ____ Companies move screen lines in conjunction with movement of protected force.
- a. Maintain same speed as protected force.
 - b. Maintain same distance from protected force.
 - c. Maintain visual contact between bounding and overwatch elements if appropriate.
 - d. Use the preplanned routes to their subsequent position unless prevented by the enemy situation.
 - e. Maintain continuous communication with the battalion.
- .6 ____ Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
- a. Observes enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.
 - b. Reports all observed enemy activity.
- .7 ____ Battalion provides early warning to the main body.
- a. Impeded and harasses the enemy with supporting indirect fires.
 - b. Defeats enemy reconnaissance forces within its capabilities.
 - c. Employs indirect fire whenever possible.
 - d. Employs direct fire, if necessary, to accomplish mission.
 - e. Continually updates the protected force on enemy situation through spot reports.
 - f. Does not become decisively engaged.
- .8 ____ Battalion withdraws to subsequent screen line, in accordance with commander's intent.
- a. Displaces to subsequent screen lines based on battlefield events and in accordance with commander's intent.
 - b. Maintains enemy contact while displacing.
 - c. Deploys on subsequent screen line, and continues to screen.
- .9 ____ Battalion conducts battle handover and rearward passage of lines with main body.
- .10 ____ Battalion conducts moving rear screen.
- a. Plans the same as for a screen of a stationary force.

- b. Displaces to subsequent screen lines as the main body moves.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion performs screen along the protected force's flanks. It moves the screen line to keep pace with the protected force and remain equidistant from it. The battalion maintains continuous surveillance of enemy battalion-size avenues of approach and destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements within its capabilities. It provides early warning of enemy approach to the protected force.

TASK: 10A.3.9 CONDUCT A STATIONARY SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The main body is in a stationary position requiring protection to its front, flanks, or rear. The higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to conduct a screen of the stationary main body. The battalion may be reinforced with maneuver and assets. Artillery may be provided in direct support. The battalion has been given the trace of the screen and effective time, if appropriate; the width and rear boundary (BHL) of the screened sector; the location and concept of the force to be screened; and the higher commander's intent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander.
 - a. Coordinate the reinforcements necessary to accomplish the screen mission, to include ground maneuver, CS, and air support.
 - b. Coordinate the general trace of the screen and effective time.
 - c. Coordinate area of responsibility.
 - d. Determines the force to be secured.
 - e. Reaffirm the interval to be maintained between the battalion and the protected force's forward security element.
 - f. Reaffirm the rear boundary.
 - g. Coordinate special requirements or constraints, such as observing NAI or TAI.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the screen mission.
 - a. Plan initial screen line.
 - b. Plan movement to initial screen line.
 - c. Plan location of subsequent screen lines.
 - d. Plan missions for subordinate companies.
 - e. Plan missions for attached companies or other attached maneuver elements.
 - f. Plan sectors or zones for subordinate companies.
 - g. Plan for air and ground integration.
 - h. Plan for fire support.
 - i. Plan for positioning of command and control, CS, and CSS assets.
 - j. Plan for limited visibility surveillance requirements.

- k. Staff conducts defensive IPB.
- .3 ____ Battalion moves to the initial screen line.
- a. Uses appropriate movement technique and occupies position.
 - b. Deploys companies abreast with tank company (if available) in reserve.
- .4 ____ Battalion establishes company screen lines.
- a. Occupies assigned position or sectors.
 - b. Ground companies screen forward of their positions.
 - c. Air cavalry, if available, screens forward or reconnoiters terrain hard to reach by ground vehicles.
 - d. Maintains contact with the protected force.
- .5 ____ Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
- a. Observes enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.
 - b. Reports all observed enemy activity.
- .6 ____ Battalion provides early warning to the main body.
- a. Impedes and harasses the enemy with supporting indirect fires.
 - b. Defeats enemy reconnaissance forces within its capabilities.
 - c. Employs indirect fire, whenever possible.
 - d. Employs direct fire, if necessary, to accomplish the mission.
 - e. Continually updates the protected force on enemy situation through spot reports.
 - f. Does not become decisively engaged.
- .7 ____ Battalion withdraws to a subsequent screen line, in accordance with commander's intent.
- a. Displaces to subsequent screen lines based on battlefield events, in accordance with commander's intent.
 - b. Maintains enemy contact while displacing.
 - c. Deploys on subsequent screen line and continues to screen.
- .8 ____ Battalion conducts battle handover to main body and rearward passage of lines.
- a. Uses appropriate movement technique and occupies subsequent positions.
 - b. Deploys and continues to screen.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion maintains continuous surveillance of enemy battalion-size avenues of approach. The battalion destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements and security forces within its capabilities.

14 Oct 94

TASK: 10A.3.10 DEFEND

CONDITION(S): The battalion has been ordered to defend in sector of defend by BP, or a combination of both. The battalion may be reinforced with additional maneuver assets. The battalion may be reinforced with additional maneuver assets. The battalion commander has specified the latest time by which defensive positions must be prepared. The enemy has conducted reconnaissance, breaching, and infiltration actions to prepare for the attack. The enemy attacks.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff develop a defensive plan.
 - a. Identify potential enemy avenues of approach, key and decisive terrain, checkpoints, and natural obstacles.
 - b. Plan the defense throughout the full depth of the battalion sector consistent with the higher commander's concept of the operation.
 - c. Cover all battalion-size avenues of approach with engagement areas throughout the depth of the sector.
 - d. Designate defense technique (defend in a sector, defend a battle position, or defend by a combination).
 - e. Plan for enough maneuver space to accommodate the mission to defend.
 - f. Designate screen or reconnaissance missions for air cavalry companies.
 - g. Position ground and air security forces forward to defeat enemy reconnaissance elements.
 - h. Identify locations for obstacles that clock or slow the enemy in company or battalion engagement areas.
 - i. Prioritize mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks.
 - j. Plan engagement and disengagement criteria.
 - k. Plan for prioritizing movement on routes during disengagement and counterattacks.
 - l. Plan for tanks (if available) and antiarmor weapons in depth for flanking fires, defilade positioning, and promoting maneuvers against the enemy.
 - m. Plan for infantry, if attached, to push the enemy into engagement areas to provide protection.
 - n. Identify special procedures and positions for limited visibility operations.
 - o. Plan the battalion's movement to the defensive position.
- .2 ____ Battalion moves to defensive position or sector.
 - a. Uses appropriate movement technique.
 - b. Air cavalry screens movement, locating enemy forward or to the flank of the battalion.
 - c. Maintains maneuver company in reserve.
- .3 ____ Battalion prepares the defense.
 - a. Establishes a counterreconnaissance security force.
 - b. Prepares fighting positions.
 - c. Locates reserve initially in an area from which it can counterattack or move rapidly to reinforce the delay force.
 - d. Modifies fire control measures.

- e. Achieves mutual support and concentration of fires.
 - f. Emplaces obstacles.
 - g. Establishes LOGPAC activities.
 - h. Rehearses counterattacks and movement in sector.
 - i. Uses backbriefs to ensure mission intent is understood.
 - j. Prepares to defend at specified time.
- .4 ____ Battalion defeats enemy reconnaissance and infiltration.
- a. Prevents enemy reconnaissance from observing the occupation and setup of the defense.
 - b. Prevents enemy commander from determining the friendly scheme of defense.
 - c. Prevents the enemy from suppressing the defense.
 - d. Prevents friendly obstacles from being breached before the enemy attack.
- .5 ____ Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
- a. Observes enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.
 - b. Security element provides early warning to the battalion of the arrival of the enemy attack.
 - c. Security element detects and tracks the movement of the enemy second echelon.
- .6 ____ Battalion defeats the attack.
- a. Defeats enemy in accordance with commander's intent and OPORD.
 - b. On order, conducts a counterattack, or initiates disengagement.
 - c. Conducts the defense in accordance with the higher commander's intent.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion is prepared to defend at the prescribed time. The enemy is defeated forward of the battalion's rear boundary. The battalion retains flank security and conducts the defense in accordance with the higher headquarters intent.

TASK: 10A.3.11 CONDUCT A BATTALION DELAY

CONDITION(S): The battalion is given the mission to delay in sector or to delay forward of a specified line for a specified time or event. Commander's decision will be based on the situation. The higher order specifies the time or event that terminates the delay. The commander's intent is to obtain a maximum delay of the enemy while maintaining freedom of maneuver and tactical integrity.

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the delay.
 - a. Staff performs IPB.
 - b. Assign company sectors, BPs, or a combination thereof, consistent with the higher commander's intent and METT-TSL.
 - c. Specify battalion task organization.
 - d. Integrate CS and CSS into the maneuver plan.
 - e. Identify special procedures and positions for limited visibility operations.
 - f. Plan battalion's movement to the defensive sector.

- .2 ____ Battalion moves to and occupies defensive sector.
 - a. Uses appropriate movement technique.
 - b. Air cavalry, if available, reconnoiters forward or to the flank of the battalion.
 - c. Maintains tank company (if available) in reserve.
 - d. Occupies the defense in sector.

- .3 ____ Battalion prepares for the delay.
 - a. Selects and reconnoiters routes to subsequent positions.
 - b. Establishes coordination or contact points.
 - c. Prestocks and protects Class V.
 - d. Quartering parties prepare subsequent positions.
 - e. Locates reserve initially in an area from which it can counterattack or move rapidly to reinforce the delay.
 - f. Battalion CP and combat trains move to designated rear areas.
 - g. Positions battalion CP forward to control operation.
 - h. Emplaces obstacles to block or canalize enemy on high-speed avenues of approach, and to support the scheme of maneuver.
 - i. Plans indirect fires.
 - j. Leaders ensure mission is understood by means of backbriefs.
 - k. Prepares to conduct operations at the time prescribed in the order.
 - l. Conducts rehearsals.

- .4 ____ Battalion defeats enemy reconnaissance and infiltration.
 - a. Neutralizes enemy reconnaissance without compromising friendly positions and intent.
 - b. Prevents the enemy from suppressing the defense.
 - c. Prevents friendly obstacles from being breached before the main enemy threat.

- .5 ____ Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
 - a. Observes enemy battalion-size avenues of approach.

- b. Security elements provide early warning to the battalion of the enemy attack and continue to track enemy movement.
- c. Security element initiates indirect fire engagements.
- d. Forces enemy to prematurely deploy into assault formations.

.6 ____ Battalion delays the enemy advance.

- a. Employs indirect-fire support.
- b. Initiates direct-fire engagements at maximum weapons range.
- c. Companies deploy to subsequent delay positions on order.
- d. Coordinates withdrawal closely with higher headquarters and adjacent units.
- e. Maintains contact with the enemy force, increasing intensity of direct and indirect fires.
- f. Reserve force moves to block any enemy penetration or moves to attack enemy with flanking fires.
- g. Uses smoke to screen movement and create deception.
- h. Seals lanes through obstacles prior to enemy arrival.
- i. Delays the enemy for period of time specified, until the event occurs as specified in the order, or until given permission to withdraw.
- j. Prevents enemy forces from bypassing or penetrating.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The delay is conducted so that the battalion is prepared to delay at the specified time. The battalion preserves its freedom to maneuver so that it does not become decisively engaged and inflicts maximum delay and destruction on the enemy. The battalion maintains contact with the enemy and is not bypassed or penetrated by the enemy.

TASK: 10A.3.12 CONDUCT A WITHDRAWAL

CONDITION(S): The battalion is in contact with an enemy and is in a hasty or deliberate defense. The battalion is ordered to withdraw. The withdrawal may be under pressure (enemy is attacking) or not under pressure (enemy is not attacking). Another element is positioned to cover the withdrawal (assisted). Upon disengaging from the enemy, the battalion may be ordered to occupy a new defensive position in depth, or occupy an assembly area in preparation for further operations. The battalion commander's intent is to break contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan for the withdrawal under pressure.

- a. Designate routes to support withdrawal.
- b. Plan in-depth and on-order positions.
- c. Plan AA locations.
- d. Plan in-depth obstacles.

- e. Plan use of smoke and FASCAM to cover withdrawals.
- f. Plan direct-fire coordination measures.
- g. Plan internal coordination for the withdrawal.
- h. Plan external coordination for the withdrawal.
- i. If withdrawal is conducted under pressure, outline a scheme of fire and maneuver to stop the enemy attack in order to enable the battalion to break contact and to cover the movement to the rear of the battalion.
- j. Outline a scheme of maneuver that depends on speed of execution and deception to break contact with the enemy if withdrawal is not under pressure.
- k. Outline use of supporting fires to cover the withdrawal.
- l. Plan for a covering force strong enough to stop the enemy and block its ability to pursue.
- m. Outline and plan sequence of withdrawals.

.2 ____ Battalion prepares for the withdrawal.

- a. Coordinates with the supporting unit in an assisted withdrawal.
- b. Commander and staff give instructions on establishing next defensive positions if no higher covering force is provided.
- c. Leaders conduct reconnaissance of routes and subsequent positions.
- d. Quartering party locates and prepares in-depth positions and AAs.
- e. Battalion forms DLIC, if conducting unassisted withdrawal.
- f. Battalion commander issues FRAGO.

.3 ____ Battalion conducts battle handover to security forces (assisted withdrawal).

- a. Security force overwatches the withdrawal of the battalion.
- b. Withdraws and executes a passage of lines.

.4 ____ Battalion activates security forces (unassisted withdrawal).

- a. DLIC detects, deceives, and engages enemy on all avenues of approach with direct and indirect fires.
- b. As the main body disengages, the DLIC shifts positions as necessary to cover the entire sector.
- c. Assigns mortars and other CS and CSS assets to the DLIC as necessary.
- d. CIFS screens to provide security and aids in deception.
- e. DLIC does not allow enemy to penetrate or bypass during the withdrawal.
- f. DLIC assumes responsibility for the entire sector and performs deception tasks as designated.
- g. When the rest of the battalion is set, the DLIC disengages and moves to the rear to join the main body.

.5 ____ Battalion disengages from the enemy.

- a. Disengages by subordinate elements, making a maximum use of overwatching fires and cover and concealment.

- b. Disengages only on order in accordance with commander's disengagement criteria.
- c. Fire support assets displace to positions to provide responsive and continuous indirect fires.
- d. Observes radio-listening silence.
- e. Occupies AA or designated new positions.
- f. Does not leave WIA or anything of value to the enemy.
- g. Does not become decisively engaged.
- h. Occupies position in depth or AA.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion disengages from the enemy and does not allow any enemy penetration or bypass of the main body during the withdrawal. The battalion will transition to a delay in sector if enemy places heavy offensive pressure.

TASK: 10A.3.13 CONDUCT A MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

CONDITION(S): The battalion has been ordered to conduct a movement to contact as part of a higher movement to contact or meeting engagement. The OPDRD specifies the LD, the width of the zone or maneuver space, the LOA or objective, and a crossing time.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan for the movement to contact.
 - a. Designate battalion formation that provides for initial contact with minimum forces to maintain flexibility.
 - b. Designate control and coordination measures to facilitate fire, movement, and command and control.
 - c. Select routes, axes, or zones that provide concealment and avoid canalization.
 - d. Designate tank company (if available) as reserve, or if sector is very narrow, may designate the tank company (if available) and a LAI company as the reserve.
 - e. Identify danger areas (areas of increased exposure or restrictions) and prepare contingency plans.
 - f. Position engineers well forward to facilitate obstacle reduction.
 - g. Position air defense assets well forward to cover movement across exposed areas.
 - h. Ensure NBC reconnaissance elements are well forward to conduct reconnaissance of known or suspected contaminated areas.
 - i. Ensure placement of combat trains to provide protection and rapid CSS.
 - j. Coordinate with follow-on forces to integrate a FARP into its zone of action.
- .2 ____ Battalion initiates movement to contact.
 - a. Moves into designated formation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Conducts movement to contact in the same manner as a zone reconnaissance.
 - c. Maintains mutual support.
 - d. Makes contact with friendly units at all contact points.
 - e. Maintains proper dispersion.
 - f. Employs smoke to mask its movement as appropriate.
 - g. Air defense weapons cover designated air corridors.
- .3 ____ Battalion moves through restricted areas and choke points.
- a. Initiates actions on contact.
 - b. Scouts and CIFS (if available) establish a screen line and conduct close reconnaissance of obstacles.
 - c. Supporting forces establish overwatch positions.
 - d. Breaching and security elements clear and secure restricted areas before commitment of main body.
 - e. Engineer assets breach identified obstacles.
 - f. Assault force clears and secures far side (next terrain feature) of restricted area before the main body moves out.
 - g. Remainder of battalion clears area rapidly.
 - h. Reports terrain and obstacle information that would affect follow-on elements to higher headquarters.
- .4 ____ Battalion initiates actions on enemy contact.
- a. Element in contact conducts reconnaissance to determine enemy strength, disposition, and intent.
 - b. Element in contact avoids decisive engagement while developing the situation.
 - c. Element in contact reports information to allow the battalion commander to determine whether to attack immediately, to continue to develop the situation, or to go into a hasty defense.
- .5 ____ Battalion commander determines an appropriate course of action and issues a FRAGO.
- a. Directs battalion to attack immediately when the enemy is surprised or weak.
 - b. Directs battalion to develop the situation to determine the enemy's disposition and intent.
 - c. Directs battalion to go into a hasty defense when attacking a strong enemy.
- .6 ____ Battalion reports contact to main body commander.
- a. Reports enemy location, disposition, and intent.
 - b. Informs main body commander of the course of action the battalion is taking.
- .7 ____ Battalion reaches the LOA or objective without encountering enemy forces.
- a. Terminates the movement to contact mission.
 - b. Consolidates and reorganizes on objective.
 - c. Prepares for future operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion crosses the LD at the designated time to start the movement to contact. It gains or regains contact with the enemy or reaches LOA or objective if no enemy contact is made.

TASK: 10A.3.14 CONDUCT A HASTY ATTACK

CONDITION(S): An element of the battalion has come in contact with the enemy. The commander has made an assessment of the situation and determined the enemy force can be destroyed or forced to withdraw. The enemy force is too strong for the company in contact to attack successfully. Battalion commander reports his assessment and intentions to the higher commander. The battalion has limited intelligence information and minimal planning time.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Companies in contact establish a hasty defense.
 - a. Commander designates platoon positions using visual signals or FM radio.
 - b. Enter positions using covered and concealed routes.
 - c. Establish security and OPs.
 - d. Maintain contact with the enemy.
- .2 ____ Companies in contact conduct additional reconnaissance of the enemy and the area of operation concurrently with battalion staff hasty planning.
 - a. Locate enemy forces, potential avenues of approach, and weak points.
 - b. Identify potential indirect-fired targets.
 - c. Report information to battalion staff.
 - d. Identify possible ground routes for friendly assault positions.
 - e. Report information to the battalion.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the attack.
 - a. Designate the maneuver element (normally the tank company, if available).
 - b. Designate a base-of-fire of supporting attack (normally the company in contact).
 - c. Allocate combat elements to an attack, a supporting attack, or reserve role.
 - d. Designate only critical changes to task organization.
 - e. Integrate indirect supporting fires.
 - f. Integrate use of CS assets to include engineer, GSR, and air defense.
 - g. Designate actions on the objective.
 - h. Plan NBC defensive measures, as time allows.
 - i. Plan passage of lines coordination, if necessary.
 - j. Plan special procedures for operating in a limited visibility environment, as time allows.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- k. Issue an OPORD or FRAGO to the assault force.
- .4 ____ Base-of-fire commander selects a firing position (if different from hasty defensive position).
- a. Uses available cover and concealment.
 - b. Covers likely enemy positions.
 - c. Provides freedom and space to maneuver to alternate firing positions.
 - d. Allows massing of fires in conjunction with adjacent units.
 - e. Maximizes engagements to flank and rear of enemy forces.
- .5 ____ Company in contact coordinates with assault force.
- a. Makes radio contact with assault force.
 - b. Establishes hasty contact point to the rear of the company positions.
 - c. Scouts from company in contact link up with assault force at contact point, and brief assault force on enemy position and vehicle locations.
 - d. Scouts prepare to guide assault force along axis of attack.
- .6 ____ Base-of-fire element moves to firing position.
- a. Uses available covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Moves by bounding, if terrain allows.
 - c. Commander adjusts engagement areas.
 - d. Occupies fighting positions.
 - e. Scans for enemy elements immediately upon occupying positions.
 - f. Monitors radio nets of the assault force.
- .7 ____ Base-of-fire element conducts an attack by fire to cover the assault.
- a. Fixes the position by direct and indirect fires.
 - b. Prevents the enemy from engaging the moving force with direct and indirect fire.
- .8 ____ On order, assault force conducts the assault.
- a. Companies or companies move into appropriate formations.
 - b. Scouts from company in contact guide assault force along axis of attack.
 - c. LAVs and tanks (if available) cross objective using direct-fire weapons to suppress or destroy enemy vehicles and personnel.
 - d. LAVs and tanks (if available) maneuver to engage enemy flanks, if situation allows.
 - e. Uses dismounted scouts to engage dismounted enemy force (to knock out bunkers and so forth).
 - f. LAVs and tanks (if available) provide mutual support while crossing objective.
 - g. Unit commander shifts direct fires as necessary.
 - h. Unit commander coordinates to lift or shift suppressive fires.
 - i. Deploys into a hasty defensive position on or near the objective.
- .9 ____ Base-of-fire element joins assault force on the objective.

.10 ____ Battalion initiates consolidation and reorganization.

.11 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion hasty attack is conducted so that the enemy is destroyed or forced to withdraw from its position. Battalion units deploy into hasty positions on or near the objective.

TASK: 10A.3.15 BYPASS AN ENEMY/FRIENDLY POSITION AT BATTALION LEVEL

CONDITION(S): The battalion has made contact with a company size, or smaller enemy force that does not have to be contained or destroyed. The mission requires continued forward momentum. The battalion commander has requested and received permission from higher headquarters to bypass.

OR

The battalion has made visual or radio contact with a friendly unit blocking its movement route. A passage of Lines is not possible due to time constraints or terrain restrictions. The battalion commander has requested and received permission to bypass from higher headquarters and commander of the unit to be bypassed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Commander and staff plan the bypass.

- a. Designate an element to provide overwatch and, if necessary, fix the enemy's position.
- b. Select a covered and concealed bypass route that does not canalize friendly forces.
- c. Designate a scheme of maneuver to support the bypass.

.2 ____ Overwatch element moves to an overwatch position.

- a. Selects a position the covers likely enemy positions and bypass routes.
- b. Uses cover and concealment during movement.
- c. Maintains continuous visual contact with a bypassed enemy force.

.3 ____ Overwatch element fixes the enemy, if necessary.

- a. Establishes local security.
- b. Inspects routes for obstacles.
- c. Neutralizes or clears obstacles as required.

.4 ____ Bypass element assists disengagement of overwatch element.

- a. Employs smoke on known and suspected enemy positions.
- b. Suppresses known and suspected enemy locations with direct and indirect fires.
- c. Employs smoke to prevent direct enemy observation.

.5 ____ Overwatch element disengages and moves through bypass routes on order.

- a. Uses cover and concealment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Requests employment of smoke as required.
 - c. Maintains gun tube orientation on known and suspected enemy positions.
- .6 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters by secure means throughout bypass.
- a. Reports time bypass began.
 - b. Provides available information about the enemy.
 - c. Reports time bypass completed.
- .7 ____ Battalion continues original mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The position is bypassed so that the route does not canalize the unit. A battalion element maintains continuous visual contact with the bypassed force. Indirect and direct fires are used to suppress the enemy so that it cannot fire on bypassing elements. Reports are submitted throughout bypass activities to allow next higher headquarters to monitor bypass phases.

TASK: 10A.3.16 CONDUCT A RAID

CONDITION(S): The battalion has been ordered to conduct a raid into enemy territory to gain information, create confusion, destroy, materiel, and disrupt enemy plans. The objective is lightly defended. The higher OPORD specifies departure and return times, and outlines the specific tasks to be accomplished. The battalion may conduct the raid as organized, with reinforcement, or as part of another force.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander and staff plan the raid.
- a. Determine specific objective and tasks for raiding force to accomplish.
 - b. Plan movement along covered and concealed routes.
 - c. Plan for security of raiding force.
 - d. Plan to avoid known enemy positions.
 - e. Time the raid so the raiding force arrives at the objective at dawn, twilight, or during other low visibility conditions.
 - f. Capitalize on speed, stealth, and gaps in enemy lines. Plan withdrawal to include identifying alternate route and coordinating rearward passage of lines.
 - g. Designate task organization for the raid, integrating attachments into the unit, if necessary.
 - h. Plan indirect fires along the axes of advance and withdrawal.
 - i. Determine logistical requirements.
 - j. Identify rally points before and after the mission.
 - k. Coordinate and establish an RFA around the raid area.
- .2 ____ Battalion prepares for the raid.

- a. Commander and staff issue the OPORD.
 - b. Coordinates forward passage of lines.
 - c. Rehearses actions on the objective.
- .3 ____ Battalion conducts reconnaissance of the area as situation allows.
- a. CIFS (if available) reconnoiters in advance of ground forces.
 - b. Reconnaissance elements identify enemy defense on the objective.
 - c. Reconnaissance elements reconnoiter and mark routes, if necessary.
 - d. Reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance without being detected.
- .4 ____ Battalion moves to the objective and crosses the LD on time.
- a. Employs appropriate movement techniques.
 - b. Establishes a reconnaissance force forward, and gains flank security through speed.
 - c. Reconnaissance force locates enemy forces en route to the objective, and directs battalion around them.
 - d. If enemy cannot be bypassed, conducts a hasty attack or disengages and returns to friendly lines.
 - e. Establishes visual contact with the enemy or objective.
 - f. Commander determines the best place to initiate the attack.
- .5 ____ Battalion assaults objective.
- a. Conducts assault the same as hasty attack.
 - b. Rapidly consolidates on the objective when the attack is completed.
- .6 ____ Battalion withdraws from the objective.
- a. Disengages rapidly, and moves to the rally point before enemy can fix the unit.
 - b. Repairs or destroys disabled vehicles.
 - c. Evacuates WIA and KIA with the unit or by helicopter.
 - d. Leaves no EEFI behind.
 - e. Returns rapidly to friendly lines.
 - f. Conducts rearward passage of lines.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion conducts the raid so that it accomplishes assigned tasks while retaining freedom to maneuver. It maintains OPSEC throughout the preparation and execution phases of the raid and meets time requirements specified in the OPORD.

TASK: 10A.3.17 CONDUCT A BREAKOUT FROM ENCIRCLEMENT

CONDITION(S): During the conduct of a tactical operation, the battalion has become encircled by the enemy, with enemy elements to its front, flanks, and rear. The enemy may not have completely surrounded the battalion; however, it is maneuvering to fix and surround it. CIFS (if available) may have displaced to friendly locations if the encircled area does not contain a FARP. The battalion commander has reported the situation to higher headquarters and has received permission to conduct a breakout.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander establishes or reestablishes unity of command.
 - a. Reorganizes fragmented units.
 - b. Establishes chain of command for fragmented units.
 - c. Places understrength units under control of existing units.
- .2 ____ Companies conduct additional reconnaissance of the enemy and attack area.
 - a. Locate enemy forces, potential avenues of approach, and weak points.
 - b. Describe enemy activities.
 - c. Identify potential indirect-fire targets.
 - d. Report information to battalion staff.
- .3 ____ Battalion establishes a defense.
 - a. S3 organizes units into all-around defense.
 - b. Establishes fighting positions.
 - c. Displaces battalion CP and trains CP into center of BP.
 - d. Organizes all indirect-fire weapons within encircled area under battalion control.
 - e. Positions security elements forward for early warning.
 - f. Security elements deceive the enemy on friendly composition, strength, and intention.
 - g. Units continue to fight defensive battle.
 - h. Battalion CP reestablishes communications with adjacent units.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the breakout.
 - a. Evaluate intelligence.
 - b. Designate a rupture force that consists of the tank company (if available) and an attached company team or company.
 - c. Designate a main body that consists of the battalion CP and CS and CSS elements.
 - d. Designate a reserve force that consists of the tank company (if available) and an attached company or company.
 - e. Designate a rear guard that consists of a company.
 - f. Designate a diversionary force that consists of an attached company team or company.
 - g. Specify time and location of the attack.
 - h. Plan for the evacuation of casualties.
 - i. Plan for the destruction of abandoned equipment and supplies, if necessary.

- j. Plan for the use of indirect fires to support the attack.
 - k. Plan for use of smoke to conceal movement.
 - l. Plan diversion and deception activities.
- .5 ____ Trains prepare to support breakout.
- a. Establish medical evacuation for all soldiers.
 - b. Upload supplies and equipment.
 - c. Destroy or disable equipment, vehicles, and supplies that cannot be taken or repaired.
 - d. Maintain security during preparation.
- .6 ____ Battalion employs deception measures to mask breakout preparations.
- a. Employs decoys and dummy positions to deceive the enemy.
 - b. Creates dummy radio traffic.
 - c. Uses messenger and wire to communicate breakout information.
 - d. Increases vehicular traffic in diversionary area.
 - e. May conduct faint or demonstration with a diversionary force.
- .7 ____ Rupture force conducts a deliberate attack to achieve penetration.
- a. Moves rapidly to breakout point.
 - b. Employs indirect fires and smoke.
 - c. Destroys enemy encountered en route.
 - d. Attacks a defined objective.
 - e. Consolidates and reorganizes on the objective.
 - f. Holds open the shoulders of the penetration.
- .8 ____ Reserve force passes through the gap and joins up with the rupture force.
- a. Maintains momentum of maneuver.
 - b. Conducts a passage of lines through the rupture force, if necessary.
 - c. Destroys enemy encountered an route.
 - d. Reserve force commander assumes control of rupture and reserve forces.
 - e. Reserve force commander directs rupture force to cover flanks.
 - f. Reserve force commander advises main body that forward security is in place.
- .9 ____ Main body moves through gap and into the center of wedge created by reserve and rupture forces.
- a. Moves out of encirclement with battalion CP and trains CP.
 - b. Conducts forward passage of lines through rear guard, if necessary.
 - c. Coordinates movement security with rear guard.
 - d. Moves rapidly to center of wedge created by reserve and rupture forces.
- .10 ____ Rear guard follows the main body.

- a. Moves through the gap after main body.
- b. Joins reserve and rupture forces.
- c. Maneuvers as necessary to protect rear of battalion forces.

.11 ____ Battalion transitions into a movement to contact.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The breakout is conducted so that all units escape encirclement from enemy forces. The rupture force attacks and holds penetration for battalion passage. The rear guard prevents enemy attack of battalion.

TASK: 10A.3.18 CONSOLIDATE ON A BATTALION OBJECTIVE/POSITION

CONDITION(S): The battalion has assaulted and seized an objective. The lead elements of the assault force have reached the objective.

OR

If an attack by fire was conducted, scouts have arrived to sweep the objective clear of remaining enemy forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Command group moves into position to control and influence the battalion.
 - a. Positions itself with lead elements, in the most critical areas, or where it can best view the battlefield.
 - b. Positions security elements to cover enemy avenues of approach.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander develops courses of action.
 - a. Identifies engagement areas along each approach where the enemy is most vulnerable.
 - b. Develops engagement criteria.
 - c. Determines when the unit must finish the consolidation process to prepare for an enemy counterattack.
 - d. Issues FRAGO.
 - e. Plans a hasty defense.
- .3 ____ Battalion destroys or captures all enemy remaining on the objective.
 - a. Assigns company objectives.
 - b. Company destroys, captures, or causes to withdraw, all enemy force from their assigned objectives.
 - c. Controls EPW pending processing.
- .4 ____ Battalion establishes a hasty defensive position.
 - a. Designates companies to occupy firing positions near objective.
 - b. Companies reposition as necessary to ensure all sectors of fire are covered.

- c. Establishes Local security.
 - d. Constructs hasty obstacles and barriers.
 - e. Adjacent units coordinate to ensure defensive positions can provide overlapping fire support.
 - f. FSC updates fire support target list.
 - g. NBC team emplaces M8A1 alarms and other early warning devices.
 - h. CIFS (if available) establishes aerial OPs to cover actions on the objective.
 - i. Elements conduct rehearsals, as time and situation permit.
- .5 ____ Battalion conducts reconnaissance.
- a. Patrols along likely enemy avenues of approach.
 - b. Patrols within range of overwatch elements.
 - c. If necessary, CIFS (if available) reconnoiter beyond the local patrols.
- .6 ____ Battalion commander and staff prepare to continue the mission.
- a. Make a map and visual reconnaissance of the terrain between present location and the next objective.
 - b. Continue to implement troop leading procedures in preparation for any on-order mission.
 - c. Issue FRAGOS as necessary.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All remaining enemy resistance is destroyed. Battalion prepares for further operations or to continue previous operation.

TASK: 10A.3.19 CONDUCT A LINKUP

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting an offensive operation that requires it to link up with another friendly force. The battalion is the moving force. The force the battalion is to link up with is stationary.

When the linkup is complete, the stationary force will conduct a passage of lines through the battalion. The headquarters directing the linkup has established boundaries, RFLs, general point of linkup, and subsequent mission and chain of command upon linkup.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander issues warning order.
- a. States nature of operation.
 - b. States earliest time of move, if applicable.
 - c. States time and place OPORD and FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Battalion CP coordinates communications requirements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Coordinates with higher headquarters.
 - b. Confirms CEOI compatibility.
 - c. If CEOI are different, confirms which unit will change CEOI.
 - d. Confirms CEOI recognition signals.
 - e. Coordinates with CIFS (if available), to extend communications.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander contacts other linkup commander on secure net and exchanges critical information.
- a. Designates linkup points.
 - b. Exchanges enemy and friendly situations.
 - c. Exchanges locations and types of obstacles (existing and reinforcing).
 - d. Exchanges fire support plans.
 - e. Exchanges air defense plans.
 - f. Transfers recognition signals.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander finalizes and issues OPORDs and FRAGOs to the battalion.
- .5 ____ Battalion initiates movement to contact.
- .6 ____ Battalion reaches LOA.
- a. Contacts stationary unit.
 - b. Coordinates for linkup of liaison parties at linkup points.
- .7 ____ Battalion commander dispatches liaison teams to contact other forces' teams at designated linkup points.
- .8 ____ Battalion achieves linkup at linkup points.
- a. Personnel manning linkup point report initial contact.
 - b. Lead element commander reports initial contact to battalion CP.
 - c. Lead element moves to linkup point.
 - d. Makes physical contact.
- .9 ____ Liaison teams exchange critical information.
- a. Identify designation and type of units to pass.
 - b. Exchange type and number of vehicles and order of march.
 - c. Determine mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - d. Transfer enemy information.
 - e. Determine friendly locations for day or night.
 - f. Determine contact point and coordination point locations.
 - g. Determine OPs and patrol routes.
 - h. Determine passage points, lanes, and alternates.
 - i. Determine obstacle locations and types.

- j. Determine CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
 - k. Determine BHL.
 - l. Determine AA locations and attack positions.
 - m. Transfer CEOI information.
 - n. Determine fire control measures.
 - o. Determine overwatching fires.
 - p. Exchange NBC contamination (if present).
 - q. Exchange or coordinate for support plans.
- .10 ____ Battalion assists rearward passage of the stationary force.
- .11 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters that linkup is complete.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Critical control measures are coordinated with the other force. The battalion completes the linkup by the time stated in the OPORD. Designated recognition signals are used, and neither unit suffers fratricide.

TASK: 10A.3.20 FILL A GAP

CONDITION(S): Enemy tactical operations, NBC, or intense conventional fire strikes have created gaps between subordinate battalions of the regiment or between regiments. Enemy contact is possible and the terrain must be held. Higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to fill the gap. The battalion has conducted a tactical road march and coordinated with the rear CP to rapidly clear the area. The OPORD specifies the LD where the gap appears to begin, the limit of advance along the FLOT, and the time by which the mission must be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion or company commander and staff plan for operation.
- a. Task organize as if conducting a zone reconnaissance or movement to contact.
 - b. Define lateral boundaries based on the known trace of organized units at the start of the mission.
 - c. Select an appropriate formation based on likelihood of enemy contact and terrain.
 - d. Select an appropriate movement technique based on tactical situation.
 - e. Plan for bypassing of obstacles or enemy, as necessary.
- .2 ____ Battalion moves to the gap areas.
- a. Moves to and crosses the LD.
 - b. Moves rapidly to the gap area.
 - c. Reports and bypasses enemy or obstacles encountered enroute in accordance with higher commander's intent.
 - d. Uses covered and concealed routes, if possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 ____ Battalion reconnoiters area and locates friendly units.
 - a. CIFS (if available) assets provide early warning by reconnoitering forward and to the flanks, if available.
 - b. Reports location of subordinate units (friendly or enemy) to higher headquarters.
 - c. Continues search until contact is made with flank units along the LD.
 - d. Modifies lateral boundaries to reflect actual location of units.
- .4 ____ Battalion or company restores temporary communication links between units.
 - a. Functions as a radio relay station.
 - b. Provides messenger or LO functions if radio communication is jammed or otherwise not possible.
- .5 ____ Battalion commander directs located units to return to their parent units through the rear area, remain in place until consolidated by parent unit, or move with the battalion providing additional combat power when needed.
- .6 ____ Upon reaching the LOA or adjusted LOA along a new FLOT, the battalion transitions into a screen or hasty defense until receipt of other orders.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Battalion fills gaps so that contact between friendly units can be established without engaging each other. Battalion locates and controls friendly units within the zone in accordance with the battalion commander's guidance.

TASK: 10A.3.21 CONDUCT A REARWARD PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations requiring a rearward passage of lines through a friendly unit. An OPORD or FRAGO has been issued specifying the latest time by which the passage must be completed. METT-TSL factors do not permit freedom to move around other friendly positions in the area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander issues warning order.
 - a. States nature of operation.
 - b. States earliest time to move.
 - c. States time and place OPORD or FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff determine critical information.
 - a. Determine phase line for battle handover.
 - b. Determine contact points.
 - c. Determine release points.
 - d. Determine passage points and lanes.
 - e. Determine AA locations.

- f. Determine obstacle plan for area between FEBA and BHL.
 - g. Determine location of emergency CSS assets.
 - h. Determine tentative fire support plans.
- .3 _____ Battalion commander exchanges required information with stationary unit commander on a secure net.
- a. Exchanges recognition signals.
 - b. Exchanges primary and alternate contact points.
 - c. Exchanges time to meet at primary contact point.
 - d. Determines aerial flight techniques.
 - e. Coordinates for exchange of LOs.
- .4 _____ Battalion forms a liaison teams headed by the battalion XO.
- a. Ensures teams include battalion and company XOs or their representative.
 - b. Ensures teams have escort vehicle.
- .5 _____ Liaison teams move to primary contact point.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .6 _____ Liaison teams exchange recognition signals and required information with the stationary unit liaison teams.
- a. Identify designation and type of unit to pass.
 - b. Exchange type and number of vehicles and order of march.
 - c. Determine mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - d. Discuss enemy situation.
 - e. Determine friendly locations for day or night.
 - f. Determine contact point and coordination point locations.
 - g. Determine OPs and patrol routes.
 - h. Determine passage points, lanes, and alternates.
 - i. Determine obstacle locations and types.
 - j. Determine CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
 - k. Determine BHL.
 - l. Determine AA locations and attack positions.
 - m. Transfer CEOI information.
 - n. Determine fire control measures.
 - o. Determine overwatching fires.
 - p. Exchange NBC contamination, if present.
 - q. Exchange or coordinate fire support plans.
- .7 _____ Liaison teams return to the battalion or company battalion CP.

- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .8 ____ Battalion commander finalizes and issues FRAGOs to his unit.
- .9 ____ Battalion breaks contact with the enemy force.
- a. Uses indirect fire to assist companies in breaking contact.
 - b. May perform local counterattacks to force enemy into hasty defense.
 - c. Takes advantage of enemy echelons to break contact.
- .10 ____ Battalion headquarters and trains collocate with stationary unit CP and trains.
- a. Move to a contact point using covered and concealed route.
 - b. Maintain security during movement.
 - c. Exchange recognition signals with stationary unit at contact point.
 - d. Follow stationary unit guides to preselected CP and trains locations.
- .11 ____ Contact point elements move to contact points, passage points, and release points.
- a. Move to locations using covered and concealed route.
 - b. Maintain security during movement.
 - c. Establish OPs.
 - d. Notify command group that passage points are occupied.
- .12 ____ Battalion moves through passage points.
- a. Forms columns and moves rapidly toward passage points.
 - b. Using secure means, forward company leader notifies stationary unit liaison officer that passing unit has begun movement.
 - c. Uses preselected covered and concealed routes.
 - d. Vehicle commanders exchange recognition signals with passage point personnel.
 - e. Vehicles do not halt as they pass through passage point.
 - f. Lead company picks up stationary unit guides.
 - g. Each passing company reports to collocated CPs when passage point has been passed.
 - h. Guides lead vehicles and personnel requiring emergency CSS to appropriate locations.
 - i. Guides release battalion vehicles at AA.
- .13 ____ Battalion completes battle handover.
- .14 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters that passage is complete.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion completes the passage of lines in accordance with the OPORD or FRAGO and the commander's intent. It does not disrupt the stationary unit's defense. Passage preparations are not detected by the enemy, and neither unit suffers losses due to fratricide.

TASK: 10A.3.22 ASSIST A REARWARD PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations requiring a rearward passage of lines of a unit through the battalion's area of operation. METT-TSL factors to not permit the passing unit freedom to move around the battalion's positions in the area. An OPORD or FRAGO has been issued specifying the latest time by which the passage must be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander issues a warning order.
 - a. States nature of operation.
 - b. States earliest time to move.
 - c. States time and place OPORD or FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and his staff determine critical information.
 - a. Determine phase line for battle handover.
 - b. Determine contact points.
 - c. Determine release points.
 - d. Determine passage points and lanes.
 - e. Determine obstacle plan for area between FEBA and BHL.
 - f. Determine location of emergency CSS assets.
 - g. Determine tentative fire support plan.
 - h. Determine type of assault.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander contacts passing unit commander on a secure net.
 - a. Transfers recognition signals.
 - b. Sends primary and alternate contact points.
 - c. Sends time to meet at primary contact point.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander dispatches a reconnaissance party to secure primary and alternate contact points and passage lines.
 - a. Locates contact points so they are easily recognizable on movement routes.
 - b. Locates passage lanes large enough for unimpeded movement of units in column or staggered column.
 - c. Ensures lanes provide cover and concealment and are clear of obstacles.

- d. Locates AA and attack positions where they will not interfere with stationary units but will provide cover, concealment, and room for dispersion.
 - e. Reports above data using secure means.
- .5 ____ Battalion forms liaison teams headed by the battalion XO.
- a. Teams include battalion and company XOs or their representatives.
 - b. Teams have escort vehicle.
- .6 ____ Liaison teams move to primary contact point.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .7 ____ Liaison teams exchange recognition signals and required information with passing unit Liaison team.
- a. Identify designation and type of unit to pass.
 - b. Identify type and number of vehicles.
 - c. State order of march.
 - d. Transmit mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - e. Disseminate information on enemy.
 - f. Determine friendly locations for day or night.
 - g. Determine contact point and coordination point locations.
 - h. Identify ground and aerial OPs and patrol routes.
 - i. Determine passage points and lanes.
 - j. Determine obstacle locations and types.
 - k. Identify CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
 - l. Identify the BHL.
 - m. Identify attack positions.
 - n. Transfer CEOI information.
 - o. Identify fire control measures.
 - p. Coordinate fire support plans (moving forces may require support from the stationary forces' artillery assets).
 - q. Exchange LOs.
- .8 ____ Liaison teams return to battalion or company battalion CP.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .9 ____ Battalion commander finalizes and issues a FRAGO.
- a. States earliest time to begin.
 - b. States order of passage.
 - c. States latest time by which passage must be complete.

- d. Identifies recognition signals.
 - e. Identifies passage points and lanes.
 - f. Identifies battle handover line.
 - g. Determines obstacle plan.
 - h. Determines fire plan.
 - i. Identifies AA locations.
 - j. Identifies contact points.
 - k. Identifies location of CSS assets.
 - l. Identifies vehicle identification.
 - m. Transfers CEOI information.
 - n. Identifies contaminated areas (if present).
- .10 ____ Contact point elements move to contact points, passage points, and release points.
- a. Move to locations using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Maintain security during movement.
 - c. Establish OPs.
 - d. Notify battalion CP that passage points are occupied.
- .11 ____ Contact point guides lead passing unit's co-locating battalion CP and trains CP to appropriate locations and exchange tactical information.
- a. Exchange recognition signals.
 - b. Guide passing battalion CP elements to stationary battalion CP.
 - c. Guide trains to stationary trains.
- .12 ____ Collocated battalion CPs call for indirect fires to cover passing unit's movement, if necessary.
- .13 ____ Contact point guides confirm recognition signals.
- a. Ensure appropriate signals are used.
 - b. Count vehicles.
 - c. Verify type of vehicles.
 - d. Report discrepancies to collocated CPs.
- .14 ____ Guides lead passing unit vehicles through stationary unit.
- a. Ensure vehicles do not halt.
 - b. Ensure vehicles do not stray from passage lanes.
 - c. Ensure personnel and vehicles requiring emergency CSS are led to appropriate locations.
 - d. Ensure guides release passing vehicles at AA or RP.
- .15 ____ Guides report to stationary battalion CP when passage is complete.
- .16 ____ Units complete battle handover and stationary unit assumes control.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion completes the passage of lines in accordance with the OPORD or FRAGO and the commander's intent. It does not disrupt the stationary unit's defense. Passage preparations are not detected by the enemy, and neither unit suffers losses due to fratricide.

TASK: 10A.3.23 CONDUCT A FORWARD PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations requiring a forward passage of lines through a friendly unit. METT-TSL factors do not permit the battalion freedom to move around other friendly positions in the area. An OPORD or FRAGO has been issued specifying the BHL and the time the passage will be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander issues warning order.
 - a. States nature of operation.
 - b. States earliest time of move.
 - c. States time and place OPORD or FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander determines control measures.
 - a. Determines contact points.
 - b. Determines release points.
 - c. Determines passage points and lanes.
 - d. Determines rally points.
 - e. Determines location of emergency CSS assets.
 - f. Determines attack positions.
 - g. Determines tentative fire support plan.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander contacts stationary unit commander on a secure net and relays required information.
 - a. Relays recognition signals.
 - b. Identifies primary and alternate contact points.
 - c. Relays time to meet at primary contact point.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander forms liaison teams headed by the battalion XO.
 - a. Ensures teams include battalion and company XOs or their representatives.
 - b. Ensures teams have escort vehicles.
- .5 ____ Liaison teams move to primary contact point.
 - a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.

- .6 _____ Liaison teams exchange recognition signals and specific information with the stationary unit liaison team.
- a. Identify designation and type of unit to pass.
 - b. Identify type and number of vehicles.
 - c. Identify order of march.
 - d. State mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - e. Determine enemy situation.
 - f. Determine friendly locations for day or night.
 - g. Verify contact point and coordination point locations.
 - h. Identify passage point, lanes, and air corridors.
 - i. Identify obstacle locations and types.
 - j. Identify CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
 - k. Coordinate location of the BHL.
 - l. Identify AA locations and attack positions.
 - m. Exchange CEOI information.
 - n. Determine fire control measures and overwatching fires.
- .7 _____ Liaison teams return to unit.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .8 _____ Battalion commander finalizes and issues FRAGOs to his unit.
- a. States earliest time to begin.
 - b. States order of passage.
 - c. States latest time by which passage must be completed.
 - d. Identifies recognition signals.
 - e. Identifies passage points, contact points, lanes, and BHL.
 - f. States obstacle fire plan.
 - g. States AA locations.
 - h. States location of CSS assets.
 - i. States vehicle identification.
 - j. Relays CEOI information.
 - k. Identifies contaminated areas, if applicable.
- .9 _____ Battalion headquarters and trains collocate with stationary unit CP and trains.
- a. Move to a contact point using a covered and concealed route.
 - b. Maintain security during movement.
 - c. Exchange recognition signals with stationary unit personnel at contact point.

- d. Follow stationary unit guides to preselected CP and trains locations.
- .10 ____ Contact point elements move to contact points, passage points, and release points.
- a. Move to locations using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Maintain security during movement.
 - c. Set up OPs.
 - d. Notify command group that passage points are occupied.
- .11 ____ Battalion moves through passage points.
- a. Forms columns and moves rapidly to passage point.
 - b. Reports to battalion CP that movement has begun.
 - c. Uses preselected covered and concealed routes during movement.
 - d. Vehicle commanders exchange recognition signals with passage point personnel.
 - e. Vehicles do not halt as they pass through passage point.
 - f. Vehicles do not stray from passage lanes.
 - g. Lead platoon picks up stationary unit guides.
 - h. Each passing platoon reports to collocated CPs that passage point has been passed.
 - i. Vehicles and personnel requiring emergency CSS are led to appropriate locations.
- .12 ____ Battalion completes battle handover.
- .13 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters that passage is complete.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion assists the passage of lines in accordance with OPORD. The passage does not disrupt the battalion's defense. Preparations for passage are not detected by the enemy, and neither unit suffers losses due to fratricide.

TASK: 10A.3.24 ASSIST A FORWARD PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations requiring a forward passage of lines through a friendly unit. METT-TSL factors do not permit the battalion freedom to move around other friendly positions in the area. An OPORD or FRAGO has been issued specifying the time the passage will be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander issues a warning order.
- a. States nature of operation.
 - b. States earliest time of move.
 - c. States time and place OPORD or FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Battalion CP group plans the control measures.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- a. Determines phase line for battle handover.
 - b. Determines contact points and release points.
 - c. Identifies passage points and lanes.
 - d. Determines Location of emergency CSS assets.
 - e. Determines attack positions.
 - f. Determines types air corridors.
- .3 ____ The moving unit commander contacts the stationary commander on a secure net.
- a. Exchanges recognition signals.
 - b. Exchanges primary and alternate contact points.
 - c. Exchanges time to meet at primary contact point.
- .4 ____ Battalion dispatches elements to secure primary and alternate contact points and passage lanes.
- a. Contact point are easily recognizable and located on movement routes.
 - b. Reconnaissance party locates passage lanes large enough for unimpeded movement of units in column or staggered column.
 - c. Lanes provide cover and concealment and are clear of obstacles.
 - d. Reconnaissance party locates AA and attack positions where they will not interfere with stationary units but will provide cover, concealment, and room for dispersion.
 - e. Reconnaissance party reports above data using secure means to battalion commander or XO.
- .5 ____ Battalion forms liaison teams led by the battalion XO.
- a. Ensures teams include company XOs or their representatives.
 - b. Ensures teams have escort vehicle.
- .6 ____ Liaison teams move to primary contact point.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .7 ____ Liaison teams exchange recognition signals and required information with passing unit liaison team.
- a. Identify designation and type of unit to pass.
 - b. Exchange type and number of vehicles.
 - c. Identify order of march.
 - d. Determine mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - e. Determine enemy situation.
 - f. Identify friendly locations for day or night.
 - g. Identify contact point and coordination point locations.
 - h. Identify ground and aerial OPs and patrol routes.
 - i. Identify passage points, lanes, attack positions, and AAs.
 - j. Identify obstacle locations and types.

- k. Identify CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
 - l. Identify BHL.
 - m. Relay CEOI information.
 - n. Identify fire control measures and overwatching fires.
- .8 ____ Liaison teams return to battalion CP.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .9 ____ Battalion commander finalizes and issues a FRAGO.
- a. States time that contact points must be occupied.
 - b. States order of passage.
 - c. States latest time by which passage must be complete.
 - d. Identifies recognition signals.
 - e. Identifies passage points and lanes and BHL.
 - f. Identifies obstacle and fire plan.
 - g. States AA locations and contact points.
 - h. States locations of CSS assets.
 - i. Identifies ground and aerial vehicle identification markings.
 - j. Relays CEOI information.
 - k. Identifies contaminated areas (if applicable).
- .10 ____ Contact point element move to contact points, passage points, and release points.
- a. Move to locations using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Maintain security during movement.
 - c. Set up OPs.
 - d. Notify battalion CP that passage points are occupied.
- .11 ____ Contact point guides lead passing unit's collocating battalion CP and trains to appropriate locations.
- a. Exchange recognition signals.
 - b. Guide passing battalion CP elements to stationary battalion CP.
 - c. Guide passing trains to stationary trains.
- .12 ____ Collocated battalion CPs execute command and control of passage.
- .13 ____ Contact point guides confirm recognition signals.
- a. Ensure appropriate signals are used.
 - b. Count number of vehicles.
 - c. Verify types of vehicles.
 - d. Report discrepancies to collocated CPs.

- .14 ____ Guides lead passing unit vehicles through stationary unit.
- a. Ensure vehicles do not halt.
 - b. Ensure vehicles do not stray from passage lanes.
 - c. Ensure personnel and vehicles requiring emergency CSS are led to appropriate locations.
- .15 ____ Units complete battle handover.
- .16 ____ Guides report to stationary battalion CP that passage is complete.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Battalion completes passage of lines in accordance with OPORD. The passage does not disrupt stationary unit's defense. Preparations for passage are not detected by the enemy, and neither battalion suffers losses due to fratricide.

TASK: 10A.3.25 CONDUCT A RELIEF

CONDITION(S): An order has been received from higher headquarters to conduct a relief in place. The higher commander has specified a time by which the relief must be completed and has authorized direct coordination.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Incoming and outgoing commanders issue warning orders.
- a. State nature of operation.
 - b. State earliest time of move.
 - c. State time and place OPDRD or FRAGO will be given.
- .2 ____ Incoming unit commander immediately establishes contact with unit to be relieved.
- .3 ____ Incoming battalion commander develops his plan.
- a. Determines use of an advance party.
 - b. Determines reconnaissance needs.
 - c. Identifies and adjusts the outgoing battalion's normal pattern of activity.
 - d. Determines location of relieving battalion's CP.
 - e. Determines relief of CS elements.
 - f. Identifies and adjusts to limited visibility conditions.
 - g. Determines routes of movement.
- .4 ____ Outgoing unit commander plans movement control.
- a. Determines traffic control and designation of AAs for outgoing battalion elements.
 - b. Determines routes into and out of positions.
 - c. Determines guides to be provided for the incoming battalion.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 ____ Outgoing unit commander designates method of relief.
 - a. Designates relief in place or area relief.
 - b. Designates whether all units will be relieved simultaneously or one at a time.
- .6 ____ Incoming battalion commander contacts outgoing unit commander on a secure net.
 - a. Relays recognition signals.
 - b. Relays primary and alternate contact points.
 - c. Relays time to meet at primary contact point.
- .7 ____ Outgoing unit commander dispatches security element to secure primary and alternate contact points.
- .8 ____ Battalion commanders constitute liaison teams.
 - a. Ensure teams consist of battalion command group or other representatives as designated by the battalion commander.
 - b. Ensure liaison is made down to company level.
 - c. Ensure teams have escort vehicle.
- .9 ____ Liaison teams exchange recognition signals and transfer other required information.
 - a. Exchange location of individual vehicle and infantry fighting positions.
 - b. Exchange location of the commanders.
 - c. Exchange information on the enemy situation.
 - d. Exchange the outgoing and incoming units' plans.
 - e. Transfer fire plans and obstacle plans.
 - f. Transfer information on types of weapon systems being relieved.
 - g. Exchange the time, sequence, and method of relief.
 - h. Exchange the location and disposition of obstacles, and coordinate transfer of responsibility.
 - i. Transfer excess supplies.
 - j. Identify equipment for exchange.
 - k. Exchange movement control and CEOI information.
- .10 ____ Liaison teams return to respective battalions.
 - a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employ appropriate technique of movement.
- .11 ____ Incoming and outgoing battalion commanders finalize and issue OPORD or FRAGO.
 - a. The time to begin the relief.
 - b. The time the relief is to be completed.
 - c. The method for conducting the relief.
 - d. Critical control measures.
 - e. When change of command of the position will occur.

- f. Concept of subsequent missions.
 - g. OPSEC considerations.
 - h. Plans for additional positions.
 - i. Enemy situation.
 - j. Fire support plan.
 - k. Locations of obstacles and minefields and transfer of responsibility.
 - l. Contingency plans in case of enemy attack during the relief.
 - m. Transfer of ammunition and excess supplies.
- .12 ____ Incoming battalion maintains radio-listening silence and blackout.
- a. Enforces light discipline.
 - b. Enforces noise discipline.
- .13 ____ Incoming battalion commander, XO, and S3 enter the outgoing battalion's frequency and monitor its net.
- .14 ____ Incoming battalion's battalion CP and trains collocate with the outgoing unit battalion CP and trains to coordinate the execution of the relief and transfer of equipment.
- a. Transfer excess ammunition.
 - b. Transfer fuel and water.
 - c. Transfer medical supplies.
- .15 ____ Incoming battalion receives guides from the unit being relieved and confirms recognition signals.
- a. Ensures appropriate signals are used.
 - b. Counts number of vehicles.
 - c. Verifies types of vehicles.
 - d. Reports discrepancies to the collocated CPs.
- .16 ____ FSC calls for indirect fires or smoke, if necessary.
- a. Calls fire or smoke on known and suspected enemy locations.
 - b. Calls fire or smoke on likely enemy avenues of approach.
- .17 ____ The commander orders the units to execute a relief in place with all units being relieved simultaneously.
- a. Incoming elements move along designated routes to the outgoing element's positions.
 - b. Incoming elements relieve the other elements simultaneously.
 - c. Outgoing elements withdraw to AA immediately once they are relieved.
 - d. Each element reports to collocated battalion CPs when passage and release points have been passed.
- .18 ____ The commander orders the battalion to execute a relief in place with one unit relieved at a time.
- a. Incoming elements move to the outgoing elements' positions.
 - b. Relief in place occurs at lower levels.

- c. Once a relieved element clears a specified point (RP), another incoming element starts to move to its outgoing element's location.
 - d. Each element reports to collocated battalion CPs when passage and release points have been released.
- .19 ____ The commander directs the battalion to execute an area relief with all units being relieved simultaneously.
- a. Incoming elements occupy alternate positions.
 - b. Outgoing element move to an AA in the rear to facilitate command and control.
 - c. Each element reports to collocated battalion CPs when passage and release points have been reached.
- .20 ____ The commander directs the battalion to execute an area relief with one unit relieved at a time.
- a. Incoming elements move to an AA to the rear of the element to be relieved.
 - b. The first incoming element moves to the position of the first element to be relieved.
 - c. Outgoing elements move to an AA behind the position.
 - d. A second element begins replacement once the first outgoing element reaches and clears its RP.
 - e. Transfer of supplies is completed.
 - f. Each element reports to collocated battalion CPs when passage and release points have been released.
- .21 ____ Battalions exchange equipment as necessary.
- a. Exchange machine gun tripods and other supports for crew-served weapons or equipment.
 - b. Exchange wire.
 - c. Exchange emplaced sensors and radar sets.
 - d. Exchange M8 alarms.
 - e. Exchange bulky or excess supplies.
- .22 ____ Battalion notifies outgoing and incoming units that enemy contact has been made.
- a. Continues normal radio traffic.
 - b. If command has not passed, the incoming battalion becomes OPCON to the outgoing unit and is absorbed into outgoing unit positions.
 - c. If command has passed, the outgoing commander and staff become OPCON to the incoming battalion.
- .23 ____ Designated outgoing unit personnel remain with incoming battalion.
- a. Exchange and transfer current information.
 - b. Exchange plans.
 - c. Remain with incoming battalion until personnel are thoroughly familiar with the area.
- .24 ____ Outgoing commander passes command to incoming commander.
- a. Passes command at time designated by the task force commander or when the majority of his battalion is in position.
 - b. Incoming commander assumes control over elements not yet relieved.

- .25 ____ Incoming battalion switches back to its frequency.
- a. Breaks radio-listening silence, if authorized.
 - b. Transmits to maintain pattern of the outgoing battalion's communication.
- .26 ____ Incoming battalion commander reports to higher headquarters that the relief has been completed.
- a. Each incoming element reports to battalion commander that the relief has been completed.
 - b. Incoming battalion commander consolidates reports.
 - c. Commander forwards consolidated reports to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The relief in place is completed by the time stated in higher commander's order. The incoming unit coordinates the relief and occupies relieved unit's positions without detection by the enemy. Battle handover is accomplished without confusion or delay.

10A.4 FIRE SUPPORT

TASK: 10A.4.1 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, direct fire support, EW, and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has indirect and direct fire, both rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Upon receipt of the warning order, begin initial fire support planning based on the commander's intent, the factors of METT-TSL, and guidance from higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ Requests available intelligence and combat information on the enemy, his disposition, his capabilities, his intentions (DRAW-DE), his identified vulnerabilities, command and control nodes, the area of operations, and the weather.
- .3 ____ Requests aerial imagery and other available special topographic products.
- .4 ____ Conducts a detailed terrain analysis to highlight military aspects of terrain using KOCOA.
- .5 ____ Advises the battalion commander on how best to use available fire support assets and maintains constant coordination with the 5-2 and 5-3.
- .6 ____ Prepares the artillery, naval surface fire support, and aviation estimates of supportability.
- .7 ____ Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver, in either offense or defense, effectively integrating fire support into the plan.
- .8 ____ Recommends priorities of fires, allocation of assets, positioning of artillery, fire support coordination measures, and weapons constraints to provide for future operations, and provides guidance on the attack of specific targets.
- .9 ____ Recommends the allocation of available fires to subordinate units, counterfire, interdiction, and suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) fires.

14 Oct 94

- .10 ____ Identifies any ammunition and target restrictions, Rules of Engagement (ROE) restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of artillery, NSFS, organic mortars, and air support.
- .11 ____ Assigns priority of fires to the main attack.
- .12 ____ Provides guidance on the desired effects (i.e., suppress, neutralize, or destroy) on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available.
- .13 ____ Makes a recommendation to the battalion commander on whether to fire preparation fires.
- .14 ____ Analyzes the targets to determine how much of and type of ordnance is required to destroy, neutralize, or suppress them.
- .15 ____ Determines the NSFS capabilities of the ships assigned in support; i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
- .16 ____ Develops NSFS, air, and artillery estimates of requirements.
- .17 ____ Consolidates overall fire support requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
- .18 ____ Submits during amphibious operations a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
- .19 ____ Submits overall fire support requirements for air, NSFS, and artillery to the higher command in a timely manner.
- .20 ____ Submits request for jamming of enemy command and conduct of fire nets in a timely manner.
- .21 ____ Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace to include authority to change the priority and instructions for conflict resolution.
- .22 ____ Develops plans for the employment of obscuration and screening fires.
- .23 ____ Coordinates and gains approval from the appropriate source when considering the employment of scatterable artillery and air delivered nines, screen jamming, and jamming of enemy counterbattery radar.
- .24 ____ Plans counterpreparation fires to support the plan for the defense each time the battalion makes an extended halt.
- .25 ____ Plans SEAD fires for targets in the vicinity of known or suspected surface to air missiles (SAM) or anti-aircraft artillery (AAA) defenses.
- .26 ____ Consolidates and integrates subordinate elements' fire support plans into the battalion's plan.
- .27 ____ Submits requests for the scheduling of landing beach preparation fires to include procedures for adjusting the delivery of NSFS in relation to the movement of assault craft and the determination of safety limits during amphibious operations.
- .28 ____ Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations.
- .29 ____ Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the commander for approval.
- .30 ____ Publishes the battalion fire support plan as a separate supporting appendix to the operations annex of the operations order.
- .31 ____ Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as the zones of action, boundaries, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, fire support coordination measures, and target locations for all prearranged fires.
- .32 ____ Considers combat service support needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
- .33 ____ Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .34 ____ Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, the positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
- .35 ____ Plans for only essential targets. Identifies priority targets and makes plans to shift as the operation progresses.
- .36 ____ Plans for target acquisition and observation to include plans for laser employment.
- .37 ____ Develops plans to shift fires.
- .38 ____ Plans for fires to cover obstacles, barriers, gaps in friendly lines and flanks.
- .39 ____ Plans for the integration of indirect fires and air support with direct fire weapons.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT

This concept provides guidance in the following areas:

1. General targets or areas which are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver or be prepared to deliver fires.
2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation.
3. Exclusive or exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or to accomplish a particular task.
4. Whether a preparation is to be fired, and if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires.
5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).
6. For artillery, in general terms, the time and place of landing.

TASK: 10A.4.2 FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, Ew, and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has indirect and direct fire weapons, rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Ensures that the FSCC is staffed and equipped by representatives from each fire support asset in support of the battalion.
- .2 ____ Each liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and limitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
- .3 ____ Establishes methods to disseminate, in a timely and continuous manner, the information required and requested by the subordinate elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- .4 ____ Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
- .5 ____ Identifies and disseminates armament codes to be used.
- .6 ____ Coordinates procedures to allow for timely updates on the threat and the weather.
- .7 ____ Monitors the concurrent development of air and NSFS fire plans by the SACC and monitors the targeting process during amphibious operations.
- .8 ____ Establishes procedures to ensure that requests for preplanned air, NSFS, and communications and noncommunications jamming are made through the appropriate channels in a timely manner, recorded and staffed to avoid duplication, and examined to ensure proper weapons selection.
- .9 ____ Coordinates procedures to ensure the timely receipt of the daily air tasking order (ATO).
- .10 ____ Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications.
- .11 ____ Maintains the status of all available fire support assets.
- .12 ____ Provides GCE representative to work in the SACC during the period prior to the passage of coordination responsibility ashore.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10A.4.3 EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, direct fire support, and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Provides recommendations for the establishment and location of fire support coordination measures; and those designated maneuver control measures which best facilitate maneuver actions and provide safeguards to protect friendly units.
- .2 ____ Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of other supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets, firing positions for artillery and mortars, and fire support areas for naval surface fire support ships.
- .3 ____ Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in cases of smoke, illumination, and/or fragmentation patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
- .4 ____ Coordinates with adjacent or higher units' FSCC for clearance if fires or the effects of those fires impact in another unit's zone or come within the constraints imposed by the higher FSCC.
- .5 ____ Ensures that all locations designated as Restricted Fire Areas (RFA)/No Fire Areas (NFA)/ are clearly marked on fire plan overlays, and disseminated to subordinate unit commanders and FO's.
- .6 ____ Plans the integration of air and surface-delivered fires using either formal or informal airspace coordination measures.
- .7 ____ Prepares coordinating instructions for the coordination and control of supporting arms.
- .8 ____ Provides input to the ACE for the preparation of a pilot's/controller's handbook.
- .9 ____ Coordinates with other fire support agencies to acquire tentative clearances, as required.

- .10 ____ Uses various aids to help in FS planning and coordination; e.g., attack guidance matrix or target precedence list, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, fire support matrix and other support plans.
- .11 ____ Establish a common method for timing the delivery of fires within the unit. The method established may be synchronization using either "zulu" or "local" time zone.
- .12 ____ Conduct fire support coordination using the unit's standing operating procedures (SOP).
- .13 ____ Maintain adequate communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher echelons to facilitate fire support coordination.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10A.4.4 EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, EW and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Exploits all collection assets organic to the battalion (e.g. NVG's, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
- .2 ____ Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the higher unit as well as theater assets.
- .3 ____ Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the battalion collection effort.
- .4 ____ Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the battalion. (KI)
- .5 ____ Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
- .6 ____ Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage or casualties.
- .7 ____ Establishes targeting procedures that ensure the timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the target list.
- .8 ____ Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
- .9 ____ Records target data on target cards, overlays, and other records.
- .10 ____ Coordinates the use of a common target designation system with the higher unit.
- .11 ____ Utilizes a target precedence list or the target value analysis (TVA) methodology including TVA spreadsheets and target sheets.
- .12 ____ Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the target list to include changes in the fire support means requested.
- .13 ____ Considers close and deep targets.
- .14 ____ Develops programs of targets for counterfire, counter-mechanized, and SEAD fires.

- .15 ____ Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TARGET PRIORITIES

Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission. Specifically, priorities are given those targets that can:

1. Prevent the execution of the plan Priority 1.
 2. Seriously interfere with the plan Priority 2.
 3. Cause serious interference later Priority 3.
 4. Cause limited interference Priority 4.
-

TASK: 10A.4.5 PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, direct fire support, EW and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has indirect and direct fire weapons, rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Plans for the landing of artillery early in the assault during amphibious operations.
- .2 ____ Makes recommendations for the operational employment of Remote Piloted Vehicles (PPPV) for reconnaissance, target acquisition, and damage assessments.
- .3 ____ Coordinates with the Direct Support (DS) artillery commander to ensure that planned artillery positions support the scheme of maneuver.
- .4 ____ Submits recommendations for the positioning and zones of fire for NSFS.
- .5 ____ Integrates the plan for the delivery of naval surface fire support with helicopter approach lanes and fixed-wing routes into and out of the Amphibious Objective Area (AOA) during amphibious operations,
- .6 ____ Allocates final protective fires (FPF).
- .7 ____ Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that adequate artillery ammunition is available to accommodate the fire support plan.
- .8 ____ Determines the requirement to register any fire support assets.
- .9 ____ Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams equipped with laser designators.
- .10 ____ Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priority.
- .11 ____ Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
- .12 ____ Provides schedules of fire support to subordinate elements, as requested.
- .13 ____ Makes recommendations for the use of naval aviation observers.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10A.4.6 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION ASHORE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations. A FSCC is either established and controlling fires or preparing to assume control.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Maintains current status on the tactical situation and fire support coordination measures in effect and maintains lists of fires to be coordinated, the locations of artillery ashore, and naval surface fire support ships available.
- .2 ____ Establishes reliable and uninterrupted communications with both subordinate elements and fire support agencies within 30 minutes after arrival on the beach during amphibious operations.
- .3 ____ Requests transfer of responsibility for control and coordination of supporting fires during amphibious operations after communications are established and phasing control checklists are completed.
- .4 ____ Assumes responsibility for the overall coordination of air, NSFS, and artillery.
- .5 ____ Clears request for fire support in less than 60 seconds based on "silence is consent" or on unit policy.
- .6 ____ Coordinates the attack of targets in the priority established in the operations order or according to the commander's changes based on the tactical situation.
- .7 ____ Utilizes all the fire support in the commander's zone of action.
- .8 ____ Manages the flow of information in the FSCC so that critical information is exchanged in a timely manner.
- .9 ____ Displays essential information on status boards, maps, and overlays, and ensures their timely update.
- .10 ____ Maintains a detailed plot of friendly positions, civilian population concentrations, activities (particularly the location of lead elements), and places protected by the law of war.
- .11 ____ Clears all missions with adjacent units that have fires impacting in or affecting their zone.
- .12 ____ Monitors the execution of fire missions and air strikes to ensure that the requested support is delivered.
- .13 ____ Selects the most effective fire support means to engage planned targets and targets of opportunity.
- .14 ____ Receives and plots firing data (i.e., location (from/to), time (from/to). and altitude from the firing unit) in order to promulgate information to ensure mutual use of airspace.
- .15 ____ Maintains an overlay of aircraft control points.
- .16 ____ Disseminates Airspace Coordination Areas (ACA) as required in a timely manner.
- .17 ____ Demonstrates the ability to integrate supporting arms by coordinating an air strike and SEAD fires.
- .18 ____ Adjusts the schedule of fires based on the advance of maneuver units, changes in priorities, and any changes to the scheme of maneuver.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- .19 ____ Responds quickly to targeting data and immediate fire support requests to coordinate the delivery of fire support on high payoff targets.
- .20 ____ Resolves fire support conflicts between elements of the landing force as well as conflicts between direct air support missions and indirect fire missions.
- .21 ____ Establishes communications with the artillery, reconnaissance, and command element immediately upon their landing in order to coordinate changes to the fire support plan, as required.
- .22 ____ Maintains the location of all artillery elements and their firing capabilities.
- .23 ____ Coordinates the movement of the mortar platoon or any of its sections.
- .24 ____ Maintains the status of remaining air sorties allocated, aircraft on-call, and all preplanned air missions for the next 24 hours.
- .25 ____ Requests additional fire support and EW support from higher command and supporting forces, if required.
- .26 ____ Coordinates the movement of direct support ship(s) with the higher command element.
- .27 ____ Monitors the NSFS spot nets, providing clearance on requests and, when necessary, relaying requests for fire.
- .28 ____ Maintains reliable ship-to-shore radio communications on the NSFS spot net.
- .29 ____ Maintains information on ship's ammunition status and rotation schedule.
- .30 ____ Utilizes the air control personnel to aid in the quick response of aircraft to changes in the tactical situation.
- .31 ____ Utilizes SHELREP's and enemy order of battle overlays to develop counterbattery and countermortar fire data.
- .32 ____ Cancels missions if they are no longer required; e.g., if target has moved, or if previously granted clearance is canceled.
- .33 ____ Maintains ammunition status information on all artillery, mortar, and NSFS elements.
- .34 ____ Identifies shortages of any type of ammunition which could affect operations.
- .35 ____ Determines if any temporary fire support coordination measures are required, and cancels those no longer required to facilitate attack of targets or provide troop safety.
- .36 ____ Plans fires and aircraft missions in support of future operations and contingency plans in coordination with the S-3.
- .37 ____ Recommends changes to the fire support coordination measures based on changes to the tactical situation.
- .38 ____ Maintains a record of targets fired on, battle damage assessment (BDA) assessed, and targets not engaged and informs the S-2, S-3, and the command element.
- .39 ____ Monitors the Joint Tactical Air Strike Request (JTAR) net for information or for clearance, if required, on requests for immediate air support.
- .40 ____ Designates priority targets for engagement and updates these targets as the situation changes.
- .41 ____ Determines whether SEAD fires are required based on input from the air officer, the S-2 and other intelligence sources, and determines the amount required.
- .42 ____ Coordinates the artillery requirement for displacement, time, and routes with the artillery commander.
- .43 ____ Maintains an FSCC journal.
- .44 ____ Demonstrates the ability to displace the FSCC by echelon without a loss of control or degradation of support.

- .45 ____ Establishes reliable communications with the operational system control center (SYSCON) to coordinate communications restoration.
- .46 ____ Utilizes liaison personnel located in the FSCC effectively.
- .47 ____ Provides continuous updates on the current situation to the fire support units.
- .48 ____ Utilizes a fire support matrix to manage the execution of the fire support plan.
- .49 ____ Ensures that the delivery of all fire support is conducted per the prohibitions in the law of war regarding military necessity and causing unnecessary suffering or destruction of property.
- .50 ____ Anticipates CAS requirements and coordinates the assignment of air alert status.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

10A.5 MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK: 10A.5.1 CONDUCT IN-STRIDE BREACH OF AN OBSTACLE

CONDITION(S): Battalion is conducting an offensive operation. Company locates an obstacle that cannot be bypassed. Battalion commander decides to conduct a breach of the obstacle. Not required to be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion elements react to the enemy obstacle.
 - a. Elements in contact perform actions on contact.
 - b. Follow-on units disperse.
- .2 ____ Battalion elements conduct mounted, dismounted, and aerial reconnaissance of the obstacle and surrounding area.
 - a. Determine nature and extent of obstacle.
 - b. Determine possible bypass routes.
 - c. Identify gaps in the location.
 - d. Determine enemy location and activity.
 - e. Report findings to battalion commander.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander determines whether obstacle will be bypassed, breached, or forced through.
 - a. Selects bypass if there is a route that protects the unit from hostile fire, allows the follow-on units to maintain their rate of movement, and can be bypassed with less time and/or fewer assets than a breach.
 - b. Selects breach if no bypass routes exist or they lead into obvious enemy engagement areas.
 - c. Selects forcing through if speed is essential, appropriate breaching equipment is unavailable, and no bypass routes exist or they lead into obvious enemy engagement areas.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander determines method of breaching.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Analyzes reconnaissance data.
 - b. Selects method on the basis of available equipment and time.
 - c. Notifies higher headquarters of intent to breach and of selected method.
- .5 ____ Battalion commander positions battalion for the breach.
- a. Positions himself forward for better visibility and control.
 - b. Designates support force and directs them to take overwatch position.
 - c. Directs breach force to move to obstacle.
 - d. Attaches engineer assets, if any, to the breach force.
- .6 ____ Support forces move to an overwatch position.
- a. Select a position that overwatches breaching operations and, if necessary, enemy positions.
 - b. Use available cover and concealment during movement to avoid enemy optical or radar measures.
 - c. Mortar platoon positions provide suppressive and screening fires.
- .7 ____ Support force provides overwatch for breach force.
- a. Monitors breach force and assault force radio nets.
 - b. Calls for and adjusts indirect suppressive fires on known or suspected enemy positions.
 - c. Employs smoke to obscure enemy observation on the obstacle.
 - d. Direct-fire weapons provide suppressive fires on known or suspected enemy positions.
 - e. Executes actions on contact if contact is made.
- .8 ____ Breach force prepares to breach the obstacle.
- a. Secures near and far side of the obstacle.
 - b. Occupies covered and concealed positions.
 - c. Prepares equipment, demolition, and routes to the obstacles.
- .9 ____ Breach force neutralizes booby traps and antihandling devices on obstacles.
- a. Engineers inspect obstacles and surrounding area for booby traps, antihandling devices, and antipersonnel mines.
 - b. Engineers neutralize booby traps and anti-personnel mines.
- .10 ____ Breach force creates lanes for the battalion.
- a. Reduces wood, steel, concrete, and natural obstacles by detonating explosives.
 - b. Reduces ditches, road craters, log cribs, and urban terrain rubble.
 - c. Creates foot lanes through the obstacle.
 - d. Creates vehicle lanes.
- .11 ____ Breach force marks breached lane for vehicles.
- a. Uses 2-inch cloth tape secured with rocks, dirt, or other field-expedient means to mark entrances and exits.

- b. Marks sides of lanes.
- .12 ____ If unable to create lanes, breach force emplaces bridging over the obstacle.
- .13 ____ Assault force moves through the lane(s) to defeat hostile forces.
- a. Employs mortar fires and any supporting artillery to suppress enemy fires with HE and obscure enemy observation capabilities with smoke.
 - b. Establishes hasty defensive positions while battalion passes through the obstacle.
- .14 ____ Battalion improves the breach site.
- a. Support force continues to overwatch or joins assault force.
 - b. Commander uses attached engineer assets.
 - c. Improves the site only for assault traffic.
- .15 ____ Commander supports information to higher headquarters.
- a. Reports completion of breach.
 - b. Reports trafficability.
 - c. Reports location of breached lanes.
 - d. Reports enemy situation.
- .16 ____ Battalion continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The breach is conducted so that security and support elements maintain security. All vehicles and personnel clear the obstacle after lanes are marked and cleared. Completion is reported to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10A.5.2 CONDUCT A HASTY RIVER/GAP CROSSING

CONDITION(S): The battalion has encountered a river or gap. Reconnaissance elements have gathered initial data (such as location, possible bypass routes). Based on that data, the commander has developed a tentative crossing plan. He has designated a support force, and an assault force with responsibility for recovering the AVLB (if one is used). Engineer assets are attached. The battalion commander has specified the latest time at which the river/gap must be crossed. The bridge (if available) is secured before enemy can destroy it.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Reconnaissance teams conduct mounted and dismounted reconnaissance of water obstacle or gap and surrounding area.
- a. Locate and secure bridges within the area.
 - b. Determine possible bypass routes.
 - c. Identify the Location.
 - d. Determine enemy location and activity.
 - e. Report findings to battalion commander.

- .2 ____ Battalion commander-determines whether water obstacle or gap will be bypassed or crossed.
 - a. Selects bypass route (if one exists) that protects the unit from hostile fire, allows the follow-on units to maintain their rate of movement, and can be bypassed with less time and fewer assets than crossing.
 - b. Selects crossing if no bypass route(s) exist or the bypass route(s) lead into obvious enemy engagement areas.

- .3 ____ Battalion commander and staff modify the crossing plan.
 - a. Select possible crossing sites based on reconnaissance data.
 - b. Use a broad crossing front to reduce congestion and vulnerability.
 - c. Determine the amount of crossing equipment available.
 - d. Determine enemy's defense or most probable course of action along with the obstacle's physical characteristics.
 - e. Plan protection of the force and use of darkness and smoke.
 - f. Plan command and control.
 - g. Determine timing of crossing (day or night).

- .4 ____ Battalion commander issues FRAGO.
 - a. Support force moves to position(s) to overwatch ground reconnaissance team.
 - b. Support force secures near side.
 - c. Scouts dismount to inspect area surrounding crossing and its approaches.
 - d. Reconnaissance team reconnoiters the crossings or gap.

- .5 ____ Battalion commander and staff finalize river crossing plan.
 - a. Select crossing site(s).
 - b. Establish routes.
 - c. Designate release points or lines.
 - d. Designate crossing areas.
 - e. Designate sequence and schedule of crossing units.
 - f. Ensure assault force has crossing assets well forward.
 - g. Designate crossing site control officer.
 - h. Plan air defense protection of crossing site.
 - i. Plan suppressive fires and smoke to cover crossing.
 - j. Select far-side objectives that allow protection of crossing elements.

- .6 ____ Battalion moves through crossing site.
 - a. Commander positions himself to provide overwatch of crossing operation and of surrounding dominant terrain.
 - b. Commander and FSC employ smoke or fire, as necessary.
 - c. Security or breach force crosses initially to secure far side of the crossing.

- d. Remainder of battalion (less support force) moves rapidly through crossing site to overwatching positions.
 - e. Crosses in specified order and maintains dispersion.
 - f. Support force crosses site and rejoins battalion.
 - g. Recovers AVLB, if used.
 - h. Completes crossing within designated time.
- .7 ____ Battalion commander reports to higher headquarters.
- a. Specifies completion of crossing.
 - b. Specifies requirements for combat support or CSS.
 - c. Identifies current position.
- .8 ____ Battalion continues its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All vehicles and personnel cross the river or gap by the time stated in the OPORD. Battalion security is maintained.

TASK: 10A.5.3 REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations when one or more of the following occur: a brilliant flash of light is sighted, a mushroom cloud is sighted, or unit experiences impact of the nuclear blast. Must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion CP reacts to nuclear attack.
- a. Takes immediate action.
 - b. Reestablishes communication.
 - c. Sends NBC-1 report by secure means to higher headquarters if the unit is specified as a designated observer.
 - d. Administers emergency first aid and evacuates casualties.
 - e. Implements continuous monitoring.
 - f. Submits damage assessment to higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ CP personnel extinguish fires.
- a. Extinguish secondary fires caused smoldering debris, overturned stoves, heaters, and damaged electrical wiring.
 - b. Extinguish fires before they spread.
- .3 ____ CP personnel and gun crews check weapon systems.

- a. Inspect gun bores and mechanisms for serviceability. Field strip and clean before firing.
 - b. Check the lay of the weapons.
- .4 ____ Battalion reestablishes C3 following the blast.
- a. Subechelons report casualties to unit headquarters.
 - b. Subechelons assess and report damage to unit headquarters.
 - c. Initiates area damage control plan, if required.
 - d. Assumes MOPP level specified by commander.
- .5 ____ COC consolidates unit data and submits NBC reports.
- a. Receives and consolidates unit data and passes it on to higher headquarters.
 - b. Assesses the reported initial radiation dose.
 - c. Prepares a simplified fall-out prediction.
- .6 ____ COC prepares WIA and KIA for evacuation.
- a. Identifies and treats WIA.
 - b. Decontaminates KIA's before evacuation.
 - c. Wraps and marks KIA's.
 - d. Coordinates with higher headquarters for medical evacuation.
- .7 ____ NBC officer initiates coordination for hasty decontamination, if required.
- .8 ____ NBC defense teams monitor continuously.
- a. Submit NBC reports.
 - b. Gather and report dosimeter data.
 - c. Plot NBC-3 report (if received) and inform commander.
 - d. Request optimum time of exit from higher headquarters.
 - e. Recommend actions to keep RES within OEG.
- .9 ____ COC prepares for fallout.
- a. Covers equipment, munitions, PDL, food, and water containers and stores in shelters or vehicles.
 - b. Ensures entry and exit occurs only when essential to mission.
 - c. Individuals not in MOPP minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves and buttoning collars.
 - d. Unit commander adjusts MOPP level as required.
 - e. Initiates appropriate steps to reduce stress and fatigue.
- .10 ____ NBC officer determines course of action.
- a. Analyzes actual fallout received.
 - b. Analyzes radiation dose received.
 - c. Reviews guidance from higher headquarters.

.11 ____ Battalion continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion reacts to the attack so that protective measures are initiated immediately upon identification of the nuclear attack, MOPP level specified by commander is reached, and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated.

TASK: 10A.5.4 REACT TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting tactical operations when one or more of the following occur: an automatic chemical agent alarm sounds or detector paper changes color. The chemical agent may have been delivered or accompanied by indirect fire. Must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Personnel identifying the attack put on protective masks and alert friendly units.
 - a. Sound horn/beeper/light of chemical agent alarm.
 - b. Bang metal on metal.
 - c. Shout "GAS."
 - d. Blast vehicle horns in 10-second intervals.
 - a. Use hand-and-arm signals.
 - f. Alert friendly units using FM radio.
- .2 ____ All Marines don protective gear.
 - a. put on protective mask within 9 seconds.
 - b. Assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes.
- .3 ____ Crews button up vehicles.
 - a. Drop down inside vehicle and close hatches.
 - b. Close vision blocks.
- .4 ____ Team leaders ensure contamination is not transferred into interiors of shelters or vehicles.
 - a. Ensure entry and exit occurs only when essential to mission.
 - b. Monitor interior air with M256 detector kit, periodically.
 - c. Ensure contaminated items are not stowed inside shelter or vehicle.
- .5 ____ Each Marine decontaminates skin, if required.
 - a. Opens one decon-1 wipe kit and wipes skin for 1 minute.
 - b. Drops decon-1 wipe to the ground.
 - c. Crushes enclosed glass ampules in decon-2 wipe packet.
 - d. Opens decon-2 packet and wipes skin for 2 to 3 minutes.

- .6 ____ Battalion NBC officer or staff consolidates unit data and submits NBC reports.
 - a. Receive, consolidate, and pass unit data on to higher headquarters.
 - b. Submit initial NBC report (chemical).
 - c. Identify type of agent.
 - d. Submit subsequent NBC-1 report (chemical) within 20 minutes after the attack.

- .7 ____ Battalion prepares WIA and KIA for evacuation.
 - a. Identifies and treats WIA.
 - b. Decontaminate. KIA before evacuation.
 - c. Wraps and marks KIA.
 - d. Coordinates with higher headquarters for medical evacuation.

- .8 ____ Battalion commander and staff initiate coordination for hasty or deliberate decontamination, if required.

- .9 ____ Battalion commander directs troops to conduct continuous monitoring, and to take actions as per unit SOP.
 - a. Marines conduct continuous monitoring.
 - b. Marines initiate unmasking procedures if chemical agent detector indicates negative results.
 - c. Marines report results on monitoring to battalion.

- .10 ____ Battalion commander adjusts MOPP level as required.
 - a. Ensures Marines wear appropriate clothing.
 - b. Ensures Marines take appropriate steps to reduce stress and fatigue.

- .11 ____ Battalion commander determines course of action.
 - a. Analyzes residual contamination.
 - b. Reviews guidance from higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Battalion reacts to the attack so that protective measures are immediately initiated upon chemical agent identification, MOPP 4 level is reached without delay. NBC-1 reports (chemical) are submitted to higher headquarters, chemical surveying is initiated, and the battalion can resume the mission.

TASK: 10A.5.5 CONDUCT DELIBERATE DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): The battalion has just completed operations in a contaminated area. The tactical situation allows the battalion time to conduct deliberate decontamination. Must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff coordinate for deliberate decontamination.
 - a. Request assistance from higher headquarters for deliberate decontamination operation.
 - b. Coordinate CEOI information, as necessary.
 - c. Establish communication with decontamination unit, as directed by higher headquarters.
 - d. Coordinate decontamination site to be used and time.
- .2 ____ Battalion NBC officer or S3 and staff plan the deliberate decontamination.
 - a. Plan time of decontamination.
 - b. Plan route to decontamination site.
 - c. Plan logistical support, to include reorganization following decontamination.
 - d. Establish order of decontamination.
 - e. Shift resources and units to cover battalions sectors of responsibility during decontamination operations.
- .3 ____ Advance party sets up detailed Marine decontamination site.
- .4 ____ Battalion moves to decontamination site.
 - a. Uses specified route.
 - b. Elements arrive at designated times.
- .5 ____ Contaminated units prepare equipment, vehicles, and personnel for decontamination.
 - a. Crews (except drivers) dismount vehicles in MOPP 4.
 - b. Crews check vehicles and equipment for contamination and mark accordingly.
 - c. Segregate contaminated vehicles.
 - d. Remove bulk contamination using pioneer equipment.
 - e. Conduct additional operator spraydown when required.
 - f. Crews check themselves for contamination and segregate accordingly.
 - g. Prioritize personnel and vehicles for decontamination site.
- .6 ____ Contaminated unit moves to deliberate decontamination.
 - a. Drivers move vehicles and equipment to equipment decontamination site.
 - b. Dismounted crews move to troop decontamination site.
- .7 ____ Contaminated unit processes vehicles and equipment through decontamination site.
 - a. Follows directions of decontamination unit personnel.
 - b. Conducts traffic control, if necessary.
 - c. Drivers drive decontaminated vehicles to the holding area.

- .8 ____ Contaminated unit processes personnel through troop decontamination site.
 - a. Follows directions of advanced party personnel.
 - b. Moves to holding area following decontamination.
- .9 ____ Decontaminated vehicles, equipment, and personnel link up in holding area.
- .10 ____ Decontaminated unit reorganizes.
 - a. Reorganizes supplies for resupply.
 - b. Conducts vehicle and equipment maintenance.
 - c. Coordinates medical support.
- .11 ____ Decontaminated unit returns to battalion sector and assumes designated responsibilities.
- .12 ____ Remaining battalion elements process through deliberate decontamination site in turn.
- .13 ____ Decontamination unit clears the equipment and vehicle decontamination site.
- .14 ____ Battalion processes decontamination unit through Marine decontamination site.
- .15 ____ Battalion clears Marine decontamination site.
 - a. Removes all usable equipment and supplies.
 - b. Decontaminates necessary equipment and supplies.
 - c. Places contaminated waste in sump.
 - d. Marks Marine decontamination area with standard NBC warning markers.
- .16 ____ Battalion commander reports completion of deliberate decontamination to division headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Contamination is removed from vehicles and equipment, and battalion is resupplied so it can conduct operations safely for an extended time at reduced MOPP levels. Battalion advance party establishes and operates individual decontamination station and aids decontamination unit where necessary.

TASK: 10A.5.6 CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The battalion has been directed by higher headquarters to cross a contaminated area in order to continue its mission. Higher headquarters has specified the time by which the contaminated area must be crossed. The type of agent employed may or may not be known. This task must be performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit commander selects routes.
 - a. Reviews NBC-5 report and reconnaissance reports.
 - b. Selects a primary route that minimizes exposure without compromising mission.
 - c. Obtains route clearances and approval from higher headquarters.

.2 ____ Unit monitors continuously for chemical contamination.

- a. Installs chemical agent alarms on vehicles with mounts.
- b. Monitors M8 and M9 detector paper for color changes.
- c. Monitoring team tests positive reactions on M8 and M9 paper with M256 detector kit.

.3 ____ Unit crosses contaminated area.

- a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to extent allowed by tactical situation.
- b. Avoids puddles.
- c. Increases internal and lateral dispersion between vehicles, if mission permits.
- d. Slows vehicle movements, if mission permits.
- e. Keeps vehicles buttoned-up, if mission permits.
- f. Conducts dismounted movement only if essential and as rapidly as possible.
- g. Individuals monitor others and self for chemical agent symptoms.

.4 ____ Unit exits contaminated area.

- a. Reports completion of crossing to higher headquarters.
- b. Initiates decontamination procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The contaminated area is crossed so that assigned personnel monitor for contamination continuously and submit reports to higher headquarters. Crossing is completed by time specified by higher headquarters.

TASK: 10A.5.7 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): A unit has been directed by higher headquarters to cross a contaminated area to continue its mission. Higher headquarters has specified OEG and the time by which the contaminated area must be crossed. Required to be conducted in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The battalion prepares for the crossing.

- a. Identifies extra shielding requirements (such as vehicle use of sandbags on the floor).
- b. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers it with available material.
- c. Directs individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to wear a protective mask or to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.
- d. Receives OEG from higher headquarters (turn-back dose/turn-back dose rate).
- e. Leaders ensure radiac equipment operators check instruments.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Drivers, vehicle commanders, leaders, and radiac equipment operators prepare for the crossing.
 - g. Starts continuous monitoring.
- .2 ____ Battalion crosses the area.
- a. Avoids stirring up dust.
 - b. Keeps out of dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.
 - c. Conducts movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).
- .3 ____ Battalion exits contaminated area.
- a. Reports completion of crossing to higher headquarters.
 - b. Updates unit radiation status.
- .4 ____ Battalion makes contact with the enemy.
- a. Performs actions on contact and develops the situation in zone.
 - b. Maintains contact with enemy elements it cannot destroy.
 - c. Conducts hasty attack, conducts hasty defense, or bypasses enemy force.
 - d. Maintains command and control.
 - e. Sustains combat capability.
- .5 ____ Battalion performs hasty decontamination of personnel and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The radiologically contaminated area is crossed so that unit does not exceed maximum dosage rates specified in OEG. Assigned personnel monitor dosage rates continuously and submit reports to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10A.5.8 COORDINATE NBC OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion is operating in a tactical environment where the use of friendly and enemy NBC weapons is known or likely. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ NBC officer or S2 section determines battalions and enemy's vulnerability to an NBC attack.
- a. Analyzes location of enemy and friendly elements.
 - b. Analyzes dispersion of enemy and friendly elements.
 - c. Calculates wind speed and direction.
 - d. Determines current MOPP levels of subordinate units.
 - e. Analyzes decontamination support.
- .2 ____ NBC officer utilizes NBC teams to provide reconnaissance support.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- a. Directs teams to mark known contaminated areas.
 - b. Deploys teams to perform an area reconnaissance in suspected areas.
- .3 _____ NBC officer consolidates NBC data from higher and subordinate units and updates the battalion SITMAP.
- a. Updates tentative hasty decontamination points within sector.
 - b. Updates NBC conditions within and outside battalion area that offers potential downwind hazards.
 - c. Updates tentative alternate CP at least 5 km from main CP.
 - d. Updates key positions for emplacement of chemical agent alarms.
 - e. Updates likely areas for the employment of friendly NBC weapons.
- .4 _____ In event of a friendly nuclear attack, NBC officer disseminates NUCWARN (or STRIKEWARN) messages to any affected elements.
- a. Specifies target number.
 - b. Specifies DTG of burst and DTG attack will be canceled.
 - c. Specifies coordinates of ground zero.
 - d. Specifies type of burst (air, surface, subsurface).
 - e. Specifies minimum safe distance (in hundreds of meters).
- .5 _____ In the event of a friendly chemical attack, NBC officer disseminates CHEMWARN messages to any affected elements.
- a. Specifies strike serial number or codeword.
 - b. Specifies DTG for attack.
 - c. Specifies location of attack.
 - d. Specifies means of delivery.
 - e. Specifies type of agent.
 - f. Specifies area of attack and predicted hazard.
 - g. Specifies duration of hazard.
 - h. Specifies wind speed and direction.
- .6 _____ NBC officer directs protective measures against an NBC attack.
- a. Advises commander on increasing MOPP level.
 - b. Directs employment of collective protection systems.
 - c. Directs units to protect equipment and supplies.
 - d. Alerts unit NBC teams.
- .7 _____ Upon report of NBC activity (enemy or friendly), NBC officer determines, disseminates, and continuously revises status and reports.
- a. Revises cumulative radiation dose status.
 - b. Updates OEG for subordinate elements and battalion as a whole.
 - c. Reassesses level of MOPP for subordinate elements.

- d. Updates procedures for collecting, recording, and reporting NBC monitoring data.
 - e. Revises fallout prediction from a nuclear attack.
 - f. Revises key locations for chemical agent alarms.
- .8 ____ Before, during, and after friendly/enemy chemical attacks, NBC officer disseminates downwind messages.
- a. Specifies date and time of wind measurements.
 - b. Specifies wind direction (in degrees).
 - c. Specifies wind speed (in KMPH).
- .9 ____ NBC officer and S3 select hasty decontamination sites for battalion elements.
- a. Ensure accessibility to water supply (pond, river, fire hydrant, car wash).
 - b. Ensure good trafficability.
 - c. Provide good cover and concealment from air to other support units.
 - d. Allow good communication network with ready access to resupply.
 - e. Provide adequate dispersion for reconstitution and staging areas.
 - f. Provide good drainage.
- .10 ____ NBC officer and S3 coordinate with regimental NBC officer for hasty or deliberate contamination.
- a. Specify priority of elements for decontamination.
 - b. Specify contaminated elements, their OEGs, and their current locations.
 - c. Give location of decontamination site.
 - d. Specify earliest and latest times that decontamination can occur.
- .11 ____ NBC officer coordinates with S4 to ensure continuous operations in a contaminated environment.
- a. Increases need for DS-2.
 - b. Establishes medical and GRREG sites for contaminated personnel.
 - c. Coordinates for additional over-garments, filters, decontaminates, and so forth.
 - d. Allows Marines relief from continuous wear of MOPP gear.
 - e. Increases emphasis on field sanitation, especially in food preparation and serving.
- .12 ____ NBC officer and S3 determine need for NBC surveys.
- a. Analyze whether mission requires subordinate elements to cross contaminated areas.
 - b. Analyze enemy situation to determine if alternate exit routes would expose battalion to overpowering enemy forces.
- .13 ____ NBC officer or S3 employs smoke in reconnaissance operations.
- a. Obscures vehicles from enemy gunners.
 - b. Blinds enemy observers.
 - c. Covers a breaching operation.
 - d. Conceals a bypass.

- e. Screens a hasty attack.
- f. Disorients the enemy in its defensive positions.
- g. Defeats guided weapon tracking systems.
- h. Screens a passage of lines.
- i. Creates a deception.
- j. Assists in crossing water obstacles.
- k. Marks enemy positions.

.14 ____ NBC officer employs smoke in security operations.

- a. Separates and isolates attacking echelons of reconnaissance and main body forces.
- b. Slows the advance of enemy formations.
- c. Obscures obstacles.
- d. Deceives the enemy on the size of force being faced.
- e. Supports the disengagement of troops.
- f. Obscures enemy R&S efforts,
- g. Degrades the effectiveness of enemy direct and indirect fires.
- h. Conceals movement and concentration of troops and company teams.
- i. Screens a counterattack.
- j. Marks enemy positions,
- k. Isolates portions of an enemy force enabling destruction in an engagement area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

NBC reports from higher, lower, and adjacent units are consolidated continuously to reflect current and expected NBC situations. NBC warnings, OEG, fallout, MOPP, and downwind conditions are determined, disseminated, and revised continuously throughout battalion operations. Decontamination is coordinated between the contaminated unit and higher headquarters NBC assets. Smoke is used to conceal friendly activities, blind enemy observation and fire control, deceive the enemy concerning friendly intentions, and provide visual marking. The NBC monitoring team minimizes the effects of enemy NBC attacks by detecting, identifying, marking, and reporting NBC contamination hazards.

TASK: 10A.5.9 COORDINATE ENGINEER SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received a higher headquarters order and stated the planning process. The battalion has attached engineer assets. Not required to be done in MOPP A.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .1 ____ The engineer officer or S-3 performs an analysis of the mission and area of operation.
 - a. Outlines the priority of work concerning mobility, countermobility, and survivability.
 - b. Coordinates with S2 and S3 during IPB process to refine enemy AAs.
 - c. Assists in determining where obstacles can best be placed.
 - d. Performs mobility analysis from both enemy and friendly perspectives.
 - e. Incorporates the employment of countermine, counterobstacles, and gap crossing equipment (offense).
 - f. Requests additional engineer assets, if needed.

- .2 ____ The engineer officer or S-3 completes the engineer estimate and provides it to the battalion commander and S-3.
 - a. Prioritizes mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks.
 - b. Lists resources available.
 - c. Recommends any necessary allocation of engineer assets to subordinate units.
 - d. Recommends priority of engineer tasks and effort.
 - e. Recommends route selection based on trafficability.
 - f. Recommends engineer task organization.

- .3 ____ S-3 integrates the engineer plan in the battalion OPORD.
 - a. Includes information on mines, fortifications, obstacles, and priority of engineer tasks in paragraph 3.
 - b. Includes detailed information in an engineer annex prepared by the engineer officer.
 - c. Ensures obstacle plan and indirect fire plan are integrated (that is, that obstacles are covered by indirect fires).

- .4 ____ The engineer officer or S-3 plans and coordinates mobility operations.
 - a. Analyzes available route and obstacle reconnaissance data.
 - b. Recommends method for improving routes and breaching obstacles.
 - c. Determines equipment needed to improve route and breach obstacle.
 - d. Coordinates with S-3 and unit leaders on task organization of attached engineer assets.

- .5 ____ The engineer officer or S-3 plans and coordinates counter-mobility operations.
 - a. Designates initial location of obstacles.
 - b. Finalizes location of obstacles after coordination with unit leaders and reconnaissance of proposed obstacle sites.
 - c. Specifies obstacle construction priorities including start and finish times.
 - d. Ensures obstacles support the battalion maneuver plan.
 - e. Ensures obstacles are covered by fire.
 - f. In conjunction with the FSC, plans the employment of scatterable mines (FASCAM).
 - g. Coordinates target turnover with maneuver unit.

14 Oct 94

- h. Ensures that obstacles and safe lanes are marked through the obstacle system.
 - i. Ensures job site security.
 - j. Coordinates logistical support for Class IV and V with the S4.
- .6 ____ The engineer officer or S-3 plans and coordinates survivability positions.
- a. Coordinates with unit leaders to determine location of survivability positions.
 - b. Specifies survivability position priorities including start and finish times.
 - c. Supervises construction of dug-in and reinforced positions requiring employment of engineer assets.
 - d. Coordinates with unit leaders to ensure that positions are camouflaged adequately.
 - e. Ensures job site security.
 - f. Coordinates logistical support for Class IV and V with the S4.
- .7 ____ The engineer officer continues to perform duties prescribed by the battalion commander.
- a. In the offense, usually locates designated engineer assets with the lead element under battalion control.
 - b. In the defense, ensures that engineer assets prepare survivability positions for alternate and subsequent BPs in the battalion area of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion commander, S3, and engineer officer allocate and integrate engineer assets to support the commander's maneuver plan.

10A.6 AIR DEFENSETASK: 10A.6.1 COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The battalion receives a higher headquarters order. Operational planning has been started to accomplish the assigned mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion commander, and S3 plan the employment of the air defense assets.
- a. Designates priority of air defense protection.
 - b. Ensure air defense plan supports the scheme of maneuver.
 - c. Allocate air defense assets down to subordinate units if mission dictates.
 - d. Provide CSS to the attached air defense unit.
- .2 ____ S3 officer supervises positioning of weapons.
- a. Weighs coverage against the most likely air avenue of approach.
 - b. Ensures early engagement.

- c. Provides defense in depth.
 - d. Provides mutual support.
 - e. Creates overlapping fires.
 - f. Provides observation and fields of fire.
- .3 ____ Battalion leaders incorporate passive air defense measures into planning.
- a. Incorporate cover and concealment for stationary vehicles.
 - b. Plan for covered and concealed routes during movement.
 - c. Plan for vehicle dispersion when stationary and moving.
 - d. Plan warning system in the battalion.
 - e. Plan drills to execute immediately upon air attack.
- .4 ____ Battalion leaders incorporate active measures into planning.
- a. Use available weapons to put up a curtain of massed fire.
 - b. Engage helicopters for air-to-air engagement.
- .5 ____ Air officer determines the requirements for his unit based on guidance from the battalion commander.
- a. Ensures unit employment supports the commander's intent.
 - b. Ensures employment of the unit is based on METT-TSL and air defense principles of mass, mobility, mix and integration.
 - c. Recommends initial allocation of air defense assets.
 - d. Gives priority to battalion elements at greatest risk because of critically, vulnerability, recuperability, and threat.
- .6 ____ Air officer prepares the air defense portion of the battalion OPORD.
- a. Prepares a brief description on how air defense assets will be employed.
 - b. Prepares air defense warning control status (quoted in instructions).
 - c. Plans for attachments to subordinate units.
- .7 ____ Air officer sets up an early warning system for the battalion.
- a. Monitor the higher headquarters early warning net.
 - b. Air defense asset relays changes and alerts to the battalion.
- .8 ____ Air officer monitors the air defense rules and procedures.
- a. Monitors rules of engagement.
 - b. Monitors airspace control measures.
 - c. Monitors defense readiness condition.
- .9 ____ S3 informs the air officer of any changes to the tactical plan.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion commander, S3, and LAAD unit commander coordinate air defense support. They integrate and synchronize air defense assets into the tactical plan. Air defense assets support provides coverage and protection for the commander's air defense priorities. The air defense assets monitors the early warning net and the battalion command net.

10A.7 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10A.7.1 COORDINATE LOGISTICAL PACKAGES

CONDITION(S): Adequate levels of required classes of resupply are available at the higher headquarters support area. Supply requests (emergency or routine) have been received from the companies and forwarded to the battalion rear area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S4 section updates the CP on the unit's logistical status.
 - a. Identifies critical shortages that may affect mission accomplishment.
 - b. Identifies major end items (class VII) and major weapon systems status.
 - c. Identifies ammunition (class V) status.
 - d. Identifies fuel, oil, and lubricants (class III) status.
 - e. Identifies construction and barrier materials (class IV) status.
 - f. Identifies repair parts (class IX) shortages.
- .2 ____ S4 coordinates unit maintenance support requirements with battalion maintenance officer.
 - a. Prioritizes maintenance recovery.
 - b. Identifies needed emergency repair parts.
 - c. Projects necessary anticipated nonmission-capable repair parts.
 - d. Identifies shortages of cleaning solvents and lubricants.
- .3 ____ S4 coordinates unit medical requirements.
 - a. Identifies needed first aid kits, body bags, and burn packages.
 - b. Identifies and prioritizes casualty evacuation operations.
- .4 ____ S4 contacts the higher headquarters S4 and updates them on the unit's logistical status.
 - a. Identifies critical shortages that may affect mission accomplishment.
 - b. Identifies major end items (class VII) and major weapon systems status.
 - c. Identifies ammunition (class V) status.
 - d. Identifies fuel, oil, and lubricants (class III) status.
 - e. Identifies construction and barrier materials (class IV) status.

- f. Identifies repair pacts (class IX) shortages.
- .5 ____ S4 coordinates the unit personnel status with the S1.
- a. Identifies number of personnel to go forward with LOGPAC and the units to which the replacements will be assigned.
 - b. Identifies units requiring evacuation of KIAs.
- .6 ____ S4 coordinates LOGPAC with supported unit.
- a. Determines current tactical situation.
 - b. Determines probable LOGPAC and LRP time and place.
 - c. Determines main supply route, if not already designated.
 - d. Determines and prioritizes specific quantities of Classes I, II, III, IV, V, IX, and X supply to be transported to each unit.
 - e. Determines replacement personnel to go forward to each unit.
 - f. Coordinates requirements such as backhaul recovery of KIAs and captured materials.
- .7 ____ S4 coordinates LOGPAC for emergency resupply.
- a. Directs an individual at the combat trains to organize the emergency resupply vehicles (located at the combat trains) and take them to the requesting unit's location.
 - b. Sends additional resupply vehicles to the combat trains for other potential emergency resupply requests.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The S4 section updates the main CP on the unit's logistical status. The S4 section coordinates LOGPAC requirements from the unit's maintenance status, medical requirements, and personnel status. The S4 establishes priorities for transportation of supplies.

TASK: 10A.7.2 REORGANIZE ON A BATTALION OBJECTIVE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The battalion has assaulted and seized an objective. It has performed consolidation activities, and has established ground security. Unit is prepared to continue operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander or CP establishes or reestablishes command, control, and communications.
 - a. Coordinates with flanking units.
 - b. Consolidates subordinate element data and reports locations and status to higher headquarters.
 - c. Reestablishes communications with units or personnel that are out of contact.
- .2 ____ S1 section conduct strength accounting.
 - a. Critical losses are identified.

14 Oct 94

- b. By-name casualty reporting is 100 percent accurate.
 - c. Determines KIAs, WIAs, and MIAs.
 - d. Prepares personnel status report and transmits it to division.
- .3 ____ S1 section replaces key wounded personnel.
- a. Utilizes personnel from disabled vehicles.
 - b. Ensures all leader positions are filled.
 - c. Ensures key weapons are manned.
 - d. Requests additional manpower from higher headquarters.
 - e. Processes replacements.
- .4 ____ Combat trains coordinate for graves registration or emergency burials.
- a. Remains are evacuated to higher headquarters using available transport.
 - b. Witness statements are processed.
 - c. Local burial is coordinated with higher headquarters.
- .5 ____ S4 informs the regimental S4 of unit equipment loss status.
- a. Reports types of vehicles lost.
 - b. Reports bumper and serial numbers of vehicles lost.
- .6 ____ Combat trains CP evacuates casualties to higher headquarters.
- a. Dispatches corpsman to pick up casualties.
 - b. Medical platoon assesses and categorizes patients for treatment priority.
 - c. Treats patients requiring emergency medical treatment.
 - d. Establishes evacuation priorities.
 - e. Evacuates patients by the most expeditious means possible.
- .7 ____ S2 or S4 coordinates the processing and evacuation of EPW and captured documents and materials.
- a. EPW are handled using the five-S method.
 - b. EPW are tagged with necessary information, to include date and time of capture, location of capture (grid coordinates), capturing unit, and circumstances of capture.
 - c. Documents are evacuated through chain of command to higher headquarters intelligence personnel.
 - d. Captured material is secured until disposition can be made.
 - e. Captured material is reported to higher headquarters.
- .8 ____ Battalion commander directs unit to cross-level and resupply ammunition.
- a. Directs redistribution of ammunition from damaged vehicles.
 - b. Requests status of ammunition upon completion of cross-leveling.
- .9 ____ Battalion prepares for tactical operations.
- a. Restores communications.

- b. Performs maintenance checks and emergency repairs.
- c. Continues to implement SOP.

.10 ____ Battalion commander or CP issues ERAGOs as necessary.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The reorganization is completed so that command, control, and communications are established or reestablished and status reports go to the next higher headquarters. Cross-levelling and resupply are performed.

TASK: 10A.7.3 COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION OF PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): A combat unit has captured enemy soldiers and reported the number of prisoners and their location to the combat trains' CP. A higher headquarters EPW collection point has been established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Command post notifies S2 that EPW have been captured.
 - a. Specifies location of captured prisoners.
 - b. Specifies number of enemy personnel captured.
- .2 ____ Combat trains' CP coordinates evacuation of EPW from requesting unit's area.
 - a. Coordinates with S2 section to determine if interrogation is required.
 - b. S1 coordinates with S4 for transportation assets.
 - c. If interrogation is required, the S4 dispatches transportation assets to the requesting unit's area and transport EPW to combat trains.
 - d. If interrogation is not required, the S4 directs unit to evacuate EPW through the LOGPAC to the EPW collection point.
 - e. If enemy casualties exist, the S4 directs medical platoon to evacuate them through normal channels.
- .3 ____ Combat trains CP establishes a temporary EpW collection point if EPW cannot be transported immediately to higher headquarters or if the S2 wants to interrogate them.
 - a. Locates collection point away from combat trains area.
 - b. Constructs makeshift compound.
- .4 ____ S2 interrogates prisoners, if situation allows.
 - a. Coordinates with S3 for transportation to the combat trains.
 - b. Reports information of tactical significance immediately to higher, lower, and adjacent units.
- .5 ____ S4 coordinates the transportation of EPW's to the higher headquarters collection point.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Transportation of EPW is controlled so that S1 directs reporting unit to evacuate its EPW by way of the LOGPAC to the higher headquarters EPW collection point. If the S2 requests interrogation, the S4 dispatches transportation assets to the unit's area to transport EPW back to the combat trains. Interrogated EPW are evacuated to the collection point. The S4 directs the evacuation of EPW casualties through normal medical channels.

TASK: 10A.7.4 CONDUCT STRENGTH ACCOUNTING

CONDITION(S): Battalion S1 receives casualty reports from units and medical platoon. Replacements have been processed and transported to subordinate units. Attachments and/or detachments have been designated and integrated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: T; N; NE

- .1 ____ S1 section verifies unit personnel status with unit first sergeants.
 - a. Verifies by-name KIAs.
 - b. Verifies by-name WIAs.
 - c. Verifies by-name MIAs.
 - d. Verifies key position vacancies.
 - e. Verifies replacements arrived.
- .2 ____ S1 collects and organizes all casualty supporting documents.
 - a. Ensures all entries are complete and correct.
 - b. Obtains all supporting documentation.
- .3 ____ S1 section informs battalion and company chains of command.
 - a. Informs them of WIAs that have died.
 - b. Informs them of casualties evacuated from battalion aid station.
 - c. Informs them of casualties recovering in trains area.
 - d. Informs them of battle stress casualties.
- .4 ____ S1 section collates all casualty information from the command.
 - a. Cross-references all casualty documents and supporting documents.
 - b. Corrects all errors resulting from cross-reference.
 - c. Obtains any missing information from units.
 - d. Posts information to master casualty log.
 - e. Prepares consolidated casualty report for command.
 - f. Forwards consolidated casualty report to battalion working off of latest battalion fill priority.
- .5 ____ S1 section solicits information from higher headquarters on casualties in transit.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Updates master casualty log.
 - b. Reports information to unit first sergeants.
- .6 ____ S1 coordinates with higher headquarters S1 for personnel status.
- a. Coordinates status of AWOL personnel.
 - b. Coordinates status of confined Marines.
- .7 ____ S1 section prepares personnel status report.
- a. Completes or updates personnel daily summary (PDS).
 - b. Completes or updates personnel requirement report.
 - c. Completes or updates critical shortages.
 - d. Cross-checks with casualty logs.
- .8 ____ S1 section forwards personnel status report to higher headquarters in accordance with required suspense.
- .9 ____ S1 briefs battalion commander or XO on personnel status.
- a. Briefs commander on WIAs and KIAs.
 - b. Briefs commander on key position vacancies.
 - c. Briefs commander on replacements received.
 - d. Briefs commander on casualties recovering.
- .10 ____ S1 makes adjustment to personnel estimate.
- .11 ____ S1 section continuously updates unit personnel status based on reports received.
- a. Updates authorized, assigned, and attached strength.
 - b. Coordinates requisition status with regimental S1.
 - c. Confirms return to duty status of casualties with medical platoon.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The S1 ensures strength of each unit is 95 percent accurate, by-name casualty reporting is 101 percent accurate, critical losses are identified, and personnel status report is prepared and transmitted to higher headquarters free of errors.

TASK: 10A.7.5 PROCESS REPLACEMENTS

CONDITION(S): Battalion S1 is notified of replacements coming from higher headquarters. Battalion commander has established priority for replacements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S1 section in field trains coordinates with higher headquarters S1 for arrival of replacements.
 - a. Determines if replacements will arrive with all required equipment.
 - b. Determines if any replacements are return-to-duty status.
- .2 ____ S1 notifies field trains of currant replacement priorities.
- .3 ____ S1 section in the field trains assigns replacements to critical leadership positions and crew positions on primary weapon systems in accordance with established priorities.
 - a. Verifies equipment loss with S4 to preclude assigning personnel to destroyed vehicles.
 - b. Coordinates with battalion maintenance officer for damaged vehicle status to ensure personnel are not assigned to vehicles that may become losses.
- .4 ____ S1 coordinates interface of personnel and weapon system replacement operations with S4 to ensure vehicles are fully manned when moved forward to units.
 - a. Verifies incoming weapon systems with S4.
 - b. Verifies returning weapon systems with battalion maintenance officer.
- .5 ____ S1 section in the field trains receives replacements.
 - a. Assembles Marines and moves them into the S1 holding area.
 - b. Organizes replacements into ad hoc chain of command.
 - c. Marines sign into the unit.
 - d. Marines update record of emergency data.
 - e. Chain of command checks all replacements for equipment and weapons.
- .6 ____ S1 section notifies subordinate units of arrival.
- .7 ____ Chain of command briefs replacements.
 - a. Briefs replacements on unit assignments and mission.
 - b. Briefs replacements on current tactical situation (enemy and friendly).
 - c. Briefs replacements on chain of command and unit SOP.
 - d. Briefs replacements on location of key elements (medical, mess, supply) and mail procedures.
 - e. Briefs replacements on NBC, artillery, and air defense warning systems.
- .8 ____ S1 directs replacements to write next of kin, verifying safe arrival.
- .9 ____ S1 coordinates transportation for replacements to subordinate units with S4.
 - a. Ensures replacements go out with next LOGPAC.
 - b. Ensures replacement priorities are mat.
- .10 ____ S1 integrates replacements into trains security and defense plan.
- .11 ____ S1 supervises upload of replacements onto LOGPAC vehicles to ensure replacements load their respective company vehicles.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Critical leadership positions are immediately filled. Established replacement priorities are met. Critical personnel actions are completed. Replacements are assigned to and arrive at their respective unit fully prepared for integration into the unit.

TASK: 10A.7.6 COORDINATE VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT RECOVERY TO THE UMCP

CONDITION(S): The company UMCP has received a maintenance or repair request from a platoon in the field requiring that vehicles or equipment be repaired on site or recovered to the company UMCP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE;

- .1 ____ The battalion maintenance officer coordinates with the maintenance element at company UMCP location.
- a. Determines unit identification.
 - b. Determines vehicle or equipment identification.
 - c. Determines location.
 - d. Determines nature of damage.
 - e. Determines repair parts required, if applicable.
 - f. Determines enemy situation, security, and NBC considerations.
 - g. Designates pickup point, if different from unit site.
 - h. Designates recommended route of approach.
 - i. Designates pickup point for unit guides, if required.
- .2 ____ The battalion maintenance officer determines if vehicle or equipment can be repaired or recovered.
- a. Determines vehicle disposition which will be based on the company UMCP assessment.
 - b. Determines if vehicle can be repaired on site.
 - c. Determines if vehicle must be recovered to battalion UMCP.
- .3 ____ The battalion maintenance officer develops a recovery plan if vehicle or equipment must be recovered.
- a. Determines recovery priority based on tactical situation, work load, and availability of maintenance and recovery personnel.
 - b. Determines on-site recovery method.
 - c. Assigns maintenance assets to the recovery.
 - d. Selects pickup point if different from company location.
 - e. Selects recovery route.
 - f. Dispatches recovery team.
- .4 ____ When vehicle or equipment is recovered to battalion UMCP, the battalion maintenance officer determines the repair site.

- a. Selects UMCP if repair can be accomplished with battalion maintenance assets.
- .5 ____ If vehicle or equipment must be recovered to higher headquarters, the battalion maintenance officer coordinates the operation.
- a. Coordinates with higher headquarters to determine whether battalion or FSSG maintenance assets will conduct the recovery.
 - b. Coordinates type of vehicle or equipment and extent of damage.
 - c. Coordinates repair parts required, if known and applicable.
 - d. Coordinates enemy situation, security, and NBC considerations.
 - e. Coordinates pickup point, if different from UMCP.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company maintenance personnel determines if vehicle or equipment can be repaired on site or if it must be recovered to company UMCP. Once at the company UMCP, the company maintenance personnel determines if vehicle or equipment can be repaired or if it must be recovered to the battalion maintenance point.

TASK: 10A.7.7 MAINTAIN EQUIPMENT LOSS STATUS

CONDITION(S): The battalion is preparing for or engaged in an operation. Communication have been established, and subordinate units are submitting reports in accordance with SOP, specifying vehicle loss type, bumper number, serial number, vehicle location, and salvageable parts of vehicle.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S4 section receives reports from companies and enters information into S1 or S4 log.
 - a. Enters vehicle loss type and how it was lost, if known.
 - b. Enters bumper number of vehicle.
 - c. Enters vehicle serial number.
 - d. Enters location of vehicle.
- .2 ____ S4 section updates equipment loss board.
 - a. Updates unit designation.
 - b. Updates number of vehicles assigned to each unit.
 - c. Updates vehicle of each unit.
 - d. Updates total vehicles remaining in each unit.
 - a. Updates remarks column.
- .3 ____ S4 section contacts the higher headquarters S4 and informs it of the equipment loss status of the unit.
 - a. Reports vehicle loss types.
 - b. Reports bumper number of vehicle losses.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Reports vehicle serial numbers.
- .4 ____ S4 section requests projected vehicle replacement time from the higher headquarters S4.
- .5 ____ S4 section contacts the main CP and informs them of the unit's equipment loss status.
 - a. Reports vehicle losses of each unit.
 - b. Reports type of vehicle loss to each unit.
 - c. Reports projected vehicle replacement time.
- .6 ____ S4 section contacts maintenance officer and informs him of the equipment loss status to include the items found in paragraph 1.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Equipment loss status is maintained so that current information on the unit's equipment readiness is available for present and future operations.

TASK: 10A.7.8 COORDINATE EVACUATION OF CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting a tactical operation in which casualties are expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S4 coordinates with the medical platoon leader to develop a plan for the evacuation of WIA and KIA.
 - a. Determines what assets are needed to evacuate casualties.
 - b. Selects alternative routes if MSR cannot be used.
 - c. Coordinates with higher headquarters if air evacuation if necessary.
 - d. Designates separate holding areas for contaminated and uncontaminated KIA.
 - e. Designates holding areas for receiving EPW casualties.
 - f. Designates an individual to organize holding areas and process casualties.
- .2 ____ S4 coordinates for assets to transport WIA and KIA.
 - a. Uses returning LOGPAC vehicles.
 - b. Coordinates special haul.
 - c. Coordinates medevac evacuation.
- .3 ____ Holding area personnel receive and process KIA.
 - a. Separate contaminated remains from noncontaminated remains.
 - b. Collect and cross-check witness forms.
 - c. Load remains for transport to higher headquarters.
 - d. Maintain accountability of remains.

- .4 ____ S1 collates and processes witness forms.
 - a. Updates personnel status.
 - b. Sends personnel report to higher headquarter G1.
- .5 ____ Battalion aid station personnel conduct triage on WIA.
 - a. Assess and categorize WIA for priority of treatment.
 - b. Administer emergency treatment within the limits of the tactical situation.
 - c. Evaluate patients for priority of evacuation.
- .6 ____ H&S assets and ambulances evacuate WIA and KIA to the rear.
- .7 ____ S4 coordinates with higher headquarters if unit is forced to conduct mass or local burials.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Combat trains CP coordinates the evacuation of casualties. Casualties are processed and treated within the capabilities of the battalion aid station. WIA and KIA are evacuated to the rear.

10A.8 COMMAND POST/H&S COMPANY/TRAINS

TASK: 10A.8.1 RECONNOITER A TRAINS SITE

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received an order from higher headquarters to move to an AA, or is moving and requires continuous CSS.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S4 reviews battalion OPORD to determine CSS locations necessary to support tactical scheme of maneuver.
 - a. Determines types of CSS.
 - b. Determines quantity of CSS.
 - c. Determines probable trains site(s), supply routes, and LRPs.
- .2 ____ S4 conducts a map reconnaissance to determine tentative trains site(s).
 - a. Determines likely movement and supply routes.
 - b. Selects probable pickup and landing zones.
 - c. Locates water source.
 - d. Determines field trains proximity to RSA.
 - e. Selects probable train site locations.
- .3 ____ S4 organizes a reconnaissance party.
 - a. Organizes combat trains.
 - b. Organizes field trains.

- .4 ____ Reconnaissance party moves to trains site.
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employs OPSEC measures.
 - c. Maintains security and air guards.
 - d. Conducts hasty reconnaissance of movement and supply route(s).

- .5 ____ Reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance of trains site.
 - a. Determines concealment from air and ground observation.
 - b. Determines covered positions from direct fire.
 - c. Determines adequate entrances and space for dispersion against indirect fire.
 - d. Determines whether area will facilitate communications with combat trains CP, battalion CP, field trains CP, higher headquarters CP, and forward units to include MSRs, ASRs, and LRPs.
 - e. Determines drainage and cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area.
 - f. Locates and evaluates all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
 - g. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers in area.
 - h. Locates bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
 - i. Locates landing or drop zones.
 - j. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates the area, if required.
 - k. Identifies enemy forces within the area.
 - l. Determines the existence and extent of NBC contamination within the area, if required.

- .6 ____ Reconnaissance party OIC selects a site located on terrain that:
 - a. Provides good cover and concealment from air and ground observation.
 - b. Supports ground vehicular traffic.
 - c. Provides access to a suitable helicopter landing zone.
 - d. Lies beyond enemy direct fire and mortar range.
 - e. Provides access to routes that lead to LRPs or to company positions.
 - f. Does not restrict movement.
 - g. Facilitates communication between the combat trains CP, trains, and units.

- .7 ____ Reconnaissance party OIC identifies locations for the listed elements.
 - a. Identifies trains CP.
 - b. Identifies combat and field trains.
 - c. Identifies UMCP, if necessary.
 - d. Identifies battalion aid station, if necessary.

- .8 ____ Reconnaissance party OIC reports to trains.
 - a. Uses radio if net is secure.

- b. Reports location of site selected.
 - c. Reports route(s) to be used.
- .9 ____ Reconnaissance party returns to trains site.
- a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employs OPSEC measures.
 - c. Maintains security and air guards.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Leaders conduct a map and physical reconnaissance of the proposed trains site(s). They coordinate area location with higher headquarters. Reconnaissance party ensures selected site(s) offer conditions favorable to trains security and unimpaired operations.

TASK: 10A.8.2 MOVE INTO A TRAINS SITE

CONDITION(S): The trains are moving as part of the battalion and have been directed to occupy a selected trains site. A reconnaissance party has marked all locations, to include the battalion aid station and UMCP. It has also secured the site and met the trains at the RP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Reconnaissance party guides vehicles into trains site.
- a. Clears RP without stopping.
 - b. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - c. Avoids canalizing alleys, if possible.
 - d. Leads vehicles into covered positions on the outer edges of built-up area.
- .2 ____ S4 or H&S company commander revises trains direct- and indirect-fire plan.
- a. Assigns sectors of fire and observation that provide mutually-supporting, massing fires on likely enemy avenues of approach.
 - b. If located in BSA, coordinates with units on flanks so that fires are interlocking and mutually supporting.
 - c. If configured in an isolated base cluster, assigns interlocking, mutually-supporting, and 360-degree fires.
 - d. Plans for enemy engagements at maximum observable ranges.
 - e. Identifies indirect-fire targets forward of, within, and to the rear of the trains site.
 - f. Masses indirect-fire targets on likely enemy avenues of approach and kill zones.
- .3 ____ S4 or H&S company commander ensures trains site is prepared for its mission.
- a. Ensures site provides concealment from air and ground observation.
 - b. Ensures site provides cover from direct fire.

- c. Ensures site provides space for dispersion against enemy artillery.
 - d. Ensures site provides adequate entrances and exits, and internal routes that facilitate supply and support operations.
 - e. Ensures site provides good drainage and soil conditions that will support vehicles and maintenance operations.
 - f. Ensures site provides communications between combat trains CP, battalion CP, field trains CP, higher headquarters CP, and forward units.
 - g. Ensures site provides suitable helicopter landing sites.
 - h. Ensures site provides routes to MSRs, ASRs, and LRPs.
- .4 ____ Trains site establishes local security.
- a. S4 or H&S company commander organizes and rehearses reaction force actions.
 - b. Maximizes visual observation by placing OPs in the upper floors of buildings.
 - c. Employs sensors and surveillance devices, if available.
 - d. Strictly controls all routes in and out of trains site.
 - e. Emplaces hasty protective minefields.
 - f. Employs NBC detection equipment and air guards.
 - g. Uses patrols during periods of limited visibility.
 - h. Establishes guidelines for handling of noncombatants and/or urban/rural guerrilla activity.
 - i. Establishes checkpoints for civilian traffic and secures work area for civilian work force, if used.
 - j. Integrates local constabulary into security plan (if friendly).
 - k. Seals all building doors or windows.
- .5 ____ Sections establish internal communications between themselves and CP utilizing all available means.
- a. Use wire.
 - b. Use messengers.
 - c. Use radios.
 - d. Use visual signals.
- .6 ____ Trains employ OPSEC measures.
- a. Camouflage all vehicles.
 - b. Avoid unnecessary movement in the trains site.
 - c. Establish a dismount point along with a vehicle holding area to reduce traffic.
 - d. Remote radios and mask antennas to reduce EW signature.
 - e. Exercise noise and light discipline.
 - f. Place generators and vehicles inside building, if possible.
- .7 ____ Trains re-establish fully operational CSS functions.

- a. Establish maintenance (UMCP), medical (aids station), supply, field mess, Class III and V, personnel, and communication sites.
 - b. Establish CP.
 - c. Establish communications with supported units.
 - d. Continue CSS to combat units.
- .8 ____ Trains sections report their vehicle and personnel status to S4 or H&S company commander.
- .9 ____ S4 or H&S company commander reports SITREP to main CP.
- a. Reports trains location.
 - b. Reports vehicle and personnel status.
 - c. Reports fully operational CSS time.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Reconnaissance party guides move trains vehicles through RP into site to selected vehicle positions, without stopping. Communications are established with main CP, and higher headquarters. Perimeter security is established, and CSS functions are reestablished at full operational capacity.

TASK: 10A.8.3 CONDUCT A TAILGATE STATION RESUPPLY

CONDITION(S): The trains or main CP is occupying an AA or defensive position and enemy contact is possible. The unit leader has selected the tailgate method of resupply and specified the time by which resupply must be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP NCOIC coordinates with battalion S4.
- a. Verifies time that LOGPAC will be at LRP.
 - b. Verifies LRP location.
 - c. Requests special items not included in routine LOGPAC resupply.
- .2 ____ Unit leader determines priority for Classes I, III, V, and maintenance.
- a. Specifies order in which elements will resupply.
 - b. Operational vehicles receive first priority for resupply.
 - c. Nonoperational vehicles receive first priority for maintenance.
- .3 ____ Trains or battalion CP NCOIC moves to LRP to receive LOGPAC.
- a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Verifies that normal and requested supplies are present.
- .4 ____ Trains or battalion CP NCOIC guides LOGPAC to trains or battalion CP location.
- a. Uses covered and concealed routes.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Alerts trains or battalion CP OIC that LOGPAC is en route.
- c. Determines best routes into and out of each vehicle position.

.5 ____ Trains or battalion CP conducts resupply activities.

- a. Vehicle commanders report to trains or battalion CP NCOIC with actual and anticipated logistical requests.
- b. Trains or battalion CP NCOIC guides LOGPAC vehicles into each vehicle position, in accordance with OIC's priorities.
- c. Crew stows supplies.
- d. Crewman rotate through Class I point and receive personal items.
- e. Vehicle commanders report status to unit leader and NCOIC.
- f. Unit maintains local security continuously throughout resupply activities.
- g. LOGPAC vehicles move into holding area after resupplying entire unit.
- h. Unit NCOIC guides LOGPAC to next element.

.6 ____ Once resupply operations are completed, unit NCOIC guides LOGPAC vehicles back to LRP using covered and concealed routes.

.7 ____ Upon completion of resupply, LOGPAC vehicles move to holding area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Resupply is conducted so that unit leader determines priority for Classes I, III, V and maintenance, trains or main CP resupply. Trains or main CP receives, distributes, and stows supplies prior to time specified by unit leader.

TASK: 10A.8.4 CONDUCT SERVICE STATION RESUPPLY

CONDITION(S): The unit is occupying a defensive or offensive position and enemy contact is possible. The unit commander has elected the service station method of resupply and specified time by which resupply must be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Company gunnery sergeant or XO coordinates with battalion S4 or combat trains CP.

- a. Verifies time that LOGPAC will be at LRP.
- b. Verifies LRP location.
- c. Requests special items not included in routine LOGPAC resupply.

.2 ____ Company gunnery sergeant selects resupply site for unit.

- a. Site is easily accessible to tracked and wheeled vehicles.
- b. Provides cover and concealment.
- c. Site is located within one terrain feature of unit position.

- .3 ____ Unit commander determines priority for classes I, III, V, and maintenance.
 - a. Specifies order in which sections will resupply.
 - b. Operational vehicles receive first priority for resupply.
 - c. Nonoperational vehicles receive first priority for maintenance.
- .4 ____ Company gunnery sergeant moves to LRP to receive LOGPAC.
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Verifies that normal and requested supplies are present.
- .5 ____ Company gunnery sergeant guides LOGPAC to resupply site using covered and concealed routes.
- .6 ____ Unit prepares to move to resupply site.
 - a. Company gunnery sergeant disseminates location and time through FRAGO or OPORD.
 - b. Prepares vehicle positions for easy identification and re-entry upon completion of resupply activities.
 - c. Company gunnery sergeant briefs section heads on organization or resupply site, specifying location of corpsman, maintenance, supply, KIA collection points, and EPW holding areas.
- .7 ____ Designated unit or vehicle moves to resupply site using covered and concealed routes.
- .8 ____ Designated unit or vehicle conducts resupply activities.
 - a. Section chiefs reports to company gunnery sergeant with actual and anticipated logistics requests.
 - b. Vehicles complete refueling and move to a rearming point.
 - c. Vehicles complete rearming and move to refueling point.
 - d. Marines rotate through feeding area and receive personal supply items.
 - e. Units maintain local security continuously throughout resupply activities.
- .9 ____ Resupplied sections or vehicle moves back to defensive position(s) and relieves second element for resupply.
 - a. Unit commander ensures defense is not degraded during resupply operation.
 - b. Sectors of responsibility are adjusted to compensate for vehicles at resupply site.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit commander determines priority for Classes I, III, V, and maintenance. Platoons (or sections) resupply according to commander's priority. Platoons (or sections) receive, distribute, and stow supplies prior to time specified by unit commander.

TASK: 10A.8.5 CONDUCT A QUARTERING PARTY

CONDITION(S): Unit is ordered to occupy an AA, battalion CP site, or trains and prepare for future operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; I; NE

- .1 ____ Quartering party OIC organizes quartering party.
 - a. Issues movement order.
 - b. Specifies personnel and equipment needed, to include representatives from NBC team, communication element, and subordinate elements.
 - c. Determines need for security element.
 - d. Establishes assembly point and SP time.
- .2 ____ Subordinate sections prepare quartering parties.
 - a. Selects section representatives.
 - b. Uploads necessary equipment (such as markers and pioneer tools).
 - c. Tops off vehicles with fuel, if necessary.
 - d. Issues guidance to section NCOIC of quartering party.
- .3 ____ Quartering party moves to alternate site(s).
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Employs OPSEC measures.
 - c. Maintains security and air guards.
 - d. Conducts hasty reconnaissance of movement and supply route(s).
- .4 ____ Quartering party occupies tentative site.
 - a. Establishes local security.
 - b. Conducts hasty reconnaissance.
 - c. Reports results to quartering party OIC.
- .5 ____ Quartering party reconnoiters area.
 - a. Reconnoiters for concealment from air/ground observation.
 - b. Reconnoiters for cover from direct fire.
 - c. Reconnoiters for space for dispersion against massed chemical or nuclear attacks.
 - d. Reconnoiters for entrances, exits, and internal routes.
 - e. Reconnoiters for NBC contamination.
 - f. Reconnoiters for adequate drainage, slope, and terrain and soil conditions that can support battalion vehicles, aircraft, and equipment.
 - g. Reconnoiters for landing zones for aircraft.
- .6 ____ Quartering party OIC selects site.
 - a. Evaluates reconnaissance reports.

- b. Selects a rear AA.
 - c. Selects a forward AA.
 - d. Determines adequacy of site.
 - e. If site is inadequate, moves to alternate AA and evaluates site.
 - f. Reports to battalion CP.
- .7 ____ Quartering party OIC designates tentative areas.
- a. Designates area for companies.
 - b. Designates CP site.
 - c. Designates area for CS and CSS assets.
- .8 ____ Quartering party prepares site(s).
- a. Selects and marks routes from the RP to new location.
 - b. Marks entrances, exits, and internal routes.
 - c. Marks vehicle positions.
 - d. Checks and clears the area of mines, booby traps, and other immediate hazards.
 - e. Marks NBC contaminated areas.
 - f. Establishes local security.
- .9 ____ Quartering party establishes a perimeter defense.
- a. Combat vehicles prepares primary and alternate fighting positions.
 - b. Supporting fires are planned for site defense.
 - c. As ordered, hasty obstacles are placed on likely avenues of approach.
 - d. Local and NBC security and air guards are constantly maintained.
 - e. Provisional infantry squads are formed and fighting positions are prepared on the perimeter.
- .10 ____ Quartering party guides move to RPs and critical points to await the main body arrival.
- .11 ____ Quartering party reports current situation to the tactical commander/OIC.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The quartering party marks entrances, exits, vehicle positions, and routes. A temporary perimeter defense is established and guides move to RPs and critical points to receive the main body.

TASK: 10A.8.6 EVACUATE CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): While conducting combat operations, trains or battalion CP has sustained casualties. Corpsman attached to the trains or battalion CP are available to provide emergency medical aid and evacuation for the unit. The trains or battalion CP OIC has designated the casualty collection point.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel perform immediate emergency medical treatment.
 - a. Perform self- or buddy-aid.
 - b. Combat lifesaver performs emergency procedures.
- .2 ____ Section leader sends casualty report and evacuation request to trains or battalion CP OIC or NCOIC.
 - a. Specifies location using 6-digit grid coordinates.
 - b. Specifies number of casualties.
 - c. Includes brief summary of tactical situation, if necessary.
- .3 ____ If air assets are available and required, trains or battalion CP OIC requests air medical evacuation from battalion S4.
 - a. Identifies available landing zones.
 - b. Provides radio frequency and call signs.
 - c. Specifies number and status of casualties.
 - d. Secures landing zone.
 - e. Guides helicopter to landing zone.
 - f. Assists the flight crew with loading of casualties.
- .4 ____ Trains or battalion CP NCOIC dispatches the corpsman.
- .5 ____ Corpsman move to the site of casualties.
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Positions medical evacuation vehicle(s) to provide cover from enemy fire and to facilitate loading of injured Marines.
- .6 ____ Corpsman and crewman remove casualties from vehicle(s), if necessary.
- .7 ____ Corpsman perform triage on each patient.
 - a. Visually examine each patient.
 - b. Treat most seriously ill or injured patients first.
 - c. Re-examine and diagnose less seriously ill or injured patients.
- .8 ____ Corpsman load patients requiring further treatment into evacuation vehicle(s).
 - a. Load Marines with slight wounds for transportation to rear support area.
 - b. Load critically wounded Marines for transportation to rear support area.
 - c. Prevent further injury to Marines.
 - d. Ensure separation of NBC contaminated casualties from noncontaminated casualties.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- .9 ____ Units retain classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays, and key lists) previously under casualty's custody.
- .10 ____ Corpsmen transport casualties to battalion aid station or rear support area.
- a. Use covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Move patients as quickly as possible using available means.
- .11 ____ Corpsmen provide en route supportive treatment, as required.
- a. Provide physical and emotional comfort to patients.
 - b. Provide necessary treatment to sustain the condition of each casualty.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The trains or COC evacuates casualties so that corpsmen perform triage on all patients, and patients are evacuated by the most expeditious means possible.

TASK: 10A.8.7 EMLACE CHEMICAL AGENT ALARMS

CONDITION(S): The unit is occupying a stationary position on a battlefield where the possibility of a chemical agent is known or suspected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit commander or NBC NCO determines where to place M43 or M43A1 detectors.
- a. Determines wind direction.
 - b. Determines wind speed.
 - c. Selects positions 150 meters upwind for low wind speeds.
 - d. Selects positions 250 to 300 meters upwind for moderate wind speeds.
 - e. Selects positions no more than 400 meters upwind for high wind speeds.
 - f. Places detectors closer to unit in broken terrain.
 - g. Ensures that at least one detector covers all sides of units, regardless of wind direction.
- .2 ____ Unit commander or NBC NCO determines placement of M42 alarm units.
- a. Selects positions near radio or telephone communications.
 - b. Ensures that an alarm is placed near the unit communications center.
 - c. Maximizes use of detector by connecting it to multiple alarm units (up to five).
- .3 ____ Unit personnel emplace chemical agent alarm system and put it into operation.
- a. Mount M42 alarms on vehicles or emplace on ground per commander's guidance.
 - b. Put each M42 alarm in test mode and check light or horn.

- c. Emplace M43 or M43A1 detectors per commander's guidance.
 - d. Remove reservoir assembly and air filter from each set (M43 only).
 - e. Prepare reservoir for use (M43 only).
 - f. Remove detector from bottom case assembly, install reservoir assembly, and place detector back into the case (M43 only).
 - g. Perform power, airflow, and sensitivity tests.
 - h. Connect M43 or M43A1 detectors with M42 alarm units using telephone cable (WDI).
 - i. Activate alarm system.
- .4 ____ Unit commander or NBC NCO determines effects of wind change (direction and speed).
- a. Ensures alarms are repositioned to account for significant wind changes.
 - b. Determines warning time based on changes in wind speed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The automatic chemical agent alarm system is emplaced so that the M43/M43A1 detectors are positioned 150 to 400 meters upwind of the unit. If multiple M43/M43A1 detectors are employed, they are spaced 300 meters or less apart. An M42 alarm is placed close to the unit communications center. Detectors are moved as wind shifts direction.

TASK: 10A.8.8 EMLACE A HASTY MINEFIELD

CONDITION(S): The trains or battalion CP has moved into and is securing a new sight. Vehicle basic loads have M21 antitank mines and M16A1 and M18A1 (Claymore) antipersonnel mines with trip wires.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC reports intention to lay a hasty protective minefield and gets authorization to do so.
- a. Specifies the tactical purpose.
 - b. Specifies the type of minefield.
 - c. Estimates number and types of mines.
 - d. Specifies whether mines are surface-laid or buried.
 - e. Specifies location of minefield.
 - f. Specifies location and width of lanes and gaps.
 - g. Proposes date and time for starting and completing.
- .2 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC designates an element to provide overwatch and security for personnel conducting reconnaissance and emplacing minefields. Overwatch element provides security for personnel emplacing the mines.
- .3 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC, with reconnaissance element, conducts reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- a. Identifies area that covers likely enemy avenues of approach.
 - b. Ensures area enhances key weapon systems.
 - c. Identifies area that covers dead spaces.
 - d. Allows trains or battalion CP to keep the area under observation.
- .4 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC reports initiation of the minefield.
- a. States start time of mine emplacement.
 - b. Identifies location.
 - c. Identifies target number of the minefield.
- .5 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC integrates mines with defensive plans.
- .6 ____ Emplacing personnel place mines on likely enemy avenues of approach but do not yet arm or attach trip wires to the mines.
- a. Install mines according to a basic pattern or without regard to pattern.
 - b. Place antitank mines to block likely armor avenues of approach.
 - c. Place antipersonnel mines to protect antitank mines and block infantry approaches.
 - d. Ensure the minefield is kept under observation by companies at all times to prevent the enemy from booby-trapping them.
 - e. Mark or guard minefield to protect friendly companies and noncombatants.
- .7 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC records the minefield.
- a. Selects and records an easily identifiable reference point in front of the position.
 - b. Indicates end of each visualized row by two markers, labeled with the letter of the row and number one for one end of the row and number two for the other end of the row.
 - c. Records the azimuth and distance to B1.
 - d. Determines the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on the form.
 - e. Plots the reference point in the center of the circles on the form.
 - f. Records the azimuth and distance to A1.
 - g. Measures and records the distance and azimuth to each row marker.
 - h. Measures and records azimuth and distance from the last mine location to another arbitrary point, called 32 (in row 2, A2 in row 1).
 - i. Measures and records the distance and azimuth from reference point to B2 and from 32 to A2.
 - j. Ties in the reference point with a permanent landmark.
 - k. Completes the tabular and identification blocks.
- .8 ____ Emplacing Marines arm the mines.
- a. Work from the enemy side to the friendly side.
 - b. Camouflage mines, if time permits.
- .9 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC collects, stores, and records safeties, shipping plugs, and other items accompanying emplaced mines.

- .10 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC reports completion of the minefield.
- a. Submits the completed report to the authorizing commander.
 - b. Submits additional reports, as required.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Trains or COC security is maintained during reconnaissance and emplacement to protect the Marines from enemy observation and fires. All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered with fires. Antitank mines block likely enemy vehicle avenues of approach. Antipersonnel mines protect antitank mines and block infantry approaches. Minefield are marked or guarded to protect friendly Marines. Minefield records are kept.

TASK: 10A.8.9 REMOVE A HASTY MINEFIELD

CONDITION(S): An OPORD has been received from higher headquarters to remove a hasty minefield. The unit that emplaced the mine will remove it. Engineer assets are not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC designates an element to provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield.
- .2 ____ Overwatch element provides security for personnel removing the mines.
- .3 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC determines the method to remove the mines.
 - a. Uses minefield records to direct personnel to the location and types of mines for removal.
 - b. Directs personnel, if present, who laid mine to pick up the same mine.
- .4 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel retrieve safeties, shipping plugs, and other items that accompanied emplaced mines.
- .5 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel perform safety procedures on and remove the mines.
 - a. Observe basic safety precautions by remaining dispersed, not running, and moving only in cleared areas.
 - b. Check sides and bottom of mine for antihandling devices and disarm them if they are found.
 - c. Replace all pins, clips, or other safety devices.
 - d. Turn dial to "SAFE" or "UNARMED" if the mine has an arming dial.
 - e. Remove the fuse and get it away from the mine.
 - f. Lift the mine from the hole.
- .6 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel clean and repack mines for future use.
- .7 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel remove mine row markers for future use.
- .8 ____ Section leader sends report of change to higher headquarters stating that minefield has been removed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All mines are removed after safetying procedures are complete, without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored for future use. A complete report of change is filed and maintained until all mines are disarmed and removed.

TASK: 10A.8.10 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE

CONDITION(S): The trains or battalion CP is operating in a tactical environment where enemy contact is possible or expected. Trains or battalion CP personnel observe artillery or smoke impacting near or on top of its position.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Personnel alert the trains or battalion CP.
 - a. Shout "INCOMING."
 - b. Radio "INCOMING."
- .2 ____ Personnel obtain maximum protection.
 - a. Close vision blocks.
 - b. Drop down inside vehicles and close hatches.
 - c. Personnel in unarmored vehicles move to positions that offer maximum cover.
- .3 ____ Mounted and dismounted personnel assume MOPP 4 if automatic masking under indirect fire is directed by higher headquarters.
- .4 ____ Trains or battalion CP elements maneuver to avoid impact of indirect fire.
 - a. Disperse to reduce exposure.
 - b. Unit leader simultaneously reports contact to higher and adjacent echelons.
- .5 ____ Trains or battalion CP picks up dismounted personnel in area of operations.
- .6 ____ Dismounted personnel (not picked up in subtask 5) seek protection of available overhead cover.
- .7 ____ Vehicles move out of impact area.
 - a. Seek covered and concealed routes or positions.
 - b. Trains or battalion CP OIC specifies a rally point.
- .8 ____ Vehicle commanders report to trains or battalion CP.
 - a. Give current vehicle or trains or battalion CP location.
 - b. Identify types of rounds (air, ground burst, smoke).
 - c. Identify direction and estimated distance of indirect fires.
 - d. Chemical detection team reads radiacmeter and logs dosage.
 - e. Submit NBC reports to higher headquarters.
 - f. Disseminate NBC data to subordinate elements.

- .9 ____ If NBC conditions do not exist, trains or battalion CP returns to normal operations.
- a. OIC gives all clear signal or directs unmasking procedures to begin.
 - b. Personnel authenticate if all clear signal was given by radio.
 - c. Initiates unmasking procedures or removes protective masks.
- .10 ____ Vehicles converge on rally point.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Trains or COC reacts to indirect fire so that all personnel are alerted of incoming fire, obtain maximum cover, assume MOPP 4 (if directed as an automatic reaction to indirect fire by higher headquarters, or if an NBC attack is suspected or detected), and initiate continuous NBC monitoring. Vehicles maneuver out of impact area and screen position with friendly smoke. Trains or COC informs higher headquarters of the situation.

TASK: 10A.8.11 REACT TO AIR ATTACK (PASSIVE)

CONDITION(S): Trains or battalion CP has received an air defense warning from higher headquarters, sighted an approaching unidentified aircraft, or received fire from an enemy aircraft. Air defense assets are not attached.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC disseminates air attack alarm to subordinate echelons.
- a. Announces air defense warning.
 - b. Orients vehicles and key positions on the direction of aircraft approach.
 - c. Posts air guards for vehicles, key defensive positions, and storage areas.
 - d. Announces weapons control status.
- .2 ____ Trains or battalion CP air guards and gunners search assigned sectors for enemy aircraft.
- a. Identifies all aircraft as friendly or enemy, specifying name and numerical designation, if possible.
 - b. Announces "AIR ATTACK," in response to sighting enemy aircraft.
 - c. Gives direction of attack using clock method or cardinal direction method.
 - d. Tracks aircraft crossing to the front.
- .3 ____ Trains or battalion CP picks up dismounted personnel in area of operations.
- .4 ____ If moving, trains or battalion CP seeks covered and concealed positions or routes.
- a. Disperses vehicles at an angle oblique to the original direction of movement.
 - b. Moves vehicles into hide or defilade positions, if possible.
 - c. Camouflages stationary vehicles and defensive positions, if possible.

- .5 ____ Dismounted personnel employ individual camouflage.

14 Oct 94

- .6 ____ Trains or battalion CPA OIC reports end of enemy aircraft attack to higher headquarters or air defense artillery support.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Vehicles disperse and move into covered and concealed positions, dismounted personnel mount vehicles or seek ground cover and concealment, and trains or COC weapon systems prepare to engage enemy aircraft.

TASK: 10A.8.12 REACT TO AIR ATTACK (ACTIVE)

CONDITION(S): Trains or battalion CP has received an air defense warning from higher headquarters, sighted an approaching unidentified aircraft, or received fire from an approaching unidentified aircraft, or received fire from an enemy aircraft. Air defense assets are not attached.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC disseminates air attack alarm to subordinate elements.
- a. Announces air defense warning.
 - b. Orients vehicles and key positions on the direction of aircraft approach.
 - c. Posts air guards for vehicles, key defensive positions, and storage sites.
 - d. Announces weapons control status.
- .2 ____ Trains or battalion CP air guards and gunners search assigned sectors for enemy aircraft.
- a. Identifies all aircraft as friendly or enemy, specifying name and numerical designation, if possible.
 - b. Announces "AIR ATTACK," in response to sighting enemy aircraft.
 - c. Gives direction of attack using clock method or cardinal direction.
 - d. Reports 2a-c to higher headquarters.
 - e. Tracks aircraft crossing to the front.
- .3 ____ Trains or battalion CP picks up dismounted personnel in area of operations.
- .4 ____ If moving, trains or battalion CP seeks covered and concealed positions or routes.
- a. Disperses vehicles at an angle oblique to the original direction of movement.
 - b. Moves vehicles into hide or defilade positions, if possible.
 - c. Camouflages stationary vehicles and defensive positions, if possible.
- .5 ____ Dismounted personnel employ individual camouflage.
- .6 ____ Trains or battalion CP engage enemy aircraft with direct fire if not detrimental to mission accomplishment.
- a. Uses football-field method.
 - b. Uses head-on method.
 - c. Uses target references point method.

- .7 ____ Trains or battalion CP reorients weapons after first pass to original direction from which aircraft approached.
- .8 ____ Trains or battalion CP OIC reports destruction of enemy aircraft to higher headquarters of requests air defense artillery support.
- .9 ____ Vehicles remain in covered and concealed positions.
 - a. Remains in position at least 60 seconds or until aircraft is destroyed.
 - b. Remains in position until after first passover.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Vehicles disperse and move into covered and concealed positions, dismounted personnel mount vehicles or seek ground cover and concealment, and trains or COC destroys the enemy or disrupts its attack forcing it out of the area of operations.

TASK: 10A.8.13 RECONNOITER A BATTALION CP SITE

CONDITION(S): The battalion commander or XO has determined that the battalion CP must relocate to maintain control of the battle or to minimize vulnerability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander or XO issues a warning order to battalion CP personnel.
 - a. Designates a quartering party to include a representative from each section, and H&S company commander or XO.
 - b. Gives general guidance on battalion CP location and operational needs.
- .2 ____ XO or S3 conducts a map reconnaissance to determine tentative battalion CP site(s).
- .3 ____ Ensures that site does not conflict with company support elements or is not close to fire support elements.
- .4 ____ Ensures site is not astride high speed avenues of approach or prominent terrain, yet is accessible.
- .5 ____ Ensures site is outside enemy mortar range.
- .6 ____ Selects primary route to new site.
- .7 ____ Selects probable battalion CP site(s).
 - a. Reconnaissance party moves to the proposed battalion CP site(s).
- .8 ____ Uses covered and concealed routes.
- .9 ____ Employs OPSEC measures.
- .10 ____ Maintains security and air guards.
- .11 ____ Conducts hasty reconnaissance of primary and alternate routes.
 - a. Reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance of battalion CP site(s).
- .12 ____ Determines concealment from air and ground observation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .13 ____ Determines covered positions from direct fire.
- .14 ____ Determines if area is large enough to ensure adequate dispersion against indirect fire.
- .15 ____ Selects adequate entrances and exits to ensure accessibility.
- .16 ____ Conducts radio checks at each new site to verify communications profile.
- .17 ____ Determines drainage and cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area.
- .18 ____ Locates mines, obstacles, or hazards within the area.
- .19 ____ Determines the existence and extent of NBC contamination in the area, if required.
 - a. Reconnaissance party selects a site that meets mission requirement.
- .20 ____ Provides good cover and concealment from air and ground observation.
- .21 ____ Supports ground vehicular traffic.
- .22 ____ Lies beyond enemy direct fire and mortar range.
- .23 ____ Does not restrict movement.
- .24 ____ Is located where communications are not impeded.
 - a. Reconnaissance party OIC reports to battalion CP
- .25 ____ Reconnaissance party OIC reports to battalion CP
 - a. Uses radio if net is secure.
 - b. Reports location of site selected.
 - c. Reports route(s) to be used.
- .26 ____ Reconnaissance party returns using covered and concealed routes.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Leaders conduct a map and physical reconnaissance of the proposed CP site(s). The selected site(s) affords cover and concealment from air and ground observation and does not impede communications. It is located outside enemy mortar fire range, is large enough to allow adequate dispersion of CP group, and is located on ground that will support vehicle traffic.

TASK: 10A.8.14 OCCUPY A BATTALION CP SITE

CONDITION(S): The battalion CP is moving as part of the battalion and has been directed to occupy a selected site. A reconnaissance party has marked all vehicle locations, secured the site, and met the battalion CP at the RP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Reconnaissance party guides vehicles into battalion CP site.
 - a. Clears RP without stopping.
 - b. Leads vehicles to preselected positions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Uses covered concealed routes.
 - d. Avoids canalizing alleys, if possible.
 - e. Guides CP personnel to basement area, if available.
- .2 ____ XO or S3 revises direct and indirect fire plan.
- a. Assigns sectors of fire and observation that provide mutually supporting, massing fires on likely enemy avenues of approach.
 - b. Ensures 360-degree fire and observation.
 - c. Plans for enemy engagements at maximum observable ranges.
 - d. Identifies indirect-fire targets forward, on the sides, and to the rear of the battalion CP site.
 - e. Masses indirect-fire targets on likely enemy avenues of approach and kill zones.
- .3 ____ XO or S3 ensures battalion CP site is prepared.
- a. Ensures site provides concealment from air and ground observation.
 - b. Ensures site provides cover from direct fire.
 - c. Ensures site provides space for dispersion against enemy artillery.
 - d. Ensures site provides adequate entrances and exits.
 - e. Ensures site provides good drainage and CEOI conditions that will support vehicles.
 - f. Ensures site provides communications to forward combat units and higher headquarters.
- .4 ____ Battalion CP establishes local security.
- a. XO, S3, or NCOIC organizes and rehearses reaction force actions.
 - b. Maximizes visual observation (using upper floors of buildings for OPs in built-up areas).
 - c. Employs sensors and surveillance devices, if available.
 - d. Establishes an internal security area around the CP, incorporating concertina wire to control access.
 - e. Establishes an external perimeter security around the battalion CP and battalion CP support elements.
 - f. Establishes perimeter guards and OPs.
 - g. Emplaces crew-served weapons along likely enemy avenues of approach.
 - h. Emplaces hasty protective minefields.
 - i. Employs NBC detection equipment and air guards.
 - j. Uses patrols during periods of limited visibility.
 - k. Integrates all attachments into defense plan.
 - l. Establishes guidelines for handling noncombatants and urban and rural guerrilla activity.
 - m. Establishes checkpoints for civilian traffic, and secures work area for civilian work force, if used.
 - n. Integrates local constabulary (if friendly) into security plan.

- o. Seals all unused doors and windows.
- .5 ____ Battalion CP employs OPSEC measures.
- a. Camouflages all vehicles with netting, canvas, or natural foliage.
 - b. Avoids unnecessary movement at battalion CP site.
 - c. Establishes a dismount point and a vehicle holding areas to reduce traffic.
 - d. Remotes or masks antennas to reduce EW signature.
- .6 ____ Battalion CP assumes control of the battle.
- a. Maximizes use of wire and mobile subscriber equipment (MSE) within battalion CP area.
 - f. Enforces noise and light discipline during nighttime operations.
- .6 ____ Battalion CP assumes control of the battle.
- a. Establishes battalion CP.
 - b. Receives SITREP from COC or combat trains CP and subordinates.
 - c. Establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, supporting, and higher units.
 - d. Informs COC that it is assuming control, and directs it to alternate site.
- .7 ____ XO or S3 plans for continuous CP operations.
- a. Develops sleep plans and ensures sleep areas are dispersed throughout buildings in built-up areas.
 - b. Establishes two sights to ensure 24-hour operation.
 - c. Overlaps shifts to ensure smooth handover of responsibilities.
 - d. Briefs shifts on situation and CF work priorities.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Reconnaissance party guides CP vehicles through RP into selected vehicle positions without stopping. Communications with higher headquarters and perimeter security are established. CP reassumes control of the battle.

TASK: 10A.8.15 MOVE THE BATTALION CP

CONDITION(S): The battalion combat units have moved. The communications link between the command group, subordinate units, and the battalion CP are degraded by terrain and distance. The battalion commander has directed the S3 to move the battalion CP to a selected site. The COC or combat trains CP has been established to control the battle. A reconnaissance party has conducted reconnaissance and secured the new site. Stand-to has been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S3 plans for displacement.
- a. Plans new battalion CP site based on factors of communications, survivability, and accessibility.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Determines method of displacement based on need to maintain continuous control of battle and communications with regimental headquarters.
 - c. Determines primary and alternate movement routes.
 - d. Issues warning order to the section leaders and to the COC to assume communications if the battalion CP is not capable.
 - e. Designates the general location of the proposed CP site.
- .2 ____ The battalion CP prepares to move.
- a. Recovers and stores communications wire and equipment.
 - b. Recovers hasty protective minefields.
 - c. Breaks down equipment and camouflage and loads vehicles.
 - d. Polices area.
 - e. Evacuates, tows, or destroys disabled vehicles.
- .3 ____ S3 issues movement orders to section leaders.
- a. Finalizes plan based on intelligence from quartering party.
 - b. Specifies SP and RP times.
 - c. Specifies techniques of movement and formations.
 - d. Ensures all-around order.
 - e. Designates section positions within proposed site.
 - f. Notifies COC of impending move, and directs COC to assume control of operations.
- .4 ____ Section leaders reconnoiter OPs.
- a. Direct personnel manning OPs to return to unit.
 - b. Store equipment from OPs on vehicles.
- .5 ____ Battalion CP departs site.
- a. Elements depart in predetermined march order in accordance with battalion SOP.
 - b. S3 reports departure and clearing times from initial location to battalion headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Movement orders are issued to CP personnel. Minefields, communications, equipment, and disabled vehicles are recovered. Vehicles depart at designated time in designated sequence.

TASK: 10A.8.16 DEPART A TRAINS SITE

CONDITION(S): The battalion combat units have moved and the battalion commander has directed the S4 or H&S company commander to move the trains to a selected location. Trains may be configured as unit or echeloned trains. A quartering party has conducted reconnaissance and secured the new site. Stand-to has been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S4 or H&S company commander plans for displacement.
 - a. Plans new trains site based on the considerations of communications, dispersion, cover and concealment, suitable ground, helicopter landing sites, routes into and out of trains site, and proximity to MSR and ASR.
 - b. Determines method of displacement (traveling, traveling overwatch, infiltration) based on need to provide continuous support and METT-TSL.
 - c. Determines primary and alternate movement routes.
 - d. Plans continuous CSS to forward units during displacement, if necessary.
 - e. Plans for evacuation of equipment and transportation of supplies.
 - f. Issues warning order to section leaders, to include proposed trains site.
- .2 ____ The trains prepare to move.
 - a. Recover and store communications wire and equipment.
 - b. Recover hasty protective minefields.
 - c. Break down equipment, and camouflage and load vehicles.
 - d. Police area, particularly around field kitchen.
 - e. Evacuate WIA and KIA.
 - f. Evacuate, tow, or destroy disabled vehicles.
- .3 ____ S4 or H&S company commander issues movement orders to the section leaders.
 - a. Finalizes plan based on information from quartering party.
 - b. Specifies SP and RP times.
 - c. Specifies techniques of movement and formation.
 - d. Ensures all-around security.
 - e. Designates march order.
 - f. Designates section positions within proposed trains site.
- .4 ____ Section leaders pull in OPs.
 - a. Personnel manning OPs return to units.
 - b. Direct OPs to store equipment on vehicles.
- .5 ____ Elements depart trains site.
 - a. Elements depart in sequence specified in movement order.
 - b. S4 or H&S company commander reports departure and clearing times from initial location.

ENCLOSURE (1)

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Movement orders are issued to the trains main body. Minefields, communications equipment, and disabled vehicles are recovered. Vehicles depart at designated time in designated sequence.

TASK: 10A.8.17 EMPLOY OPSEC MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The trains or battalion CP is conducting tactical operations in a hostile environment. The enemy may be employing ground reconnaissance units, aerial reconnaissance assets, EW units, and unconventional warfare units.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel employ information security measures.
 - a. Avoid fraternization with civilians and other unauthorized personnel.
 - b. Brief classified and operational information only to personnel who have a need to know.
 - c. Isolate briefed personnel, if an operation or preparation for an operation requires an extended period of time.
 - d. Avoid placing friendly operations graphics on uncontrolled maps.
 - e. Destroy classified material after use.
 - f. Maintain accountability and physical security of all classified material.
- .2 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel employ COMSEC measures.
 - a. Prevent disclosure of unit activity, movements, fire coordination, or attachments and detachments.
 - b. Use authentication procedures during all nonsecured communications.
 - c. Change call signs and frequencies as scheduled in CEOI or unit SOP.
 - d. Avoid using names or persons, equipment, units, and locations over nonsecured equipment.
 - e. Execute call-up procedures and transmission times based on predetermined schedule.
 - f. Encrypt all sensitive information sent by electronic means using an authorized encryption system.
 - g. Use approved codes only.
- .3 ____ COMSEC violations are reported and corrected by the NCS.
- .4 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel employ electronic countercountermeasures.
 - a. Tune communications equipment in accordance with CEOI.
 - b. Adhere to SOPs for communications during periods of radio-listening silence.
 - c. Establish alternate means (courier, land lines) and routes for communications.
 - d. Use terrain to mask friendly communications emitters from the enemy.
 - e. Operate radios on low power unless it interferes with ability to communicate.

- f. Avoid radio transmissions that exceed 20 seconds.
 - g. Use directional antennas when terrain and friendly unit configuration permit.
 - h. Use secure devices.
 - i. Report interference within 10 minutes of incident using MIJI format in CEOI.
 - j. Use antijamming procedures, when jamming is encountered.
 - k. Use authentication procedures to prevent ICD.
- .5 ____ Trains or battalion CP personnel employ countersurveillance measures.
- a. Remove or mask all vehicle markings, such as unit or personnel identification and road march serial numbers.
 - b. Cover reflective surfaces to prevent glare.
 - c. Disperse vehicles at least 50 meters apart.
 - d. Use natural foliage and terrain features to camouflage vehicles.
 - e. Avoid cutting or stripping trees or foliage near camouflaged positions.
 - f. Use camouflage nets so that weapons and vehicles are not discernible to ground observers, and positions are not detectable from the air.
 - g. Clear area of litter.
 - h. Camouflage freshly dug earth from fighting positions, and remove or spread CEOI.
 - i. Maintain dispersion during field feeding operations (individuals maintain at least 5 meter intervals).
 - j. Use existing tracks and roads for movement of vehicles.
 - k. Obscure, conceal, or extend tracks left by vehicles moving into positions.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

OPSEC measures are performed continuously so that access to, and transmission of, classified material is controlled by security personnel, sensitive information sent by electronic means is encrypted using an authorized encryption system, interference is reported using the MIJI format, and trains or CP positions are camouflaged from ground and air observation.

TASK: 10A.8.18 ESTABLISH THE COMBAT TRAINS CP

CONDITION(S): Combat trains are moving as part of the battalion and have been directed to occupy a selected site. The quartering party has marked all vehicle locations, secured the site, and met the command post at the RP. The combat trains personnel have established perimeter security.

- .1 ____ Combat trains OIC integrates the combat trains CP into the defense of the trains site and concealed routes.
 - a. Integrates CP personnel into the overall combat trains perimeter defense.
 - b. Augments reactionary forces in defense against possible limited attacks.
 - c. Establishes an internal security area around the CP, incorporating concertina wire to control access to CP.
 - d. Posts guard at entrance.
 - e. Prepares primary and alternate fighting positions for armored vehicles on the perimeter.
 - f. Emplaces crew-served weapons on main avenues of approach.
 - g. Maintains local NBC security and air guards.
- .2 ____ Combat trains CP personnel erect CP.
 - a. Locate vehicle(s) at the new site.
 - b. Emplace camouflage netting, canvas, or natural foliage.
 - c. Establish wire communications with all combat trains elements and COC and UMCP, if feasible.
 - d. Remote and mask antennas to reduce EW signature.
 - e. Post and update maps, overlay, and charts.
- .3 ____ Combat trains CP establishes NCS for the Logistics Net and maintains communications.
 - a. Maintains communications with supported and supporting units.
 - b. Maintains communications with higher and adjacent units.
- .4 ____ Combat trains CP continues CSS and alternate battalion CP operations.
 - a. Receives and sends logistics reports to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.
 - b. Plans and directs battalion's CSS operations.
 - c. Monitors battalion tactical operations.
- .5 ____ OIC plans for continuous combat trains CP operations.
 - a. Develops sleep plan.
 - b. Establishes two shifts to ensure 24-hour operation.
 - c. Overlaps shifts by a minimum of 2 hours.
 - d. Briefs shifts on tactical and logistical situation and CP work priority.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Combat trains CP is established as personnel are integrated into combat trains defense. Combat trains CP continues CSS and alternate main CP operations.

TASK: 10A.8.19 MOVE BY INFILTRATION

CONDITION(S): A tactical situation exists in which enemy contact is possible and the unit commander has determined a need to reduce unit density and prevent undue massing of vehicles. The unit commander has initiated the movement by specifying it in an OPORD, a radio transmission, or a hand-and-arm signal. A route or axis has been designated. The unit may be in a stationary position or moving.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit commander determines method of infiltration.
 - a. Selects dispatch by vehicles if the degree of unit density is more critical than speed of movement.
 - b. Selects dispatch by element if speed of movement is more critical than the degree of unit density.
- .2 ____ Unit leader designates order of march and dispatch interval.
 - a. Specifies order of vehicles if dispatching by vehicle.
 - b. Specifies content and order of each element if dispatching by element.
 - c. Designates irregular time intervals between dispatching of vehicles or elements.
- .3 ____ Unit leader assigns areas of responsibility for observation and fire to ensure all-around security is maintained.
 - a. Ensure all-around security is maintained by assigning sectors to each vehicle.
 - b. Posts air guards.
- .4 ____ Unit elements of vehicles depart their current location using infiltration or transition on the move at a specified point.
 - a. Maintain specified time intervals between elements of vehicle.
 - b. Avoid enemy contact by halting and concealing vehicles.
 - c. Maintain a distance between vehicles that allows for freedom of fire and movement.
 - d. Maintain continuous visual contact with lead vehicles or elements during movement.
 - e. Make maximum use of terrain for cover and concealment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit commander selects a method of infiltration appropriate to the tactical situation. Unit vehicles or elements maintain specified irregular dispatch intervals. Unit vehicles or elements avoid enemy contact.

TASK: 10A.8.20 CONDUCT VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE

CONDITION(S): Trains, or COC has deployed with organic equipment or is performing maintenance in the AA or predesignated location.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Elements conducts scheduled maintenance.
 - a. Inspects equipment.
 - b. Determines level of maintenance required.
 - c. Performs corrective action.
 - d. Completes maintenance forms.
 - e. Reports changes in material readiness status to maintenance personnel.
- .2 ____ Maintenance personnel repair unit equipment.
 - a. Inspect equipment.
 - b. Determine level of maintenance required.
 - c. Assign equipment to appropriate maintenance area.
 - d. Ensure tools, personnel, and repair parts are available.
 - e. Perform corrective actions.
 - f. Complete maintenance forms.
 - g. Report changes of material readiness status to the commander or designated representative.
- .3 ____ H&S company commander and staff leaders check status of repair parts request.
 - a. Check status of repair parts on order.
 - b. Check status of unserviceable items that have been turned in for repair or replacement.
- .4 ____ Headquarters elements turn in equipment for repair or replacement.
 - a. Inspect equipment.
 - b. Correct all unit-level deficiencies.
 - c. Prepare equipment for acceptance into support maintenance.
- .5 ____ Headquarters element leaders manage unit maintenance operations.
 - a. Monitor equipment status.
 - b. Monitor PMCS.
 - c. Monitor maintenance quality control program.
 - d. Monitor maintenance safety program.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Maintenance requirements and problems are identified using the appropriate vehicle technical manual.

TASK: 10A.8.21 REACT TO GROUND ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Unit is occupying an AA or trains site with OPs on the perimeter. Enemy mechanized units or dismounted patrols are conducting operations in the general vicinity.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit OPs detect the enemy.
 - a. Send spot report to unit OIC.
 - b. Request guidance on actions to take.
 - c. Continue to observe enemy.
- .2 ____ Unit OIC alerts security elements.
- .3 ____ Security elements occupy fighting positions.
 - a. Man crew-served weapons.
 - b. Man individual weapons.
 - c. Calls OPs back to their vehicles.
- .4 ____ Unit OIC reports situation.
 - a. Reports to battalion commander.
 - b. Reports to adjacent units.
- .5 ____ If enemy is a small harassing force, security elements secure and hold the perimeter.
 - a. Engage enemy with crew-served and individual weapons at maximum range of weapons.
 - b. Employ indirect fires to suppress or disorganize the enemy.
 - c. Request permission from unit OIC to disengage.
 - d. Employ smoke to conceal disengagement and withdrawal.
- .6 ____ If enemy penetrates unit's perimeter, OIC initiates unit movement or displacement.
 - a. Requests permission from battalion commander to displace.
 - b. Selects alternate location (if not already done).
 - c. Selects covered and concealed routes to alternate location (if not already done).
 - d. Employs smoke to cover unit movement.
 - e. Transfers control of battle to alternate CP (if applicable).

MCO 3501.15
14 Oct 94

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit reacts to mechanized unit's or dismounted patrol's attack by having security elements repel the attack or hold the enemy until assisted by friendly elements. If ground attack penetrates the perimeter, unit displaces to an alternate location.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-A-134

SECTION 10B

LAR COMPANY

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10B.1 - COMMAND AND CONTROL</u>	
TASK 10B.1.1	X-B-1
PERFORM PRECOMBAT INSPECTION	
TASK 10B.1.2	X-B-4
EXECUTE SLEEP PLAN	
TASK 10B.1.3	X-B-5
PERFORM COMBAT PLANNING	
TASK 10B.1.4	X-B-7
OPERATE THE COMPANY COMMAND POST	
TASK 10B.1.5	X-B-9
ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS	
TASK 10B.1.6	X-B-10
REPORT COMBAT INFORMATION	
TASK 10B.1.7	X-B-11
PASS COMBAT INFORMATION AND ORDERS	
TASK 10B.1.8	X-B-12
EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES	
<u>MPS 10B.2 - INTELLIGENCE</u>	
TASK 10B.2.1	X-B-14
PROCESS ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT	
TASK 10B.2.2	X-B-15
EMPLOY OPSEC	
<u>MPS 10B.3 - MANEUVER</u>	
TASK 10B.3.1	X-B-20
PERFORM ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10B.3.2	X-B-22
PERFORM ZONE RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10B.3.3	X-B-24
PERFORM AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10B.3.4	X-B-25
ASSIST A LINEUP	
TASK 10B.3.5	X-B-27
PERFORM SCREEN OPERATIONS	
TASK 10B.3.6	X-B-28
PERFORM MOVEMENT TO CONTACT	
TASK 10B.3.7	X-B-29
PERFORM ACTIONS ON CONTACT	
TASK 10B.3.8	X-B-30
PERFORM HASTY ATTACK	
TASK 10B.3.9	X-B-32
DIRECT FIRE PLAN	
TASK 10B.3.10	X-B-32
DELAY IN COMPANY SECTOR	
TASK 10B.3.11	X-B-35
DEPEND IN COMPANY SECTOR	
TASK 10B.3.12	X-B-37
DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	
TASK 10B.3.13	X-B-39
PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	
TASK 10B.3.14	X-B-41
CONDUCT TACTICAL MOVEMENT	
TASK 10B.3.15	X-B-47
OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	
TASK 10B.3.16	X-B-48
PERFORM A RELIEF IN PLACE	
TASK 10B.3.17	X-B-50
PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10B.3.18	X-B-53
ASSIST PASSAGE OF LINES	

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10B.4 - FIRE SUPPORT

TASK 10B.4.1 X-B-54
DEVELOP FIRE SUPPORT PLAN

MPS 10B.5 - IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT (CAS)/CLOSE-IN FIRE SUPPORT (CIFS)

TASK 10B.5.1 X-B-55
PLAN AN IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

TASK 10B.5.2 X-B-56
CONTROL AN IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

TASK 10B.5.3 X-B-58
PLAN A LASER GUIDED CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

TASK 10B.5.4 X-B-60
CONTROL A LASER GUIDED CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

MPS 10B.6 - MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY

TASK 10B.6.1 X-B-61
CONDUCT HASTY WATER CROSSING OPERATIONS

TASK 10B.6.2 X-B-63
PERFORM HASTY OBSTACLE BREACHING

TASK 10B.6.3 X-B-65
DEVELOP OBSTACLE PLAN

TASK 10B.6.4 X-B-66
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS IN AN NBC ENVIRONMENT

TASK 10B.6.5 X-B-67
PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

TASK 10B.6.6 X-B-68
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

TASK 10B.6.7 X-B-69
CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY

TASK 10B.6.8 X-B-70
PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

TASK 10B.6.9 X-B-70
PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

TASK 10B.6.10 X-B-72
PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

TASK 10B.6.11 X-B-72
RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

TASK 10B.6.12 X-B-74
CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

TASK 10B.6.13 X-B-75
CONDUCT A CHEMICAL SURVEY

TASK 10B.6.14 X-B-76
COORDINATE FOR DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION

TASK 10B.6.15 X-B-78
PERFORM DETAILED DECONTAMINATION

TASK 10B.6.16 X-B-78
PROTECT SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT FROM CONTAMINATION

TASK 10B.6.17 X-B-79
RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

TASK 10B.6.18 X-B-80
PERFORM HASTY DECONTAMINATION (VEHICLE WASHDOWN)

MPS 10B.7 - AIR DEFENSE

TASK 10B.7.1 X-B-81
TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT

TASK 10B.7.2 X-B-83
DEVELOP AIR DEFENSE PLAN

TASK 10B.7.3 X-B-84
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

PAGE

MPS 10B.8 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK 10B.8.1	. . . . .	X-B-85
	DEVELOP CSS PLAN	
TASK 10B.8.2	. . . . .	X-B-86
	ORGANIZE COMPANY COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	
TASK 10B.8.3	. . . . .	X-B-87
	PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS	
TASK 10B.8.4	. . . . .	X-B-90
	PERFORM MEDICAL TREATMENT AND EVACUATION	
TASK 10B.8.5	. . . . .	X-B-91
	PERFORM COMPANY MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10B.8.6	. . . . .	X-B-94
	CARE FOR NBC CONTAMINATED CASUALTIES	
TASK 10B.8.7	. . . . .	X-B-95
	MAINTAIN COMPANY STRENGTH	

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-B-iii

10B.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL

TASK: 10B.1.1 PERFORM PRECOMBAT INSPECTION

CONDITION(S): The company receives a warning order of an upcoming operation. The company commander determines that a precombat inspection must be made.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander issues the order for inspection.
 - a. Organizes inspection.
 - b. Issues instructions for conduct of inspection.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares for upcoming mission.
 - a. Directs precombat checks to be performed.
 - b. Coordinates for technical assistance, if required.
 - c. Supervises the precombat checks.
 - d. Identifies and reports uncorrected deficiencies to higher echelon for needed actions.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks of personnel.
 - a. Ensures Marines are in complete, appropriate seasonal uniform.
 - b. Asks questions to ensure Marines have been briefed on current mission/situation.
 - c. Checks drivers for licenses.
 - d. Briefs Marines on preventing hot- or cold-weather injuries.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs checks of vehicle commander.
 - a. Ensures map is complete with current overlay.
 - b. Ensures CEOI is current.
 - c. Ensures vehicle commander has binoculars and night-vision goggles.
 - d. Ensures vehicle commander has a compass.
- .5 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commander performs precombat checks of vehicles (general).
 - a. Ensures loads are completed according to load plan and load plan is posted in obvious place.
 - b. Ensures crew bags (NBC) are present.
 - c. Ensures vehicles are topped off with fuel.
 - d. Ensures POL package products and small arms lubricants are loaded.
 - e. Ensures water cans are filled.
 - f. Ensures meals, ready to eat (MRE) rations are stowed.
 - g. Ensures weapons cleaning kits are present.
 - h. Ensures first aid kits are complete.
 - i. Ensures operator's manuals with all changes and lubrication orders (LO) are present for radios, equipment, and weapons.

- j. Ensures tools and tool kits are present.
 - k. Ensures prepare-to-fire checks are complete.
- .6 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commander performs precombat inspection of vehicles (automotive).
- a. Ensures no fuel leaks are present.
 - b. Ensures fire extinguishers (fixed and portable) are sealed and tagged.
 - c. Ensures oil levels are correct.
 - d. Ensures battery levels are correct and cables are secure.
 - a. Ensures air filters are clean.
 - f. Checks to make sure suspension components are serviceable.
 - g. Checks track tension.
 - h. Ensures lights are operational.
 - i. Ensures bilge pumps are operational.
 - j. Ensures no exhaust leaks are present.
 - k. Ensures all access plates are installed.
 - l. Checks interior for cleanliness and orderliness.
 - m. Ensures all gauges are functional. Checks to make sure tires have correct pressure and are serviceable.
 - n. Ensures coolant levels are correct.
- .7 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commander performs precombat inspection of vehicles (armament).
- a. Ensures all prefire checks are completed in accordance with operator's manual.
 - b. Checks to make sure all sights are clean, uncovered, and operational.
 - c. Ensures periscopes and weapons are uncovered.
 - d. Ensures vision blocks are clear.
 - e. Ensures traversing and elevation systems are functional.
 - f. Ensures safeties are functional.
 - g. Ensures ammunition is serviceable.
- .8 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commander performs precombat inspection of common critical items.
- a. Ensures binoculars are present.
 - b. Ensures camouflage nets and supports are present.
 - c. Ensures compasses are present.
 - d. Ensures night-vision goggles with spare batteries are present.
 - e. Ensures demolition kits are present.
- .9 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commander performs precombat inspection of communications equipment.

14 Oct 94

- a. Ensures radios are present and operational.
 - b. Ensures intercom is operational.
 - c. Ensures combat vehicle crewman (CVC) helmets are operational.
 - d. Ensures TA-312 is present with batteries.
 - a. Ensures AN/GRA-39 is complete with batteries.
- .10 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/section heads performs precombat inspection of personal NBC equipment.
- a. Ensures protective clothing is complete in two sets.
 - b. Ensures protective masks are complete with accessories.
 - c. Ensures mask and hood are serviceable.
 - d. Ensures MOPP-1 is implemented.
 - a. Ensures nerve agent antidote is available for distribution.
- .11 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commander performs precombat inspection of vehicle's NBC equipment.
- a. Ensures M11 decontamination apparatus is issued and stored in correctly mounted bracket (two per M1).
 - b. Ensures 11 decontamination apparatus is serviceable.
 - c. Ensures each vehicle has tow cans of DS2.
 - d. Ensures operational chemical agent alarm is stored.
 - e. Ensures M299 refill kit is issued for each chemical agent alarm.
- .12 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/section heads performs precombat inspection of NBC defense equipment.
- a. Ensures each section has been issued one complete, serviceable M256 chemical agent detector kit.
 - b. Ensures IM-174 series radiacmeters with spare batteries have been issued.
 - c. Ensures each platoon has been issued a minimum of two IM-93/147 dosimeters.
 - d. Ensures PP-1578A radiac chargers have been issued.
 - e. Ensures NBC contamination markers are present.
 - f. Ensures gas particulators are operational.
 - g. Ensures M43 automatic chemical detector and M42 alarm are present.
 - h. Ensures the survey and monitoring, decontamination, and chemical agent detection teams have been designated and briefed.
- .13 _____ Commander/XO/maintenance chief performs precombat inspection of maintenance equipment.
- a. Ensures the prescribed load list (PLL) is loaded and mobile.
 - b. Ensures all tool sets, test sets, generators, welding sets, forms, and records are available and loaded.
- .14 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/vehicle commanders performs precombat inspection of 81mm mortars.

- a. Ensures tube is serviceable.
- b. Ensures ground mount is present.
- c. Ensures sights are operational.
- d. Ensures M2 compass is operational.
- e. Ensures M16 plotting board is present.
- f. Ensures firing tables are present.
- g. Ensures aiming stakes with lights are present.
- h. Ensures aiming circles are operational.
- i. Ensures fuse setting wrenches are present.

.15 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/section sergeant/
vehicle commander performs precombat inspection of
crew-served weapons.

- a. Ensures crew-served weapons are clean and
functional.
- b. Ensures tubes/barrels are clean. Ensures spare
barrels, cleaning tools, bolts, and ruptured
cartridge extractors are present.
- c. Ensures machine guns are properly mounted to
include lock and pins.
- d. Ensures bipods/tripods are present.
- e. Ensures current operator's manuals are present.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Precombat inspection is performed with company personnel and
equipment being prepared for combat operations by the time specified
in the warning order.

TASK: 10B.1.2 EXECUTE SLEEP PLAN

CONDITION(S): The company performs continuous combat operations.
OPFOR contact as possible. The company operates under the threat
of NBC attack or in an active NBC environment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commanders report current personnel status to XO.
- .2 ____ XO performs company assessment.
 - a. Evaluates status of company preparedness for
current or follow-on missions.
 - b. Determines company security requirements.
 - c. Determines available time for sleep.
 - d. Reports assessment to company commander.
- .3 ____ First sergeant advises commander of company requirements.

14 Oct 94

- a. Advises commander of company conditions and needs.
 - b. Recommends a sleep plan to the commander.
- .4 ____ Commander develops and implements specific work-rest-sleep plan.
- a. Makes an estimate based on company needs (such as maintenance, resupply, security, and factors of METT-TSL) and battalion readiness condition (REDCON).
 - b. Provides safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.
 - c. Provides opportunity for maximum number of Marines to sleep or rest when possible.
 - d. Specifies and provides time for commanders to sleep or rest.
 - e. Adjusts the plan to the tactical situation.
 - f. Ensures all Marines receive a minimum of 4 hours uninterrupted sleep and/or 5 hours interrupted sleep per 24-hour period.
- .5 ____ Platoons and sections execute the plan in accordance with commander's and unit SOP.
- .6 ____ All commanders supervise sleep plan.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company personnel receive an adequate amount of rest. Leaders are included in the plan. The sleep plan is enforced and done in MOPP 4.

TASK: 10B.1.3 PERFORM COMBAT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The company receives an operation order (OPORD) from the battalion and must plan to conduct a combat operation. The mission is received in the field. The company may be in an assembly area (AA) or conducting a tactical mission when planning begins.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commanders receive the mission.
- a. Identify the specific tasks located in paragraphs 2 and 3 of the OPORD.
 - b. Identify the implied tasks they must perform to accomplish the mission.
 - c. Identify the essential tasks from their list of specific and implied tasks.
 - d. Put the essential tasks in the form of a restated mission that includes who, what, when, where, and why.
- .2 ____ Commanders issue a warning order.
- a. Issue a warning order immediately after determining unit's mission.
 - b. Ensure warning order is brief (oral or written).
 - c. Begin the message by saying, "Warning order."
 - d. List addressees.
 - e. Tell subordinates the nature of the operation so they can immediately start preparing.

- f. Tell subordinates the time the operation is to begin.
 - g. Tell subordinates the earliest time they must be ready to move out.
 - h. Tell subordinates if there are any changes in task organization and what the chances are so they can be executed quickly.
 - i. Tell subordinates the time and place the complete order (if any) will be given.
 - j. Make sure subordinate elements acknowledge receipt of the warning order.
- .3 ____ Commanders make a tentative plan.
- a. Develop a tentative plan based on METT-TSL.
 - b. Develop alternative courses of action based on the tentative plan.
 - c. Compare alternative courses of action.
 - d. Select the best course of action.
- .4 ____ Commanders initiate necessary movement.
- a. Coordinate movement route.
 - b. Coordinate necessary transportation.
- .5 ____ Commanders perform commander's reconnaissance.
- a. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
 - b. Analyze the five military aspects of terrain.
 - c. Determine route of movement.
 - d. Determine formation and technique of movement and areas where the technique or formation may change.
 - e. Determine likely Threat positions and kill zones.
 - f. Determine likely routes around Threat positions.
 - g. Determine likely locations for sector/zone observation.
 - h. Determine likely overwatch positions.
 - i. Determine likely artillery targets.
 - j. Verify map reconnaissance by ground reconnaissance, if possible.
- .6 ____ Commanders complete the plan.
- a. Make final adjustments.
 - b. Put the plan in the five-paragraph order format.
 - c. Prepare an operations overlay which graphically depicts the final plan.
- .7 ____ Commanders issue the order.
- a. Ensure the complete orders group is present.
 - b. Issue overlays.
 - c. Give subordinates time to post overlays.
 - d. Check subordinates' overlays to ensure they are posted correctly.

- a. Brief the entire order in sequence, covering all details.
- f. Fix responsibility for all activities.
- g. Ensure everyone understands the mission and concept of operations, using backbriefs to check.

.8 ____ Commanders supervise and refine the order.

- a. Refine the plan as the situation changes.
- b. Locate where the most critical events or activities are to take place.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Leaders use troop-leading procedures to plan tactical missions and brief Marines. Platoon plan supports commander's plan and intent. All platoon members are able to brief back and explain platoon plan when directed.

TASK: 10B.1.4 OPERATE THE COMPANY COMMAND POST

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. The company operates under threat of NBC attack or in an active NBC environment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; I; NE

.1 ____ XO directs the movement and operations of the company CP.

- a. Positions the company CP where it can maintain communications with higher and subordinate units.
- b. Displaces as necessary to maintain communications throughout the operation.
- c. Employs the appropriate movement techniques, based on terrain, visibility, and the probability of OPFOR contact.
- d. Establishes local security.
- e. Establishes radio communications with battalion.
- f. Establishes radio and/or wire communications with all company elements.
- g. Conducts rehearsals of defense plans, to include occupation of fighting positions covering each possible avenue of approach.
- h. Reconnoiters and prepares an alternate site for CP and as many subsequent CP sites as the mission requires.
- i. Rehearses movement to alternate and subsequent CP sites.

.2 ____ XO establishes a mobile CP.

- a. Moves on covered and concealed routes to the rear of company combat elements.
- b. Halts in concealed, terrain-masked positions with or to the rear of company overwatch or support-by-fire element.
- c. Occupies vehicle positions and maintains local security through weapon orientation and crew sectors of observation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Maintains radio communications with the battalion CP and subordinate units throughout the operation.
- e. Conducts visual and map reconnaissance of terrain forward, to the rear, and to the flanks of the unit's position and selects tentative, alternate, and subsequent CP sites.

.3 ____ CP group monitors operations.

- a. Monitors company and battalion radio nets (company command and battalion command) and enter the battalion administrative/logistics net (ALN) as needed.
- b. Maintains an operations log and operations map and continuously update the locations of subordinate and adjacent units.
- c. Reports the unit location in a secure manner, when required.
- d. Records and plots all spot reports and forward them to battalion CP.
- e. Prepares and submits all reports in accordance with the unit SOP.
- f. Forwards battalion orders and other critical information to the command group.
- g. Distributes NBC and air attack warnings to all company elements.

.4 ____ XO/CP group reacts to indirect fire.

- a. Requires crewmen to mask.
- b. Requires drivers and crews to button up.
- c. Moves out of the impact area within one minute of round impact.
- d. Occupies an alternate or subsequent CP site as necessary.
- e. Reestablishes communications with subordinate elements and battalion CP within five minutes of round impact and continues to monitor operations.

.5 ____ CP group defends the command post.

- a. Establishes local security.
- b. Engages attacking OPFOR with appropriate direct-fire weapons.
- c. Submits a spot report to the command group and battalion CP.
- d. Disengages and moves on a covered and concealed route to a subsequent CP site.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company command post must operate continuously under all battlefield conditions. Company operations will receive, record, and plot spot reports and then forward them to the battalion CP.

TASK: 10B.1.5 ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company may be in an AA or conducting a tactical mission. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company personnel establish and maintain radio communications.
 - a. Place all radios into operation before the operation begins.
 - b. Apply the designated frequency and fill to the equipment.
- .2 ____ Net control station (NCS) establishes a radio net.
 - a. Opens the company radio net before the operation begins if radio or listening silence is not imposed.
 - b. Enforces net discipline.
 - c. Maintains continuous communications on internal net.
 - d. Maintains continuous communications in designated higher nets.
- .3 ____ Company radio operators operate radios.
 - a. Use only approved radiotelephone procedures.
 - b. Use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI as needed.
 - c. Use only authorized codes and ciphers.
 - d. Encode and decode messages without error.
 - e. Observe radio listening silence as directed.
 - f. Use only authorized call signs and frequencies. Employ preventive and remedial electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) and continue to communicate.
 - g. Report jamming, interference, and deception by secure means in accordance with the CEOI.
 - h. Restricts transmission to 15 seconds or less in duration.
- .4 ____ Communications chief directs the communications team to establish communications.
 - a. Directs the team to erect the OE-254.
 - b. Directs the team to establish the remote radio station.
- .5 ____ Communications team establishes wire communications platoon hot loops that include observation posts (OPs) when possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company communications are established within the time specified in the OPORD. At a minimum, call signs and frequencies found in CEOI are used at all times; secure equipment is used; correct radio procedures are used; and information is received and disseminated accurately and quickly.

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. Subordinate units observe and report combat information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander performs analysis of SITREP.
 - a. Operates on the battalion and company command net.
 - b. Receives orders and reports from the battalion commander.
 - c. Sends reports to the battalion commander as necessary.
 - d. Eavesdrops on reports from other battalion units (companies/attachments).
 - e. Makes assessment of reports.
 - f. Issues orders and reports to the company.
- .2 ____ Company XO performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
 - a. Monitors battalion command net.
 - b. Operates on company command net.
 - c. Receives orders and reports on battalion command net.
 - d. Issues orders or sends reports to the company as necessary.
 - e. Makes assessment of the above information.
 - f. Reports assessment to the company commander as necessary.
 - g. Issues orders or send reports to the company as necessary.
 - h. Sends reports to the battalion CP as necessary.
- .3 ____ Company gunnery sergeant performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
 - a. Monitors company command net.
 - b. Operates on the battalion logistics net.
 - c. Makes assessment of impact on support of the tactical operation.
 - d. Reports assessment to the company commander and XO as necessary.
 - e. Issues orders to the platoon sergeants as necessary.
- .4 ____ Platoon commanders disseminate information.
 - a. Operate on company command net.
 - b. Receive orders and reports from the commander and XO.
 - c. Send reports to the company commander and XO as necessary.
 - d. Issue orders and reports to the platoon as necessary.
- .5 ____ Platoon sergeants disseminate information.
 - a. Operate on the platoon net.
 - b. Monitor company command net.

- c. Receive orders and reports from the platoon commander.
- d. Sends reports to the platoon commander as necessary.
- e. Issue orders to the platoon as necessary

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company records, analyzes, and disseminates information in accordance with the OPORD. The company maintains an updated situation map (SITMAP) reflecting location of forces (friendly and enemy), terrain conditions, essential information, and easy reference information.

TASK: 10B.1.7 PASS COMBAT INFORMATION AND ORDERS

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. The company has received information or orders from the battalion.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Scouts observe and report tactical information.
 - a. Report OPFOR activity.
 - b. Report terrain information.
 - c. Report NBC information.
 - d. Report other combat information in accordance with OPORD.
 - e. Report to the platoon commander within two minutes of observation.
- .2 ____ Scouts perform information reporting and dissemination procedures.
 - a. Operates on the platoon net.
 - b. Eavesdrops on spot reports.
 - c. Makes assessment of impact on the tactical operation.
 - d. Issues orders to the section, if necessary, within two minutes.
- .3 ____ Platoon sergeant performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
 - a. Operates on the platoon net.
 - b. Receives spot reports.
 - c. Makes assessment of impact on tactical and support operations.
 - d. Issues orders to the platoon, if necessary, within two minutes.
 - e. Reports tactical information that affects support operations to the company gunnery sergeant within 15 minutes.
 - f. Monitors company command net.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
 - a. Operates on company command net.

- b. Monitors platoon net.
 - c. Eavesdrops on spot reports from scouts. Issues orders to the platoon, if situation requires immediate involvement, within two minutes.
 - d. Reports to company CP within one minute.
- .5 ____ Company company gunnery sergeant performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
- a. Operates on battalion logistics net.
 - b. Monitors company command net.
 - c. Eavesdrops on scouts' spot reports.
 - d. Makes assessment of impact on support of the tactical operation.
 - e. Issues orders to the company support sections as appropriate.
- .6 ____ Company communications chief performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
- a. Monitors company net.
 - b. Makes entries to the company log.
 - c. Operates on battalion tactical net.
 - d. Receives reports from the company XO and passes reports to the battalion CP immediately.
- .7 ____ Company XO performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
- a. Operates on company command net.
 - b. Receives spot reports.
 - c. Makes changes to the company SITMAP immediately upon receiving reports.
 - d. Makes assessment of impact on tactical and support operations.
 - e. Reports assessment to the company commander within two minutes.
 - f. Issues orders to the company as necessary.
 - g. Prepares a report to be sent to the battalion CP and gives report to company communications chief for transmission within two minutes.
 - h. Coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for support if necessary within 15 minutes.
- .8 ____ Company commander performs information reporting and disseminating procedures.
- a. Operates on battalion command net.
 - b. Monitors company command net.
 - c. Receives reports/assessments from XO and platoon commanders.
 - d. Issues orders, if necessary, within two minutes.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company processes tactical information in accordance with company SOP.

TASK: 10B.1.8 EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company employs terrain index reference system (TIRS) in accordance with unit SOP.
 - a. Uses TIRS as tool to maneuver company.
 - b. Uses TIRS to pass out control measures.
 - c. Uses TIRS to reference BPs.
 - d. Encrypts designation of TIRS when transmitting OPFOR locations on nonsecure radio nets.
 - e. Marks TIRS point on the map at a grid line intersection.
 - f. Properly designates each TIRS point.
 - g. Uses TIRS designators as specified by higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ Company employs eavesdrop system.
 - a. All company elements listen to company radio transmissions.
 - b. Stays off the radio unless communication is necessary.
 - c. Requests the station to repeat the message on completion of transmission if part of the message was missed while eavesdropping.
- .3 ____ Company employs fixed call signs.
 - a. Uses CEOI or unit SOP for call signs.
 - b. Uses fixed call signs to establish immediate identity of subunits to reduce transmission time of company nets.
- .4 ____ Company employs vehicle identification markers.
 - a. Uses vehicle markers to recognize friendly elements.
 - b. Marks all tactical vehicles in accordance with battalion SOP.
- .5 ____ Company employs operational terms.
 - a. Uses operational terms to keep transmissions short.
 - b. Uses operational terms to avoid confusion.
- .6 ____ Company controls unit movement.
 - a. Controls unit movement through use of visual signals whenever possible.
 - b. Subordinate elements comply with and pass on visual signals from element/vehicle to element/vehicle.
- .7 ____ Company commander controls unit maneuver using graphic control measures.
 - a. Subordinate elements report locations in relation to the applicable control measures.
 - b. Conducts unit fires and maneuver coordination in accordance with established control measures.
- .8 ____ Company commander controls direct fire.

- a. Issues fire commands.
 - b. Uses references to TRPs and/or EAs. Establishes and changes target priorities as necessary.
- .9 ____ Company commander controls fire support.
- a. Uses the forward observer (FO) to engage or shift from preplanned targets.
 - b. Employs fire support coordination measures to speed the responsiveness of fire support units.
 - c. Changes target priorities, methods of engagement, shell/fuze combinations, and target effect criteria as necessary.
 - d. Directs organic or dedicated mortars and/or field artillery to lay on down on suspected OPFOR positions.
 - e. Directs fire support units to fire only on order.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company employs doctrinal control measures and techniques which facilitate mission execution.

10B.2 INTELLIGENCE

TASK: 10B.2.1 PROCESS ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The company conducts combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company has captured OPFOR personnel and equipment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Platoons collect EPW's.
- a. Search for weapons and documents.
 - b. Segregate EPW's into groups (officers, NCO's, enlisted personnel, civilians, and females).
 - c. Maintain silence (EPW's do not communicate with each other; unauthorized personnel do not communicate with EPW's).
 - d. Safeguard EPN's (protect EPW's, treat wounded, and tag EPW's for identification).
- .2 ____ Platoon commander evaluate information.
- a. Evaluate information (such as type of equipment and unit designation) gained from captured EPW's and documents for immediate tactical significance (consider factors of METT-TSL).
 - b. Pass information to commanding officer or XO.
- .3 ____ Commanding officer or XO evaluates EPW's.
- a. Evaluates reports from platoon commanders for immediate tactical significance.
 - b. Passes SITREP or orders to company as necessary.

14 Oct 94

- c. Passes reports to battalion via radio on appropriate net.
- .4 ____ XO performs/directs the evacuation of EPW's, documents, and equipment.
- a. Receives and passes documents of immediate tactical significance directly to the battalion S2.
 - b. Coordinates with battalion S1 for the location to hand over EPW's.
 - c. Orders platoons to move EPW's to "hand over" location if necessary (such as when there are large numbers of EHW's requiring platoon action).
 - d. Orders EPW supervisor to move to platoon locations to pick up EPW's and hand them over to battalion S1 elements (such as when small numbers of EPW's exist).
- .5 ____ Platoons evacuate EPW's, documents, and equipment.
- a. Pass documents of immediate tactical significance to the XO.
 - b. Move EPW's, documents, and equipment to "hand over" area.
 - c. Tag all documents found on an EPW and bundle them.
 - d. Give documents to escort guards for evacuation.
 - e. Hand over EPW's, documents, and equipment to S1 or representative, or:
 - f. Hand over EPW's, documents, and equipment to company gunnery sergeant (smaller numbers of EPW's only).

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company collects, secures, and safeguards EPWs. Company evacuates EPWs, documents, and equipment IAW the unit SOP.

TASK: 10B.2.2 EMPLOY OPSEC

CONDITION(S): Hostilities have begun. The company conducts its missions in an active theater of operations against OPFOR. OPFOR intelligence collectors consist of agents, patrols, long-range reconnaissance units, refugees, terrorists, special operations units, indigenous civilians, airborne devices, ground-emplaced devices, and electronic warfare (EW) and signal collectors. This operation is conducted under all battlefield conditions. The company operates under threat of NBC attack or in an active NBC environment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ XO/company gunnery sergeant prepares a physical security plan.
- a. Controls entry of vehicles into CP.
 - b. Develops procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions.
 - c. Develops procedures to use for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of CP perimeter.
 - d. Controls access to company defensive areas.
 - e. Establishes communications links between OP's and the reaction force.

- f. Develops procedures for initial response to ground attacks.
- .2 _____ Commander directs implementation of security plan for physical security measures.
- a. Requires prevention of vehicle entry to site.
 - b. Requires selection and manning of perimeter positions to detect and report OPFOR intrusion and observation of site perimeter.
 - c. Requires prevention of civilian access to site.
 - d. Requires the reaction force which has communications with the perimeter posts to implement initial response to ground attack.
 - e. Requires establishment of primary and alternate means of communications between dismount point and perimeter posts.
- .3 _____ Company personnel employ information security measures to protect vulnerable information.
- a. Ensure information is given out only on a need-to-know basis.
 - b. Ensure military personnel do not fraternize with civilians.
 - c. Ensure personnel are not briefed on upcoming operations until they have a need to know, or if preparations are going to take a long time, they are briefed and placed in isolation.
 - d. Ensure alert, deployment preparation, and loading procedures are conducted to minimize detection.
 - e. Ensure personnel are warned not to reveal the details of upcoming operations in their personal mail.
 - f. Ensure personnel use telephones and Exchange at staggered intervals.
 - g. Ensure uncontrolled maps do not contain friendly order of battle data.
 - h. Ensure combat personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal material (such as letters, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).
- .4 _____ Company personnel employ proper control on classified material.
- a. Ensure classified document holdings are limited to those necessary to accomplish the mission.
 - b. Ensure security manager is appointed.
 - c. Ensure approved containers are used to store classified materials and are secured to vehicle as per regulations.
 - d. Ensure reproduction of classified material is minimized.
 - e. Ensure all documents are marked.
 - f. Ensure classified waste is treated and protected as classified material and destroyed as soon as possible.
 - g. Ensure personnel are able to implement the destruction plan for communications security (COMSEC) material.
 - h. Ensure COMSEC custodian/holder accurately determines when a unit or element is captured.
 - i. Ensure material classified for training is destroyed when no longer needed.
- .5 _____ Company employs COMSEC measures.
- a. Ensures variance in transmission patterns does not reveal unit activity, movements, fire coordination, or attachments/detachments.

14 Oct 94

- b. Ensures alternate means to radio communications are established.
 - c. Ensures authentication procedures outlined in CEOI are used during all communications.
 - d. Ensures radio frequencies are changed as directed by CEOI.
 - e. Ensures names of persons, equipment, units, and locations are not used over nonsecure communications.
 - f. Ensures unnecessary transmissions are avoided.
 - g. Ensures call up procedures and transmission times are planned on a random (varied) schedule and kept as short as possible.
 - h. Ensures sensitive information which must be transmitted by electrical means is encrypted, using an authorized crypto-system.
 - i. Ensures COMSEC discrepancies are reported to and corrected by NCS.
 - j. Ensures only National Security Agency (NSA) approved codes are used.
- .6 ____ Company employs ECCM.
- a. Employs ECCM when known or suspected jamming is experienced.
 - b. Continues operations regardless of known or suspected jamming.
- .7 ____ Company reduces potential for effective jamming/direction finding when OPFOR has integrated electronic warfare and firepower.
- a. Ensures communications equipment is camouflaged and concealed from enemy line of sight (LOS).
 - b. Ensures equipment is properly tuned.
 - c. Ensures SOP procedures for communications during radio silence and emission control (EMCON) orders are followed.
 - d. Ensures alternate means (such as courier and landlines) and routes for communications are established.
 - e. Ensures radio silence is observed when directed.
 - f. Ensures complex communications (transmit on one frequency, receive on another) are used when authorized.
 - g. Ensures directional antennas are used where possible/practical.
 - h. Ensures lowest possible power setting is used to communicate with desired stations.
 - i. Ensures transmissions are kept as short as possible.
 - j. Ensures transmitting antennas are remoted as far away from the unit as possible and are frequently relocated.
 - k. Ensures decoy antennas are used.
 - l. Ensures encryption devices are used when available.
 - m. Ensures radio is used only when absolutely necessary.
- .8 ____ Communications operators recognize jamming interference.
- a. Disconnect the antenna.
 - b. Identify the type of noise (internal or external).
 - c. Tune the receiver above or below the operating frequency.

- d. Identify the-jamming signals.
 - e. Report interference received to the commander or the NCS.
 - f. Employ anti-jamming measures.
- .9 ____ Communications operators initiate antijamming actions immediately.
- a. Increase power.
 - b. Retune the receiver.
 - c. Repeat transmission slowly and distinctly.
 - d. Change location of radio/antenna.
 - e. Ensure effectiveness of jamming is not disclosed over jammed frequency.
- .10 ____ Company personnel report interference incidents.
- a. Report incidents to NCS by secure means.
 - b. Report incidents within 10 minutes of the incident.
- .11 ____ Company personnel prevent imitative communication deception (ICD).
- a. Ensure correct authentication procedures are followed.
 - b. Ensure authorized brevity lists, prosigns, prowords, and operations codes are used correctly.
 - c. Ensure proper call signs and frequencies are used.
 - d. Ensure net/circuit discipline is maintained by the NCS.
 - e. Ensure radio or listening silence is obeyed when imposed.
- .12 ____ Company communications operators reduce OPFOR EW potential.
- a. Ensure operators notify higher headquarters of known or suspected jamming by secure means as soon as possible.
 - b. Ensure full alert status is maintained in areas that are being jammed.
- .13 ____ Company employs countersurveillance measures.
- a. Ensures all vehicle bumper markings are masked or removed.
 - b. Ensures all reflective surfaces are covered with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick to prevent glare and with thermal absorbent paint to suppress infrared (IR) detection.
 - c. Ensures bright engineer tape is not used.
 - d. Ensures large concentrations of vehicles are avoided and natural foliage, trees, and shrubs remain uncut whenever possible.
 - e. Ensures trees are not stripped nor is too much foliage cut within vicinity of camouflaged positions.
 - f. Ensures correctly hung camouflage nets are used.
 - g. Ensures cut foliage from local areas is used.
 - h. Ensures the area is free of trash, litter, and other material (such as gas cans, tent liners, and tarps).
 - i. Ensures the area is free of personal items which contrast with the natural surroundings.

14 Oct 94

- j. Ensures freshly dug earth from fighting positions is camouflaged.
 - k. Ensures major items of equipment are at least 50 meters apart.
 - l. Ensures mess operations are conducted with minimum opportunity for detection.
 - m. Ensures footpaths are not created between unit elements including mess areas and heads.
 - n. Ensures movement to and from main areas is minimized because track control procedures can prevent unusual traffic patterns.
 - o. Ensures existing tracks/roads are used for movement of vehicles.
 - p. Ensures tracks left by vehicles moving into a defensive position are obliterated or continued beyond destination.
 - q. Ensures shadows characteristic of particular equipment are minimized by proper positioning and use of camouflage.
 - r. Ensures vehicles are parked in the shadows and moved when the shadows shift.
 - s. Ensures vehicles are parked to avoid facing sun where no shade is present if possible.
 - t. Ensures deployment action patterns are changed to preclude OPFOR from predicting future operations or determining locations of concealed units.
 - u. Ensures tents are dispersed and camouflaged with camouflage nets and natural terrain.
 - v. Ensures antennas are camouflaged using natural vegetation.
 - w. Ensures antenna height is kept at the lowest possible level without reducing or hampering communications.
 - x. Ensures generators are dispersed to the extent cables allow.
 - y. Ensures generators and cables are camouflaged.
 - z. Ensures generators are dug in or natural terrain features used to mask/attenuate noise.
 - aa. Ensures generators are shared whenever possible.
 - ab. Ensures generators are muffled and covered with IR (heat) shields when available.
 - ac. Ensures light discipline is enforced.
 - ad. Ensures volume and squelch are turned to lowest setting consistent with operational requirements or have operators use headsets if available.
 - ae. Ensures noise discipline is observed.
 - af. Ensures smoke is employed if directed by higher headquarters.
- .14 ____ Company personnel perform OPSEC activities during tactical operations.
- a. Maintain dispersion to reduce thermal signature.
 - b. Use the terrain to mask movement.
 - c. Establish local security at halts.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company performs operations security (OPSEC) measures continuously IAW the security plan.

10B.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10B.3.1 PERFORM ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. The company receives a mission that by implication or specific tasking requires the reconnaissance of a route.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander deploys elements for route reconnaissance.
 - a. Positions elements on flanks of the reconnaissance element on the route.
 - b. Positions elements forward of the reconnaissance element on the route.
- .2 ____ Company determines trafficability of the route.
 - a. Locates and evaluates all bridges on the route.
 - b. Locates and classifies fords and/or crossing sites near bridges.
 - c. Evaluates road surface of the route to include width.
 - d. Locates and classified all underpasses, tunnels, and culverts on the route.
 - e. Identifies and evaluates all restrictive curves and steep grades on the route.
 - f. Identifies and evaluates all other restrictive passages and obstacles.
 - g. Locates and evaluates bypasses for all restrictive passages.
 - h. Completes and confirms map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and adjacent terrain.
 - i. Maintains security throughout the operation.
- .3 ____ Company reconnoiters terrain adjacent to the route.
 - a. Reconnoiters adjacent terrain out to 2.5 km to 3 km from the route.
 - b. Gathers terrain trafficability information.
 - c. Determines cover and concealment available on adjacent terrain.
 - d. Determines intervisibility data.
- .4 ____ Company reconnoiters all built-up areas on each side of the route.
 - a. Moves elements to the flanks of the built-up area where vehicles can occupy covered and concealed overwatch positions.
 - b. Employs dismounted scouts to secure a point of entry into the built-up area, not using an obvious avenue of approach.
 - c. Moves vehicles into the built-up area through the secure point of entry.
 - d. Moves through backyards and alleys, avoiding main streets.
 - e. Detects and reports all OPFOR in the built-up area.
- .5 ____ Company reconnoiters all lateral routes.

14 Oct 94

- a. Reconnoiters lateral routes out to a minimum of 3 km.
 - b. Reconnoiters lateral routes for OPFOR.
- .6 ____ Company inspects and classifies all bridges on the route.
- a. Confirms the condition of the bridges.
 - b. Uses appropriate tables and formulas to determine bridge classification.
 - c. Prepares and posts bridge signs.
 - d. Posts appropriate restrictive signs at bridge approaches.
 - e. Records and reports classification data properly.
- .7 ____ Company locates fording or crossing sites near all bridges on the route.
- a. Determines the type of ford.
 - b. Determines seasonal limiting factors.
 - c. Determines approach conditions.
 - d. Determines condition of ford bottom.
 - e. Determines the width, depth, and speed of the water obstacle.
 - f. Determines egress conditions.
 - g. Records and reports classification data properly.
- .8 ____ Company inspects and classifies all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
- a. Determines width.
 - b. Determines overhead clearance.
 - c. Determines restrictions that limit the physical dimensions of vehicles using overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
 - d. Records and reports dimensions.
- .9 ____ Company reconnoiters all defiles.
- a. Locates all OPFOR within the defile.
 - b. Locates all obstacles within the defile.
- .10 ____ Company clears all defiles of OPFOR.
- a. Destroys all OPFOR within capability.
 - b. Locates a bypass if OPFOR is beyond capability.
- .11 ____ Company clears or bypasses the obstacle.
- a. Clears the route of mines, obstacles, and barriers within capability.
 - b. Locates a bypass if clearing is beyond capability.
- .12 ____ Company locates a bypass around contaminated area.
- a. Identifies each contaminated area.
 - b. Determines type of contamination within capability.
 - c. Determines size of each contaminated area.

- d. Locates a bypass safe from contamination.
- .13 ____ Company prepares a route classification overlay.
- a. Shows beginning and end coordinates of the route it has classified.
 - b. Shows the trace of the route.
 - c. Shows all restrictions to traffic flow (including bypass capability and classification data on all restrictive passages).
 - d. Shows all sharp curves and series of curves.
 - e. Shows level grade railroad crossings.
 - f. Shows length and width of constrictions.
 - g. Shows percentage of slope for steep grades.
 - h. Shows overall capability of the route to include width, trafficability, load classification, obstructions, and special conditions.
- .14 ____ Company detects all OPFOR along the route and all OPFOR within direct-fire range of the route.
- .15 ____ Company destroys OPFOR along the route.
- a. Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance elements, or:
 - b. Neutralizes all enemy forces within capability, or:
 - c. Fixes all enemy forces that cannot be destroyed or neutralized.
- .16 ____ Company performs actions on contact.
- .17 ____ Company report reconnaissance information in accordance with OPORD and commanders guidance.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company reconnoiters the route and terrain that dominates the route. The company must determine the trafficability of the route for use by follow-on forces in accordance with the company OPORD. The company must ensure that these forces can move unimpeded along the route.

TASK: 10B.3.2 PERFORM ZONE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. The company receives a mission that by implication or specific tasking requires the reconnaissance of a zone.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander deploys elements for zone reconnaissance.
- a. Deploys platoons to lead.
 - b. Deploys platoons abreast.
 - c. Ensures platoons employ appropriate movement techniques internally.
 - d. Ensures AT (TOW) section overwatches the movement of scouts or follow closely in depth.

- e. Ensures AT (TOW) section moves on covered and concealed routes when available.
- .2 ____ Company reconnoiters and determines trafficability of all routes within the zone.
- .3 ____ Company reconnoiters all open terrain within the zone.
 - a. Determines cross-country trafficability of all open terrain.
 - b. Gathers cover and concealment information.
 - c. Gathers intervisibility information.
 - d. Verifies or updates map information.
- .4 ____ Company inspects and classifies all bridges within the zone.
- .5 ____ Company locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges in the zone.
- .6 ____ Company inspects and classifies all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
- .7 ____ Company reconnoiters all defiles.
- .8 ____ Company clears routes of mines, obstacles, and barriers.
- .9 ____ Company locates a bypass around contaminated areas.
- .10 ____ Company finds all enemy forces within the zone.
 - a. Determines OPFOR locations.
 - b. Determines OPFOR strength.
 - c. Determines OPFOR composition.
 - d. Determines OPFOR activity.
 - e. Locates OPFOR supporting units and weapons.
- .11 ____ Company destroys or repels all OPFOR reconnaissance element.
 - a. Employs indirect fires to destroy OPFOR reconnaissance element.
 - b. Employs direct fires as a last resort.
- .12 ____ Company performs actions on contact.
- .13 ____ Company reports reconnaissance information to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company reconnoiters all terrain in the zone assigned. The company locates all enemy forces in the zone, locates all obstacles, clears or locates bypasses to all obstacles in the zone, and reports information.

CONDITION(S): The company is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the company will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company deploys in appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified on operation order.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation.
 - b. Uses technique of movement specified in operation order.
- .2 ____ Company conducts the reconnaissance.
 - a. Uses maximum reconnaissance forward.
 - b. Orients on the reconnaissance objective.
 - c. Reports rapidly and accurately.
 - d. Retains freedom to maneuver.
 - e. Develops the situation rapidly.
 - f. Gains and maintains enemy contact.
- .3 ____ Company collects and records terrain information.
 - a. Determines trafficability of all major routes.
 - b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area.
 - c. Locates and evaluates all bridges within the area.
 - d. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area.
 - e. Locates and evaluates all tunnels and underpasses.
 - f. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers in the area.
 - g. Locates a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
 - h. Locates landing or drop zones.
 - i. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates the area, if required.
 - j. Determines the existence and extent of NBC contamination within area, if required.
- .4 ____ Company identifies Threat forces within the area.
 - a. Determines Threat locations to a six-digit grid.
 - b. Determines Threat strength.
 - c. Determines Threat composition.
 - d. Determines Threat activity.
 - e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
 - f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
 - g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).
- .5 ____ Company reports information to battalion.

- a. Submits overlay of area (if required).
- b. Submits obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company must collect and report information on Threat forces (squad or larger), orient on the reconnaissance objective, retain freedom to maneuver, and gain and maintain contact with the Threat, if present.

TASK: 10B.3.4 ASSIST A LINKUP

CONDITION(S): The company is operating as part of the battalion and the battalion has been ordered to linkup with a stationary force. The company has been ordered to assist the battalion by acting as the coordinating unit for the battalion. Platoon-size elements are operating in the area. Friendly and enemy units have indirect fire capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander plans to assist link-up.
 - a. Plans for face to face meeting with stationary unit commander or designated representative, if possible.
 - 1) Establishes time and place for meeting.
 - 2) Establishes information to be exchanged during meeting.
 - 3) Briefs battalion commander on situation and receives approval for meeting and information exchange.
 - b. If face to face meeting not possible makes contact with stationary force via radio.
 - c. Understands command relationship between the forces performing the linkup.
- .2 ____ Company commander meets/coordinates with stationary unit commander or representative.
 - a. Exchanges information.
 - 1) Enemy and friendly situations.
 - 2) Schemes of maneuver.
 - 3) Control measures.
 - 4) Locations and types of obstacles.
 - 5) Fire support plan.
 - 6) Air defense control measures.
 - 7) Recognition signals.
 - 8) CEOI information.
 - b. Company commander establishes a linkup point with the stationary force commander or designated representative.

- 1) The company recons the route from it's parent battalion location to designated linkup point.
 - 2) Company commander ensures stationary force has occupied the linkup point before the time stated in the order.
 - 3) Company commander ensures that correct recognition signals are used.
- .3 ____ The company returns to it's parent battalion and briefs the battalion commander/staff on the linkup.
- a. Route to the linkup point.
 - b. Physical characteristics of the linkup point.
 - c. Relays information exchanged with stationary force.
- .4 ____ The company leads the battalion to the linkup point.
- .5 ____ The company facilitates the linkup.
- a. The battalion halts a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (linkup rally point), and establishes local security.
 - b. The battalion commander establishes communications with the stationary unit, if not under radio-listening silence.
 - c. The battalion commander issues final instructions and contingency plans to the company commander.
- .6 ____ The company performs the initial linkup.
- a. The company departs the battalion position.
 - b. The company maintains communications with the battalion.
 - c. The company commander verifies the linkup point and positions the security element in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point.
 - d. The company commander signals the stationary unit.
 - e. The company commander does not block the security element's fires while approaching the linkup point.
 - f. The company commander links up with the members from the stationary unit and exchanges oral authentication by the time stated in the order.
 - g. The company commander conducts final coordination with the stationary unit.
- .7 ____ The battalion links up.
- a. The company commander guides the stationary unit contact team to the battalion.
 - b. The stationary unit contact team then guides the moving unit to the linkup point to complete the linkup.
 - c. The stationary unit contact team alerts its main body before guiding the moving unit to the linkup point.
 - d. The stationary unit's guides direct the moving unit into its assigned section of the defensive perimeter.
 - e. The moving unit commander coordinates with the stationary unit commander and assigns tasks and sectors to his companies based on the coordination.
- .8 ____ The linking units continue the mission under the guidance of the commander designated by higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The units link up at the time and place specified in the order and receives no casualties from friendly fire. The main body is not surprised by the enemy.

TASK: 10B.3.5 PERFORM SCREEN OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. The company receives a mission that by implication or specific tasking requires the performance of a screen.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander deploys element for screen.
 - a. Ensures company elements use appropriate techniques (such as zone reconnaissance, movement to contact, or tactical road march) to deploy to the screen line.
 - b. Deploys platoons abreast and AT (TOW) section in depth.
- .2 ____ Company maintains continuous surveillance.
 - a. Maintains surveillance of all high-speed, battalion-size avenues of approach into the company sector.
 - b. Maintains surveillance under all visibility conditions.
 - c. Maintains surveillance of key terrain.
 - d. Visually scans TRPs.
 - e. Employs vehicle optics, binoculars, and night-vision devices to maintain observation as necessary.
 - f. Conducts irregularly scheduled, mounted, and/or dismounted patrols between OPs.
 - g. Detects all OPFOR elements in the company sector.
- .3 ____ Company destroys or repels OPFOR reconnaissance elements.
 - a. Destroys or repels divisional reconnaissance element, or:
 - b. Destroys or repels regimental reconnaissance elements, or:
 - c. Destroys or repels combat reconnaissance patrols, or:
 - d. Destroys OPFOR reconnaissance elements using indirect fires or, as a last resort, direct fires.
- .4 ____ Company locates OPFOR forward security element.
 - a. Locates fire support element (FSE) of each suspected advance guard battalion.
 - b. Determines direction of movement.
- .5 ____ Company maintains contact during movement to subsequent screen line(s).
 - a. Maintains contact with FSE of each advance guard battalion.
 - b. Reports activity of each advance guard battalion.

- c. Maintains constant observation of OPFOR.
- d. Continuously reports OPFOR activity.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company plans and establishes a screen line which provides early warning for the force being screened, provides continuous surveillance, provides early warning of enemy approach, and destroys or repels enemy combat reconnaissance patrols.

TASK: 10B.3.6 PERFORM MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. The company receives a mission that requires the performance of a movement to contact.

STANDARDS: EVAL: T; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company deploys elements for movement to contact.
 - a. Moves within the designated boundaries.
 - b. Employs the appropriate movement techniques.
 - c. Deploys mounted scouts to lead through terrain that permits vehicle movement but is untrafficable for or canalizes tanks.
 - d. Positions tanks to rapidly attack or support by fire.
- .2 ____ Company reconnoiters routes.
 - a. Reconnoiters all high-speed routes within zone.
 - b. Determines the trafficability of the routes within the zone that support heavy armor movement at 20 kph to 30 kph.
- .3 ____ Company inspects all bridges, culverts, overpasses, and underpasses along high-speed routes.
 - a. Determines trafficability.
 - b. Locates bypasses and fords if bridges, culverts, overpasses, and underpasses cannot support the movement of following forces.
- .4 ____ Company clears obstacles from all high-speed routes.
 - a. Clears the route within capability.
 - b. Locates a bypass if clearing is beyond capability.
 - c. Locates bypasses around contaminated areas.
- .5 ____ Company finds all OPFOR within zone and determines OPFOR size, composition, and activity.
- .6 ____ Company performs actions on contact.
- .7 ____ Company destroys OPFOR in zone.
 - a. Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance elements, or:
 - b. Neutralizes all enemy forces within capability, or:

- c. Fixes all enemy forces that cannot be destroyed or neutralized.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company makes contact with enemy forces in its sector. The smallest element makes contact and takes actions on contact.

TASK: 10B.3.7 PERFORM ACTIONS ON CONTACT

CONDITION(S): While moving, the company is engaged by OPFOR tank, infantry fighting vehicle (IFV)/armored personnel carrier (APC), antitank gun, antitank guided missile (ATGM), rocket-propelled grenade (RPG), or artillery direct fire.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company in contact deploys and reports.
 - a. Deploys platoon in contact to initiate platoon actions on contact.
 - b. Deploys platoon not in contact to eavesdrop on report of contact and continue mission.
 - c. Deploys AT (TOW) section in overwatch, if there is one, to initiate platoon actions on contact.
 - d. Deploys AT (TOW) elements not in overwatch to eavesdrop on report of contact and immediately establish a firing position.
 - e. Ensures company XO reports contact over the battalion intelligence net.
 - f. Ensures company gunnery sergeant monitors report of contact and moves company support elements to covered and concealed positions as necessary.
 - g. Ensures company gunnery sergeant makes assessment of immediate combat service support (CSS) requirements.
- .2 ____ Company commander develops the situation.
 - a. Deploys platoon in contact to develop situation around flanks of OPFOR within platoon sector.
 - b. Deploys platoon not in contact to develop situation in zone (company commander limits the platoon's advance) and, on order, to suppress the OPFOR in contact with the adjacent platoon from its flank.
 - c. Moves to area of platoon in contact or, if more than one is in contact, to area requiring his immediate presence.
 - d. Orders AT (TOW) section to move to support company development of the situation.
 - e. Ensures mortars are prepared to fire within 2 minutes if moving or 30 seconds if set following request for fires.
 - f. Ensures company XO makes an assessment of OPFOR activity within company sector.
 - g. Eavesdrops on all platoon reports.
 - h. Ensures company gunnery sergeant provides CSS as required.
- .3 ____ Commander determines course of action.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Receives recommended courses of action from platoon(s) in contact.
 - b. Makes an estimate considering the higher commander's intent, tasks of primary mission, and factors of METT-TSL.
 - c. Chooses to conduct hasty attack, bypass, or assume hasty defense.
- .4 ____ Commander recommends a course of action.
- a. Reports a company course of action to battalion commander (course of action is within company capability).
 - b. Recommends course of action requiring battalion support (course of action is beyond company capability).
- .5 ____ Company reacts to indirect fire.
- a. Ensures all personnel adopt appropriate MOPP level (based on chemical threat).
 - b. Ensures platoon personnel prepare individual and vehicle positions.
 - c. Ensures vehicles move out of the impact area after impact of the first round.
 - d. Ensures personnel check for presence of chemical agents.
 - e. Initiates unmasking procedures if agents are not present and MOPP 3 or MOPP 4 is not imposed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Upon making contact with the enemy forces, the company deploys, reports, develops the situation, and recommends action or takes action.

TASK: 10B.3.8 PERFORM HASTY ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. Friendly forces are in contact with OPFOR. The company has been ordered or has received permission to conduct a hasty attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Scouts reconnoiter the OPFOR area.
- a. Determine the general size of the enemy force.
 - b. Determine the composition of the enemy force.
 - c. Determine where most of the enemy's weapon systems are positioned.
 - d. Determine where most of the enemy's weapon systems are oriented.
- .2 ____ Scouts find the flanks of OPFOR units.
- a. Determine the location of enemy flanks.
 - b. Determines where the obstacles are emplaced around the enemy's defensive position.
- .3 ____ Scouts determine if the enemy is being supported.

- a. Determine type of supported units.
 - b. Determine location of supported units.
- .4 ____ Scouts find the best routes into the flanks of OPFOR positions.
- a. Locate high-speed routes.
 - b. Locate covered and concealed approaches.
- .5 ____ Company commander establishes an assault element.
- a. Ensures assault element closes with and destroys the enemy force.
 - b. Ensures assault element moves as rapidly as possible to the objective along the identified approach(es).
 - c. Ensures assault element engages suspected and identified OPFOR targets on the move or from a short halt.
 - d. Ensures assault element moves with all weapons oriented on the objective.
 - e. Ensures assault element bypasses or negotiates obstacles encountered enroute.
 - f. Ensures the assault, once initiated, does not halt until the objective is reached.
- .6 ____ Company commander establishes a base of fire element.
- a. Ensures base of fire element destroys or suppresses all enemy antitank weapons observed with long-range direct and indirect fires.
 - b. Ensures base of fire element destroys or suppresses all enemy antitank weapons before the maneuver force deploys into its assault.
- .7 ____ Company isolates the OPFOR.
- a. Isolates the OPFOR on the objective.
 - b. Isolates the enemy force from mutually supporting units with indirect fires, usually with smoke and high explosive (BE) ammunition.
- .8 ____ Company suppresses the OPFOR while the maneuver unit moves into position.
- a. Suppresses with long-range direct and indirect fires.
 - b. Lifts or shifts fires as the maneuver unit deploys.
- .9 ____ Company attacks by fire or fire and movement.
- a. Attacks by fire.
 - b. Attacks by fire and movement.
 - c. Sweeps the area with dismounted scouts to capture prisoners and other items of tactical value.
- .10 ____ Company performs actions after the attack.
- a. Immediately establishes hasty defensive positions.
 - b. Immediately establishes OPs on high-speed avenues of approach into the company position.
 - c. Ensures elements consolidate and reorganize.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company develops the situation and attacks and defeats the enemy within its capability.

TASK: 10B.3.9 DIRECT FIRE PLAN

CONDITION(S): The company receives an order from the battalion and must plan to conduct a defensive operation. The mission is received in the field, and all planning must be conducted under field conditions. The company may be in an AA or conducting a tactical mission when planning begins.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commanders determine EAs.
 - a. Determine where fires can be massed.
 - b. Assist commander in establishing ZAs and TRPs.
 - c. Assist commander in establishing sectors and limits of fire.
 - d. Establish boundaries.
 - e. Establish target priorities for each weapon system.
- .2 ____ Commanders ensure obstacles are covered by fire.
 - a. Ensure TRPs are established to cover obstacles within sectors of responsibility.
 - b. Ensure direct fire plans are established to cover obstacles during reduced visibility.
- .3 ____ Company commander/XO coordinates direct fires with adjacent units.
- .4 ____ Company commander approves direct fire plan.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company ensures the direct fire plan maximizes its weapon systems capability.

TASK: 10B.3.10 DELAY IN COMPANY SECTOR

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. Friendly forces are not in contact with OPFOR; however, an enemy attack is expected. The company has received the mission to delay in sector.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company occupies its assigned sector.
 - a. Uses appropriate techniques (such as zone reconnaissance, movement to contact, and tactical road march).
 - b. Establishes initial screen line.
- .2 ____ Company maintains continuous surveillance.
 - a. Maintains surveillance of high-speed routes or avenues of approach into the company sector 2 km to 3 km forward of initial defensive positions.
 - b. Maintains surveillance under all visibility conditions.
 - c. Maintains surveillance of key terrain.
 - d. Visually scans TRPs.
 - e. Employs vehicle optics, binoculars, and night-vision devices as necessary to maintain surveillance.
 - f. Conducts irregularly scheduled mounted and/or dismounted patrols between OPs.
 - g. Detects all OPFOR elements in the company sector.
- .3 ____ The company destroys or repels OPFOR reconnaissance elements or patrols forward of the company's initial defensive positions.
 - a. Employs direct or indirect fires to destroy or repel OPFOR.
 - b. Employs AT (TOW) section to destroy in depth any OPFOR patrols that penetrate.
- .4 ____ Company prepares to conduct the delay.
 - a. Prepares and marks routes and subsequent positions.
 - b. Conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals.
 - c. Conducts a series of fighting positions to fall back to.
 - d. Prestocks supplies, ammunition, and fuel in subsequent fighting positions.
 - e. Establishes a series of obstacles at critical choke points and EAs.
 - f. Evacuates unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment.
 - g. Destroys unneeded supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated.
- .5 ____ Company establishes EAs.
 - a. Establishes EAs where the enemy can be canalized.
 - b. Establishes EAs where the enemy is exposed to concentrated direct fire.
 - c. Establishes EAs on most likely route or avenue of approach in sector.
 - d. Establishes EAs to focus company combat power.
- .6 ____ Company employs obstacles.
 - a. Employs obstacles within the EA.
 - b. Ensures obstacles slow or stop the enemy's rate of advance.
 - c. Ensures obstacles force OPFOR units to mass.

- d. Ensures all obstacles are covered by direct fire or observation and are protected from breaching attempts.
 - e. Ensures lanes through obstacles are sealed prior to enemy arrival.
- .7 ____ Platoons establish platoon BPs.
- a. Position BPs along the base and flanks of each EA.
 - b. Positions BPs to concentrate direct fires within the EA.
- .8 ____ Company conducts the delay.
- a. Ensures platoons occupy initial delay positions in accordance with company OPORD.
 - b. Complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in the battalion order.
- .9 ____ Company suppresses enemy units with indirect fires.
- a. Suppresses enemy units beginning 3 km to 4 km forward of initial defensive positions.
 - b. Suppresses enemy units to slow down their rate of advance and disrupt tactical formations.
- .10 ____ Company engages OPFOR tactical formations.
- .11 ____ Company masses available firepower within the EA.
- .12 ____ Company counterattacks by fire.
- a. Maneuvers company elements on suitable terrain and attacks OPFOR elements by fire.
 - b. Ensures counterattacking elements do not expose themselves to fires from following OPFOR echelons, or:
- .13 ____ Company performs a counterattack by fire and movement.
- a. Ensures the support by fire element engages from its BP.
 - b. Ensures the assault force destroys, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all OPFOR on the objective BP.
 - c. Ensures the assault element rapidly consolidates and prepares to defend against following OPFOR echelons.
- .14 ____ Platoons move to subsequent BPs.
- a. Disengage from the enemy (engaged platoons).
 - b. Move to subsequent delay positions (disengaged platoons).
 - c. Ensure company provides support by fire for disengaging platoons.
 - d. Continue the delaying action until the unit reaches its final BP or the mission is altered by battalion headquarters.
 - e. Ensure the company is not decisively engaged or bypassed.
 - f. Ensure wounded Marines are not left behind.
 - g. Move Marines who cannot fight by the most practical means.
 - h. Plan evacuation in conjunction with emergency resupply.
 - i. Recover all disabled equipment or destroy according to unit SOP.
 - j. Cover maneuver elements by overwatching fires at all times.

- k. Ensure company maintains contact with the enemy.
- .15 ____ The company conducts follow-on operations.
- a. Moves to new positions and continues the mission.
 - b. Returns to friendly units, conducts a passage of lines, and moves into an AA.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company occupies sector and delays enemy for the time specified in the battalion orders. The company maintains its freedom to maneuver and causes the enemy to repeatedly deploy into attack formation.

TASK: 10B.3.11 DEFEND IN COMPANY SECTOR

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. Friendly forces are not in contact with OPFOR; however, an enemy attack is expected. The company has received the mission to defend in sector. Company conducts defense in accordance with battalion commander's intent and coordinates with adjacent units.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company occupies sector.
 - a. Uses appropriate techniques of movement (such as zone reconnaissance, movement to contact, and tactical road march).
 - b. Establishes initial screen line.
- .2 ____ Company maintains continuous surveillance.
 - a. Maintains surveillance of high-speed routes or avenues of approach into the company sector 2 km to 3 km forward of initial defensive positions.
 - b. Maintains surveillance under all visibility conditions.
 - c. Maintains surveillance of key terrain.
 - d. Visually scans TRPs.
 - e. Employs vehicle optics, binoculars, and night-vision devices as necessary to maintain surveillance.
 - f. Conducts irregularly scheduled mounted and/or dismounted patrols between OPs.
 - g. Detects all OPFOR elements in the company sector.
- .3 ____ The company destroys or repels OPFOR reconnaissance elements or patrols forward of the company's initial defensive positions.
 - a. Employs direct or indirect fires to destroy or repel OPFOR.
 - b. Employs AT (TOW) section to destroy in depth any OPFOR patrols that penetrate.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes platoon BPs.
 - a. Positions BPs along the base and flanks of each EA.
 - b. Position BPs to concentrate direct fires within the EA.

- .5 ____ Company establishes EAs.
 - a. Establishes EAs where the enemy can be canalized.
 - b. Establishes EAs where the enemy is exposed to concentrated direct fire.
 - c. Establishes EAs on most likely route or avenue of approach in sector.
 - d. Establishes EAs to focus company combat power.
- .6 ____ Company employs obstacles.
 - a. Employs obstacles within the EA.
 - b. Ensures obstacles slow or stop the enemy's rate of advance.
 - c. Ensures obstacles force OPFOR units to mass.
 - d. Ensures all obstacles are covered by direct fire or observation and are protected from breaching attempts.
- .7 ____ Company suppresses enemy units with indirect fire.
 - a. Suppresses enemy units starting 3 km to 4 km forward of initial defensive positions.
 - b. Suppresses enemy units to slow rate of advance and disrupt tactical formations.
- .8 ____ Company engages the enemy from more than one direction.
 - a. Engages flanks before the enemy can move to an attack position.
 - b. Engages so enemy exposes its flanks.
- .9 ____ Company commander masses available firepower within the EA.
 - a. Ensures platoons engage with direct fires.
 - b. Integrates indirect fires into EA at direction of commander and FO.
- .10 ____ Company counterattacks by fire.
 - a. Maneuvers company elements on suitable terrain and attacks OPFOR elements by fire.
 - b. Ensures counterattacking elements do not expose themselves to fires from following OPFOR echelons, or:
- .11 ____ Company performs a counterattack by fire and movement.
 - a. Ensures the support by fire element engages from its BP.
 - b. Ensures the assault force destroys, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all OPFOR on the objective BP.
 - c. Ensures the assault element rapidly consolidates and prepares to defend against following OPFOR echelons.
- .12 ____ Company moves to subsequent BPs.
 - a. Move Marines who cannot fight by the most practical means.
 - b. Plan evacuation in conjunction with emergency resupply.
 - c. Recover all disabled equipment or destroy according to unit SOP.
 - d. Cover maneuver elements by overwatching fires at all times.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company defends sector by the time prescribed in the OPORD and defeats enemy forces in sector forward of its rear boundary.

TASK: 10B.3.12 DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. Friendly forces are not in contact with OPFOR; however, an enemy attack is expected. The company has received the mission to defend a BP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commanders perform tactical planning.
 - a. Performs a physical reconnaissance of each BP in less than 30 minutes.
 - b. Select BPs based on thorough analysis of likely enemy avenues of approach.
 - c. Select positions so the company can deliver effective fires.
 - d. Select positions that provide cover and concealment.
 - e. Select positions so the BP is not an obvious target for enemy direct- or indirect-fire suppression.
 - f. Selects positions so the BP has adequately concealed routes into and out of the position.
 - g. Select BPs so they are large enough for the force assigned.
- .2 ____ Commanders occupy a BP.
 - a. Ensure elements approach using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Ensure elements halt to the rear of the BP in hide positions.
 - c. Ensure scouts reconnoiter BP if not previously secured by quartering party.
 - d. Ensure guides lead companies to positions if previously secured by a quartering party.
 - e. Move CP, trains, and mortars to covered and concealed positions to rear of initial platoon BPs.
- .3 ____ Company occupies a BP.
 - a. Establish hot loops or radio communications to OPs within the platoon.
 - b. Coordinate with adjacent elements for overlapping direct or indirect fires, observation, and security plans.
 - c. Coordinate with adjacent elements for obstacle emplacement.
 - d. Coordinate with adjacent elements for location of flank elements, routes out of BP, and scheme of maneuver of flank movements.
 - e. Reconnoiter subsequent BPs, including routes to and between them.
 - f. Complete rehearsals, preparations, and markings within two hours.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- g. Emplace local obstacles and coordinates them with adjacent elements.
 - h. Begin emplacement of reinforcing obstacles immediately upon attachment of assets.
 - i. Execute maintenance, resupply, and rest plans as situation permits.
- .4 ____ Company establishes OPs.
- a. Orients OPs forward and to the flanks of each company BP.
 - b. Ensures all high-speed, battalion-size avenues of approach are covered.
- .5 ____ Company prepares BPs.
- a. Directs mortars to register and adjust final protective fires, if permitted.
 - b. Establishes chemical agent alarm systems and integrates between platoons within 90 minutes.
 - c. Prepares covered and concealed routes between primary and subsequent BPs.
 - d. Prepares company fire plan within two hours of arrival and forwards it to battalion.
 - e. Employs supporting engineers, if any, to construct obstacles, vehicular, and individual fighting positions.
 - f. Emplaces obstacles and hasty protective minefields as ordered in accordance with appropriate missions of platoons.
 - g. Covers all mines and obstacles with direct and/or indirect and supporting fires.
 - h. Establishes wire communications with battalion CP, if possible.
 - i. Rehearses disengagement and movement between BPs, if permitted, to ensure all personnel know the routes.
 - j. Prepares subsequent BPs as time permits.
 - k. Continues to improve BPs and report adjustments.
- .6 ____ Company and platoons coordinate with adjacent companies and platoons.
- a. Overlap direct or indirect fires.
 - b. Overlap observation and security plans.
 - c. Emplace obstacles.
 - d. Identify location of flank elements.
 - e. Identify routes out of BPs.
 - f. Know scheme of maneuver of flank elements.
- .7 ____ Company engages the enemy,
- a. Ensures OPs detect and report attacking OPFOR elements.
 - b. Ensures company elements hold fires until the OPFOR reaches specific EA TRP in accordance with the battalion OPORD.
 - c. Engages the entire attacking force simultaneously with sufficient weapons to ensure destruction.
 - d. Destroys the entire attacking force,
 - e. Ensures subordinate firing elements move to alternate fighting positions at the conclusion of the engagement.

- f. Upon detection, engages the attacking force with indirect supporting fires.
 - g. Initiates direct-fire engagements at maximum effective range if the company has been detected.
 - h. Starts direct fires just before impact of supporting fires.
 - i. Moves suppressed platoons and sections to subsequent platoon BPs within the company BP as necessary to gain flanking shots on the attacking vehicles.
 - j. Initiates FPF from supporting and organic indirect fire units.
 - k. Initiates FPF with machine guns and small arms.
 - l. Ensures all weapons engage attacking elements at the maximum rate of fire.
- .8 ____ Company designates alternate platoon BPs to cover other routes of enemy approach adjacent to the company BP.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company completes occupation and preparation of the BP as specified in the OPOD to destroy, block, and delay the enemy forward of the BP.

TASK: 10B.3.13 PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. The company is required to conduct a tactical road march in the execution of its mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander establishes REDCON to ensure company is prepared to move.
- .2 ____ Commander directs route reconnaissance.
 - a. Determines suitability of the route.
 - b. Determines travel time for route.
- .3 ____ Commanders plan the road march.
 - a. Analyze the situation to determine if any of the movement factors specified in the SOP must be altered to meet mission requirements.
 - b. Conduct a map reconnaissance to determine the best route.
 - c. Organize and dispatch reconnaissance and quartering parties.
 - d. Prepare detailed movement plan based on mission requirements and the reconnaissance information.
- .4 ____ Company XO organizes a quartering party.
 - a. Organizes the quartering party with a platoon commander or company gunnery sergeant as the commander.
 - b. Organizes the quartering party with guides from each platoon and any other necessary personnel.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Provides movement order to the quartering party before departure.
 - d. Instructs quartering party to select and mark a route from release point to new location.
 - e. Directs quartering party to reconnoiter the new location for OPFOR elements, chemical or radiological contamination, and obstacles.
 - f. Directs improvement of area as time permits.
 - g. Directs meeting for company at the RP.
 - h. Directs positioning elements by the most direct route(s).
- .5 ____ Commander issues movement order containing information from unit SOP.
- .6 ____ Company crosses SP/line of departure (LD).
- a. Departs the AA at the appropriate time so it can cross the SP at the time specified in the order.
 - b. Crosses the SP at the speed (plus or minus 5 kmph), interval (plus or minus 25 meters), and order of march specified in the OPORD.
 - c. Ensures trail element clears the SP at the time specified in the OPORD.
- .7 ____ Company performs actions at halts.
- a. Clears the route for continuing traffic by assuming a coil or herringbone formation.
 - b. Establishes all-around security.
 - c. Accomplishes the actions planned for in the OPORD/movement order.
 - d. Performs maintenance as time permits if actions are not planned.
 - e. Places OPs on key terrain surrounding the company position.
 - f. Directs organic mortars and attached air defense weapons to firing positions.
- .8 ____ Company conducts unscheduled halt(s).
- a. Immediately seeks cause of the halt.
 - b. Clears route by assuming a coil or herringbone formation.
 - c. Establishes all-around security.
 - d. Determines a course of action.
 - e. Reports to higher headquarters if appropriate.
 - f. Continues the movement.
- .9 ____ Company performs actions on contact.
- .10 ____ Company maintains security during movement.
- a. Ensures scout elements reconnoiter forward and/or to the flanks of the company.
 - b. Ensures lead and downwind elements conduct continuous chemical monitoring.
 - c. Maintains air guards.
 - d. Maintains local security through crew sectors of observation and weapons orientation.
 - e. Maintains contact with battalion lead, flank, and rear security elements.

.11 ____ Company operates a trail party.

- a. Organizes company trains as the trail party.
- b. Trail party handles emergency repair and recovery of vehicles.
- c. Trail party handles medical aid and evacuation.
- d. Trail party handles emergency refueling.
- e. Trail party moves forward of the rear platoon of the company.
- f. Provides battalion with the location of vehicles the company is unable to repair.

.12 ____ Company clears the RP.

- a. Company elements arrive and meet guides at the designated RP.
- b. Completes movement in accordance with times designated in the order.
- c. Company commander forwards crossing report to higher headquarters.

.13 ____ Company continues its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The tactical rode march used must provide for the security and speed of the company based on the tactical situation and the commander's guidance. The execution of each tactical movement must be completed in accordance with unit SOP and factors of METT-TSL.

TASK: 10B.3.14 CONDUCT TACTICAL MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. The company is required to conduct tactical movements in the execution of its mission. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Company forms a company coil from a column.

- a. Lead platoon moves into position using the clock method, 8 o'clock to 12 o'clock, with 12 o'clock being the direction of travel.
- b. Second platoon moves into position from 12 o'clock to 4 o'clock.
- c. Third platoon moves into position from 4 o'clock to 8 o'clock.
- d. Commander, trains, mortars, and CP personnel move into position at the center of the coil.
- e. Designates contact points between platoons.
- f. All platoons orient their weapons outward and ensure mutual support and overlapping fields of fire.

.2 ____ Company forms a herringbone formation from a column formation.

- a. Ensures all vehicles stop, maintaining their intervals and basic gun tube orientations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Ensures all primary weapons are oriented to ensure 360-degree coverage of company fields of fire and observation.
 - c. Platoons provide dismounted local security.
 - d. Ensures all vehicles move completely off the road if the terrain permits to permit the passage of traffic.
 - e. Ensures all vehicles move as close to the sides of the road as possible if the terrain does not permit moving completely off the road to provide a gap at the middle of the road to allow passage of traffic.
 - f. Upon receipt of order to resume movement, ensures all vehicles are back on the road and are turned in the direction of travel, maintaining basic gun tube orientations.
 - g. Moves out in column formation, maintaining security and interval.
- .3 ____ Company performs cross-country movement.
- a. Designates lead and following elements.
 - b. Designates route(s)/zone(s).
 - c. Designates boundaries.
 - d. Designates phase lines (PLs).
 - e. Prescribes movement techniques to be employed.
 - f. Prescribes internal configurations to be used.
 - g. Moves on the designated route(s)/zone(s).
 - h. Maintains mutual support.
 - i. Displaces support weapons to support the movement.
 - j. Displaces the company CP and trains by bounds to support the movement.
- .4 ____ Company moves by traveling technique.
- a. Chooses this technique when enemy contact is not likely.
 - b. Moves continuously as a unit.
 - c. Maintains lateral dispersion in accordance with factors of METT-TSL.
 - d. Trailing elements, CP, and trains may road march.
 - e. Moves at the maximum safe speed on covered and concealed routes.
- .5 ____ Company moves by traveling overwatch technique.
- a. Chooses this technique when enemy contact is possible.
 - b. Lead elements move continuously using covered and concealed routes.
 - c. Overwatch platoons move at variable speeds and conduct short halts to overwatch movement of lead elements.
 - d. Trailing platoons use the traveling technique when moving in column formation.
 - e. Trailing element's lead vehicle maintains visual contact with the overwatch element.
 - f. Moves at the maximum safe speed on covered and concealed routes.
- .6 ____ Company moves by bounding overwatch technique.

14 Oct 94

- a. Chooses this technique when enemy contact is likely.
 - b. Overwatch elements cover the progress of the lead elements from covered and concealed positions.
 - c. Lead elements bound to next vantage point within half the range of the overwatch elements weapon systems.
 - d. Continues bounding until objective or limit of advance (LOA) is reached.
- .7 ____ Company moves through a town/village.
- a. Identifies a bypass if the factors of METT-TSL allow.
 - b. Positions overwatch elements and security around the town/village.
 - c. Determines if town/village is occupied.
 - d. Performs a hasty defense, hasty attack, or bypass if the town/village is occupied and if the factors of METT-TSL allow.
 - e. Scouts enter town/village, clear a route of advance, secure the route, and permit the remainder of the company to move through.
- .8 ____ Company performs a high-speed move.
- a. Prepares and issues a warning order.
 - b. Performs tactical planning for the move.
 - c. Determines requirements for the move.
 - d. Selects a route for the move.
 - e. Analyzes organic and nonorganic movement capabilities.
 - f. Establishes movement priorities.
 - g. Adheres to the one-third/two-thirds planning time rule.
 - h. Dispatches reconnaissance, traffic control, pre-positioned supply, and quartering party as necessary.
 - i. Briefs the orders group on the mission in the form of a FRAGO.
 - j. Moves from the marshaling area or AA to the SP.
 - k. Crosses the SP at the specified time, in the specified formation, and at the speed designated in the FRAGO.
 - l. Maintains march discipline by adhering to the route, speed, and vehicle interval specified in the order.
 - m. Maintains all-around security.
 - n. Conducts passage of lines as necessary.
 - o. Moves through and reports critical points in accordance with the FRAGO.
 - p. Performs actions at halts as necessary.
 - q. Performs actions on contact as necessary.
 - r. Commander performs a commander's reconnaissance of the area to verify the plan.
 - s. Links up with guides at RP.

- t. Moves along multiple routes and performs cross-country movement from the RP to facilitate rapid dispersion.
- .9 ____ Company performs actions at a defile.
- a. Halts and disperses according to SOP.
 - b. The platoons take up overwatch positions.
 - c. The lead platoon conducts a hasty visual reconnaissance of the defile to determine the enemy's disposition,
 - d. Reports the defile to higher headquarters.
 - e. Calls for indirect fire if appropriate and available to cover company movement through the defile.
 - f. The second platoon moves around the defile and secures the defile and the far side.
 - g. The rest of the company moves through the defile covered by the platoon on the far side and continues mission.
- .10 ____ Company moves in vee formation when enemy contact is not likely.
- a. Maintains mutual support between elements.
 - b. Moves at the maximum safe speed (terrain and visibility dependent) on covered and concealed routes.
 - c. One platoon moves on the front left of company vee formation and orients weapons toward left front.
 - d. Maintains movement on axis of advance/zone indicated by company commander.
 - e. The other platoon moves on the front right of vee formation and orients weapons toward right front.
 - f. Maintains movement on axis of advance/zone indicated by company commander.
 - g. Platoons maintain contact with each other and stay generally abreast.
 - h. Commander and FO move between scouts and position to command and control platoon movement.
 - i. Mortar section moves approximately 1 km to 2 km behind platoons in center zone of company vee formation.
 - j. AT (TOW) section consolidate and move in center zone generally behind mortars.
 - k. AT (TOW) section retain flexibility to move or react to any situation in company zone.
 - l. Company CP and trains move about 2 km behind platoons.
- .11 ____ Company moves in vee formation when enemy contact is possible.
- a. Platoons move using traveling overwatch within the platoon while platoon headquarters section provides temporary overwatch.
 - b. Commander and FO move between platoons and position to command and control scout movement.
 - c. Mortar section moves approximately 1 km to 2 km behind scout platoons in center zone of company vee formation.
 - d. AT (TOW) section consolidates and moves in center zone generally behind the mortars.
 - e. AT (TOW) section may or may not take up temporary overwatch positions, depending on the speed of company movement and terrain/visibility.

14 Oct 94

- f. The CP and trains move about 2 km behind AT (TOW) section on a covered and concealed route.

.12 _____ Company moves in vee formation when enemy contact is likely.

- a. Lead platoons move using bounding overwatch within platoons.
- b. Trailing elements of company move using traveling overwatch, or:
- c. Company moves by bounding one or both platoons using the move/set technique.
- d. Company commander designates bounding and overwatch elements and overwatch positions.
- e. Overwatch element may be one platoon and AT (TOW) section (one platoon bounding) or the AT (TOW) section only (both platoons bounding at the same time).
- f. Overwatch element (one or more platoons) occupies the overwatch position, searches adjacent terrain, and reports "SET" when it is prepared to overwatch.
- g. Mortar section positions to range beyond the bounding platoon's next overwatch position.
- h. Company CP/trains occupy a stationary covered and concealed position about 2 km behind the overwatch element.
- i. Bounding element (one or both platoons) moves on order on a covered and concealed route to the next overwatch position.
- j. Bounding platoon(s) occupy the subsequent overwatch position, verify that it is secure, search adjacent terrain, and report "SET" when prepared to overwatch.
- k. On order, trail overwatching platoons (or just the one platoon overwatching) back off the position and move on a covered and concealed route.
- l. Trailing company elements move in traveling technique on a covered and concealed route to their next supporting position.

.13 _____ Company moves in split vee formation when enemy contact is not likely.

- a. Moves maintaining mutual support between elements.
- b. Moves at the maximum safe speed (terrain and visibility dependent) on covered and concealed routes.
- c. One platoon moves on the front left of company split vee formation and orients weapons toward left front.
- d. Maintains movement on axis of advance/zone indicated by company commander.
- e. The other platoon moves on the front right of company split vee formation and orients weapons toward right front.
- f. Maintains movement on axis of advance/zone indicated by company commander.
- g. Platoons maintain contact with each other and stay generally abreast of each other.
- h. Commander and FO move between platoons and position to command and control scout movement.
- i. Mortar section moves approximately 1 km to 2 km behind platoons in center sector of company split vee formation.
- j. AT (TOW) section follows platoons in zone).
- k. AT (TOW) section distance behind scout platoons is 1 km to 2 km (terrain and visibility dependent).
- l. Company CP and trains move about 2 km behind AT (TOW) section.

- .14 ____ Company moves in split vee formation when enemy contact is possible.
- a. Platoons move using traveling overwatch within the platoon while platoon headquarters section provides temporary overwatch.
 - b. Commander and FO move between platoons and position to command and control movement.
 - c. Mortar section moves about 1 km to 2 km behind platoons in center zone of company split vee formation.
 - d. The AT (TOW) section move behind platoons, staying 1 km to 2 km behind.
 - e. AT (TOW) section may or may not take up temporary overwatch positions depending on the speed of company movement, terrain, and visibility.
 - f. The CP and trains generally move about 2 km behind the AT (TOW) section on a covered and concealed route.
- .15 ____ Company moves in split vee formation when enemy contact is likely.
- a. Lead platoons move using bounding overwatch within platoon.
 - b. Trailing elements of company move using traveling overwatch technique.
 - c. Company moves by bounding one or two platoons using the move/set technique.
 - d. Company commander designates bounding and overwatch elements and overwatch positions.
 - e. Overwatch element may be one platoon and AT (TOW) section (one platoon bounding) or the AT (TOW) section only (both platoons bounding at same time).
 - f. Overwatch element (one or more platoons) occupies the overwatch position, searches adjacent terrain, and reports "SET" when it is prepared to overwatch.
 - g. Mortar section positions to range beyond the bounding platoon's next overwatch position.
 - h. Company CP and trains occupy a stationary covered and concealed position about 2 km behind the overwatch element.
 - i. Bounding element (one or both platoons) moves on order on a covered and concealed route to the next overwatch position
 - j. Bounding platoon(s) occupy the subsequent overwatch position, verify that it is secure, search adjacent terrain, and report "SET" when prepared to overwatch.
 - k. On order, trail overwatching platoons (or just the one platoon overwatching&) back off the position and move on a covered and concealed route.
 - l. Trailing company elements move in traveling technique on a covered and concealed route to their next supporting position.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The tactical movement used must provide for the security and speed of the company based on the tactical situation and the commander's guidance. The execution of each tactical movement must be completed in accordance with unit SOP and factors of METT-TSL.

TASK: 10B.3.15 OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The company has been given the order to move and occupy an assembly area in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, CAS, and small, platoon-size elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander organizes a quartering party.
 - a. Selects quartering party personnel.
 - b. Determines requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.
 - c. Determines essential equipment needed.
- .2 ____ The company commander briefs the quartering party.
 - a. Identifies the location of the assembly area.
 - b. Gives specific instructions upon arrival at assembly area.
 - c. States time of main body's arrival at the assembly area.
 - d. Identifies order of march.
 - e. States NBC conditions.
 - f. Establishes MOPP level.
- .3 ____ The company quartering party moves along the route of march.
 - a. Maintains security.
 - b. Reconnoiters the route of march from SP to RP.
 - c. Monitors for NBC contamination.
 - d. Marks obstacles and bypass routes.
 - e. Reports critical information to the element quartering party commander.
- .4 ____ The quartering party moves into the company assembly area and prepares the area for the element's arrival.
 - a. Selects and marks routes from the RP to new locations.
 - b. Selects and posts guides in time to meet the main body.
 - c. Marks entrances, exits, and internal routes,
 - d. Marks vehicle positions, where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provide 360 degree security.
 - e. Marks or removes mines and obstacles.
 - f. Organizes local security.
- .5 ____ Company occupies assembly area.
 - a. Quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) move out to guide elements to selected or designated areas without halting.
 - b. Establishes and maintains local security for air and ground forces.
- .6 ____ The company establishes the assembly area's perimeter.

- a. Establishes priority of work (may vary by unit SOP and METT-TSL).
- b. Positions vehicles/crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.
- c. Establishes OPs on critical avenues of approach.
- d. Establishes communications between all positions, using wire communications if time permits.
- e. Constructs individual and crew-served fighting positions.
- f. Emplaces chemical agent alarms and early warning devices.

.7 ____ The company performs internal operation of the assembly area.

- a. Conducts preventive maintenance checks and services on vehicles and equipment.
- b. Distributes ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.
- c. Establishes personal hygiene and field sanitation site.
- d. Establishes noise, light, and camouflage discipline.
- e. Institutes rest plan for element members and commanders.
- f. Element commander inspects the assembly area.

.8 ____ The company commander coordinates, at a minimum, with the elements on the left and the right.

- a. Establishes responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.
- b. Exchanges information on OP locations and element's signals.
- c. Coordinates local counterattacks.

.9 ____ The company commander develops defensive plan and forwards to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The quartering party completes assembly area preparations and guides the company's main body into their respective positions not later than the time specified in the OPOD. Movement into the assembly area is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the assembly area. The element's main body is not surprised by the enemy.

TASK: 10B.3.16 PERFORM A RELIEF IN PLACE

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Company commander plans and coordinates the relief in place.

- a. Contacts the commander of the unit to be relieved.
- b. Reconnoiters the terrain and routes to be used during the relief.

- c. Receives briefing on the existing defense plan, including fire support, barriers, counterattack plans, and friendly and OPFOR activities.
 - d. Plans for the use of smoke to obscure OPFOR observation, if necessary.
 - e. Maintains radio listening silence in relieving unit while relieved unit continues normal traffic.
 - f. Limits the size and composition of reconnaissance parties.
 - g. Completes relief rapidly to reduce OPFOR detection and reaction time.
 - h. Employs indirect fires to cover the sound of armored vehicle movement if necessary.
 - i. Plans and employs fire support, if necessary, during the relief.
 - j. Plans transfer of excess ammunition, wire lines, POL, and other material to the incoming unit.
 - k. Establishes the time or circumstances when command passes to the incoming commander.
- .2 ____ Company performs reconnaissance.
- .3 ____ Company performs tactical movement.
- .4 ____ Company conducts the relief.
- a. Meets incoming/outgoing element at designated point.
 - b. Guides incoming element to new position in the determined sequence of relief.
 - c. Effects transfer of equipment, if required.
 - d. Outgoing element commander/commander remains in charge until the entire incoming element is in place and prepared to assume the mission.
 - e. Accepts responsibility for section sectors of observation.
 - f. Reports completion of relief.
 - g. Reports outgoing element is clear of old area of responsibility.
- .5 ____ Incoming unit conducts the task at hand.
- a. Begins operation under radio listening silence.
 - b. Receives guides from the unit being relieved to lead the new elements to their positions.
 - c. Positions unit CP and trains with relieved unit's CP and trains.
 - d. Ensures the outgoing unit commander remains in place until relieved of responsibility.
 - e. Once in position, breaks radio listening silence and transmits to maintain the pattern of the outgoing unit's communications.
 - f. Ensures movement is rapid, orderly, and completed on schedule without detection by the OPFOR.
- .6 ____ Incoming unit maintains OPSEC.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company must conduct a relief of a stationary unit so that battle handoff is effected at the agreed-upon time and relief is completed by the stated time and without detection.

TASK: 10B.3.17 PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The company is required to conduct a passage of lines. The passage of lines is either forward or rearward. The stationary unit provides overwatch. The company operates under threat of NBC attack or in an active NBC environment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander receives the OPORD and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.
- a. Passing force commander and stationary force commander or their authorized representatives meet and arrange for time and location for coordinating the passage of their respective companies.
 - b. Company commander, or his authorized representative, coordinates a reconnaissance with the forward unit commander or his authorized representative.
- .2 ____ Element team representatives exchange pertinent information.
- a. Give element identification.
 - b. State size of element.
 - c. Identify time(s) of departure.
 - d. Provide area of the unit's operation.
 - e. Provide information on terrain.
 - f. Provide location of all enemy elements.
 - g. Provide location of likely enemy fire sacks.
 - h. Provide updates on latest enemy activity.
 - i. Provide detailed information on friendly position.
 - j. Determine additional support the unit can provide.
 - k. Identify location of element assembly area, contact and passage points, and attack positions.
 - l. Identify barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
 - m. Exchange information on common maneuver/graphic control measures.
 - n. Exchange information on supporting direct and indirect fires.
 - o. Exchange information on passage lanes and route.
 - p. Exchange information on battle handover lines.
 - q. Exchange communications information, signal plan, challenge and password, and procedures to be used by the company and guides during the passage.

14 Oct 94

- r. Discuss the passing unit's mission and scheme of maneuver.
- .3 ____ The two elements coordinate the passage of lines.
- a. Send representatives to the contact point to conduct coordination.
 - b. Coordinate composition by type and number of vehicles/personnel of passing element.
 - c. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
 - d. Coordinate recognition signals and guide activities.
 - e. Coordinate attack positions or assembly areas.
 - f. Coordinate CEOI information.
 - g. Coordinate moving element arrival time at contact points.
 - h. Coordinate procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat service support.
 - i. Coordinate release points.
 - j. Coordinate procedure for handover of the battle or enemy contact.
 - k. Confirm recognition signals for the passage.
 - l. Identify guides and traffic control measures.
 - m. Discuss security measures for the passage.
 - n. Establish fire support responsibilities and fire plans.
- .4 ____ Commander directs element commanders to conduct reconnaissance.
- a. Ensures reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy.
 - b. Conducts a reconnaissance as far forward as the tactical situation permits to view the area forward of the FLOT.
 - c. Stationary element activities continue as normal throughout the passage.
- .5 ____ The commander arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary element commander.
- .6 ____ The company commander issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.
- a. Briefs elements on what is happening and what is going to happen.
 - b. Confirms chain of command.
 - c. Lists actions to be taken on contact.
 - d. Lists actions to be taken in the absence of the commander.
 - e. Provides time schedule, suspenses, and any limits on action.
- .7 ____ The passing company conducts the passage of lines.
- a. Links up with guides who lead the element from the contact point(s) through the passage lane(s) and passage point(s) to the release point(s).
 - b. The security element(s) clears the area forward of the release point(s) to the first covered and concealed position.
 - c. When the area is cleared, moves through the release point(s).

- d. XO/company gunnery sergeant/platoon sergeant counts company/platoon through the release points.
 - e. XO/company gunnery sergeant/platoon sergeant tells the guide the number of elements in the company/platoon, how long to wait at the release points, and confirms the challenge and password.
 - f. Ensures movement is continuous throughout the passage.
 - g. Executes a security halt after moving beyond the friendly unit's FPF (dismounted only).
 - h. XO/company gunnery sergeant/platoon sergeant does not move forward from the release point until the commander indicates he will not have to withdraw through passage point.
 - i. Reforms by linkup when platoons have used separate passage points.
 - j. Continues the mission.
- .8 ____ The company prepares for a rearward passage of lines.
- a. The commander of the stationary element designates the contact point for coordination.
 - b. The stationary element eavesdrops on the forward element's net to stay abreast of the tactical situation.
- .9 ____ Liaison teams from the two elements meet at the prescribed time to coordinate and verify information for the passage.
- a. Exchange enemy information.
 - b. Exchange recognition signals, signs/countersigns, and other CEOI information.
 - c. Make provisions for and position guides.
 - d. Estimate time of main body arrival and number and type of vehicles to pass.
 - e. Coordinate time of passage.
 - f. Exchange information on minefields and other obstacles.
 - g. Coordinate primary passage points, lanes, and alternates.
 - h. Exchange information supporting direct and indirect fire.
- .10 ____ The company conducts a rearward passage of lines.
- a. After verification that the passage points are occupied, liaison parties make contact at each passage point.
 - b. The passing element displays the proper visual signal.
 - c. The passing element orients weapons toward the enemy.
 - d. The passing element moves through the passage point to the assembly area without stopping.
 - e. The stationary element fires only when positive enemy identification is made.
 - f. Ensures disabled vehicles are self-recovered, destroyed in place, or assisted by other elements.
 - g. Stationary element provides medical assistance, fuel, oil, lubricants, and maintenance as required.
 - h. Passing element moves rapidly, minimizing exposure time.
 - i. The element commander reports to the command post of the stationary element and relays any tactical information concerning the commander's area of responsibility.

- j. The element commander links up with the element in the assembly area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit no later than the time specified in the order. The unit main body is not surprised by the enemy during departure of friendly lines. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly obstacles or from friendly fire.

TASK: 10B.3.18 ASSIST PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. OPFOR contact is possible. The company is conducting a defense or delay.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander plans to assist passage of another unit with passing unit or higher headquarters.
 - a. Coordinates composition by types and number of vehicles of passing unit.
 - b. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
 - c. Coordinates recognition signals and guide activities.
 - d. Coordinates attack positions or assembly areas.
 - e. Coordinates CEOI information.
 - f. Coordinates moving unit arrival time at contact points.
 - g. Coordinates procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat service support.
 - h. Coordinates release points.
 - i. Coordinates procedure for handover of the battle or enemy contact.
 - j. Coordinates enemy situation.
 - k. Orders platoon(s) to establish contact points.
 - l. Coordinates barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
- .2 ____ Company commander orders platoons to overwatch battle handover line and passing unit.
- .3 ____ Company deploys to assist passage.
 - a. Establishes contact points (if not directed by higher headquarters) and passage points.
 - b. Establishes overwatch positions.
 - c. Reconnoiters and marks routes for passing unit.
 - d. Mans reserve targets on obligated routes.
- .4 ____ Company guides passing units.
 - a. Guides the passing unit along specified routes to designated location.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Reports completion of the passage.
 - c. Closes passage lanes through obstacles.
- .5 ____ Company commander reports the completion of the passage to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company assists the passing unit so that no personnel or equipment loss occurs during the passage. Coordination is made in accordance with the unit plan and SOP.

10B.4 FIRE SUPPORT

TASK: 10B.4.1 DEVELOP FIRE SUPPORT PLAN

CONDITION(S): The company receives an OPORD from the battalion.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander plans fire support in coordination with the company FO.
- a. Establishes mortar, artillery, close air support (CAS), close-in fire support (CIFS), and naval gunfire (NGF) targets, groups, and/or series of targets.
 - b. Establishes a schedule of fires if applicable.
 - c. Establishes fire support coordination measures as necessary.
 - d. Establishes target priorities for each fire support system.
 - e. Integrates all fire support and facilitate unit maneuver by destroying, suppressing, or obscuring known or suspected OPFOR positions.
- .2 ____ Commander plans targets.
- a. Plans targets on known, suspected, or likely enemy locations.
 - b. Plans targets on prominent terrain features.
 - c. Plans targets from the LD to the LOA/objective.
 - d. Plans targets along the axis of advance.
 - e. Plans targets to the flanks of avenues of approach.
- .3 ____ Commander plans smoke.
- a. Designates target number.
 - b. Determines duration of smoke needed.
 - c. Makes sure smoke does not interfere with maneuver due to wind direction.
 - d. Plans alternative smoke targets.
- .4 ____ The FO develops an fire support plan in conjunction with the company scheme of maneuver.

- a. Includes how-fires will support the maneuver plan.
 - b. Includes a target list with locations.
 - c. Includes unit priority of fires.
 - d. Includes allocation and designation of priority targets, including FPF.
 - e. Includes fire support coordination measures.
 - f. Includes coordination of CIFS.
 - g. Includes integration of CAS.
 - h. Includes integration of the engineer obstacle plan.
- .5 ____ FO, with approval of company commander, sends company target list to the battalion FSC.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company commander and the FO, FAC, and NGF spotter plan and coordinate indirect fires, CAS, and CIFS that provide support to the company scheme of maneuver.

10B.5 IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT (CAS)/CLOSE-IN FIRE SUPPORT (CIFS)

TASK: 10B.5.1 PLAN AN IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. A suitable target is identified for immediate attack by air. The FAC has decided to mark the target with either direct or indirect fire. The delivery of ordnance can occur at night, during the day or during periods of limited visibility. The JTAR is the standard request format. The FAC is in possession of a pilot/controller handbook and/or designated frequencies. The threat forces have a mix of AAA and SAM's, both short and medium range.

STANDARDS: EVAL: T; N; NE

- .1 ____ Analyzes the target in conjunction with the supported unit to determine its tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain the desired level of damage/destruction.
- .2 ____ Determines the method of control based on the type aircraft and ordnance that have been allocated.
- .3 ____ Evaluates threat anti-air defenses in the target area based on current intelligence from the G/S-2.
- .4 ____ Plans ingress and egress routes that provide maximum protection to the attacking aircraft, minimize exposure time, provide safety for ground personnel, and allow pilot time to acquire the target.
- .5 ____ Determines target coverage desired and designates an attack heading which achieves target coverage and/or requests the aircraft pilot to stagger the ordnance release.
- .6 ____ Selects initial point (from those previously established) and/or pop point.
- .7 ____ Determine the feasibility of a marking round and/or SEAD fires prior to the submission of a JTAR.
- .8 ____ Plans illumination means if the attack is to occur at night.
- .9 ____ Plans alternate targets.

- .10 ____ Coordinates an ACA, if required.
- .11 ____ Prepares and submits a JTAR with all the required information in a timely manner.
- .12 ____ Uses covered communications in submitting the JTAR.
- .13 ____ Prepares a CAS briefing.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10B.5.2 CONTROL AN IMMEDIATE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. Tactical fixed-wing aircraft have been requested. The delivery of live ordnance can occur at night, during the day, or during periods of limited visibility. The FAC is collocated or in close proximity to artillery forward observers or tank crew members to coordinate marking rounds and/or SEAD fires. The FAC is in possession of a pilot/controller handbook and/or designated frequencies. The threat forces have a mix of AAA and missiles, both short and medium range.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FAC personnel are prepared for the aircraft's arrival and establish communications immediately.
- .2 ____ FAC knows the location of all friendly ground units.
- .3 ____ Briefs the pilots using the standard CAS/CIFS briefing guide.
- .4 ____ Uses covered communications with attack aircraft.
- .5 ____ Gives time to target/time on target to pilot(s), unit providing mark, and unit providing SEAD fires.
- .6 ____ Ensures target is properly marked during aircraft's acquisition window. (KI)
- .7 ____ Gives a correction from the mark to the target, if required.
- .8 ____ Coordinates SEAD fires, if required.
- .9 ____ Ensures that the aircraft is safely engaging the correct target prior to clearing the aircraft.
- .10 ____ Transmits a positive clearance to release ordnance to the aircrew once the aircraft is in the correct position to release.
- .11 ____ Ensures that radio transmissions are short, concise, and to the point.
- .12 ____ Maintains positive control of the aircraft at all times.
- .13 ____ Demonstrates the ability to assign new targets to the aircraft while in-flight.
- .14 ____ Knows the proper method to abort an attack. (KI)
- .15 ____ Transmits a battle damage assessment (BDA). (KI)
- .16 ____ If working two aircraft in a section, transmits a correction to the second aircraft based on the ordnance impact of the first aircraft's ordnance. (KI)

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: A suitable range/training area capable of accepting live ordnance is required. Strict adherence to range safety regulations is mandatory. The attack aircraft can utilize a low dive, lateral toss, dive toss, high dive, or loft delivery depending on the threat and on local range regulations. Ground attack scoring criteria are as follows:

BOMBS*

<u>THREAT</u>	<u>DELIVERY</u>	<u>BDA</u>	<u>VS</u>	<u>CEP</u>	<u>(METERS)</u>	<u>TARGET</u>
Low	Low or high dive	BDA	70X	85X	100X	Raked or live range
		CEP	50	25	15	
Medium	Any dive		60	35	20	
High	Any dive		90	55	20	
Any	Loft		500	300	200	

ROCKETS OR GUNS

All threats as required	CEP	40	20	10	Raked or live range
-------------------------	-----	----	----	----	------------------------

* Evaluator will interpolate Circular Error Probability (CEP) and round off to the nearest 5 percent increment. Effectiveness of the ordnance used will be presumed as the mission is intended to evaluate control capabilities.

KEY INDICATORS:

MARK ON TARGET

The FAC will coordinate the mark of the target at the appropriate time. The mark will be delivered 20 to 30 seconds prior to TTT or TOT to aid in acquisition of the target by the pilot. The FAC must know the location of Control Points (CP) and Initial Points (IP). The FAC will determine the most appropriate method for marking based on the nature of the target, the tactical situation, and resources available.

AIRSPACE COORDINATION AREA (ACA)

An ACA may be imposed as a safety measure for the protection of aircraft from surface delivered fires. A formal ACA establishes a three-dimensional area that includes length, depth, and altitude. The ACA should be established only when the risk to friendly aircraft is sufficiently great to justify the attendant loss of surface-delivered fire support. The specific information necessary to establish an ACA includes minimum and maximum altitudes, length by two coordinate points, width on either side of a centerline, and the effective date timegroup for commencement and termination. Artillery, NSFS, or mortar support can continue over, under, or to the sides of the ACA while it is in effect. Coordination at the lowest level FSCC will facilitate the minimum time actually required for the ACA to remain in effect.

ABORT METHOD

Attack aircraft will abort when:

1. "Abort! Abort! Abort!" is transmitted.
2. "Stop! Stop! Stop!" (NATO agreed term) is transmitted.
3. Silence after arrival at the IP and no clearance to drop is received. (Local SOP will mandate the use of this method.)
4. In future conflicts where communication may be difficult, a code word may be designated to abort of an aircraft's attack run, or pyrotechnics could be used (e.g., prearranged red star cluster) if communications are totally impossible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT

While BDA or strike assessment information can be easily transmitted in a permissive environment, it is doubtful if time and circumstances will permit it in a sophisticated scenario; therefore, this information would be passed via the FSCC's to the Direct Air Support Center (DASC) at the earliest opportunity. If results are unsatisfactory, another request for immediate air support should be submitted.

WORKING TWO AIRCRAFT

In a high threat environment, when using low-level maneuvers, target information will be transmitted using geographical direction to the target; e.g., "from lead's hit, southwest, 200 meters."

RELEASE CONDITIONS

It must be recognized that Emissions Control (EMCON), Minimized Communications (MINCOM), or enemy jamming may make it difficult to exchange information between the FAC and aircrew in a high threat environment. This makes it imperative that the strike be preplanned to the maximum extent possible. Ground commanders must be prepared to accept the possibility that the flight will be unable to initiate or receive radio communications after commencing low-level ingress. The pilot will deliver the ordnance as long as he is reasonably assured that the proper target is in sight, unless receiving a positive abort signal from the FAC. In a jamming environment, a red flare or star cluster could be used as an alternative means to signify an abort. If the situation dictates a positive FAC clearance prior to drop, it must be prearranged as an exception to normal procedures in a high threat environment.

TASK: 10B.5.3 PLAN A LASER GUIDED CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. A suitable target is identified for an immediate attack by air. The FAC is equipped with a laser designator and has decided to engage the target using laser designation. The delivery of live ordnance can occur at night, during the day, or during periods of limited visibility. The FAC is in possession of a pilot/controller handbook and/or designated communication frequencies. The threat forces have a mix of AAA and missiles, both short and medium range.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Analyzes the target in conjunction with the supported unit to determine its tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain the desired level of damage.
- .2 ____ Determines the method of control based on the type of aircraft and ordnance that has been allocated.
- .3 ____ Evaluates threat anti-air defenses in the target area based on current intelligence information received from the G/S-2.
- .4 ____ Selects overwatch positions or other positions which provide for maximum visibility, line of sight, cover and concealment, and communications.
- .5 ____ Demonstrates the ability to determine target range, target elevation, and azimuth to the target using the Modular Universal Laser Equipment (MULE).
- .6 ____ Considers laser safety requirements.
- .7 ____ Determines whether the laser designator is within range to provide sufficient reflected laser energy to operate.
- .8 ____ Determine the feasibility of SHAD fires prior to the submission of a JTAR, if required.
- .9 ____ Coordinates an ACA, if required.
- .10 ____ Ensures that minimum cloud ceiling based on types of weapons, delivery mode, aircraft type, and time of weapons flight exists.
- .11 ____ Selects a run-in heading that allows for lock-on and weapons delivery on the first pass.

14 Oct 94

- .12 ____ Adjusts the attack heading, especially at sunrise or sundown, to avoid solar saturation for targets located just above the horizon.
- .13 ____ Ensures that the laser guided weapon's flight and the laser-to-target line are within safety basket.
- .14 ____ Coordinates communications procedures to be used with the aircraft for target designation to include the code setting for the designator and seeker.
- .15 ____ Considers the simultaneous attack or the spacing of attack aircraft on a target to alleviate problems associated with smoke, dust, and debris.
- .16 ____ Demonstrates an understanding of the weapons delivery envelope for the requested laser weapons.
- .17 ____ Plans alternate targets.
- .18 ____ Plans the use of the laser designator to aid in the delivery of nonlaser guided weapons.
- .19 ____ Uses covered communications in submitting the JTAR.
- .20 ____ Prepares a CAS briefing guide.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

LASER SAFETY

When using laser designators in a crowded battlefield environment where areas occupied by friendly and enemy troops are not well-defined, the potential danger to friendly personnel of eye damage must be considered in order to develop and define proper operating procedures.

Normally, the only part of the human anatomy affected by the laser is the eye. Light from a laser is more damaging than ordinary light sources. The visible or invisible beam is highly directional, intense radiation which can cause serious harm to the eyes.

The highly directional laser beam can be refracted by the cornea into the eye lens and transmitted through the vitreous humor onto the retina where it can cause damage ranging from unnoticeable tiny spots to complete blindness. The principal dangers to the eye result from looking directly back at the laser and from reflections from specular (mirror-like) reflectors. Because the laser beam spreads so little, the danger zone for direct beam viewing extends over an extremely long distance. For example, the danger zone for a single laser designator is defined to be the area within the field of view of the telescopic sight, extending out to the minimum safe range of 11 kilometers.

Specular reflections from flat objects, such as flat mirrors, window glass, automobile reflectors on tail lights, and certain optical systems, do not spread the beam after reflection, and cause optical damage. The minimum safe range for such reflection is the same as for direct beam viewing. In addition, since the reflected beam may be in any direction, the danger zone is essentially a circle around the reflector. Specular reflections from surfaces, such as hubcaps and bumpers, are spreadout, thereby reducing the danger and resulting in smaller minimum safe range. The minimum safe range is increased appreciably for anyone viewing a target area through binoculars and similar optical devices.

During laser designator training, personnel in the vicinity are required to wear safety glasses.

All laser training operations must be under the close supervision of qualified laser safety personnel.

Each laser range will have special range regulations for later use that require strict compliance for laser safety.

Never try to dismantle laser modules.

Immediately cease laser generation or move the laser if any person comes into the optical range of the beam.

Do not apply laser beam to highly reflective targets such as glass or chrome.

14 Oct 94

When handling the-laser, always assume it is powered until actual determination can be made.

Never point the laser at anyone and ensure that the muzzle is always pointed downrange.

Ensure that the laser control switch is on "safe" when not in actual operation. Disconnect the power source when not in use for extended periods.

Keep-nearby personnel behind the muzzle.

TASK: 10B.5.4 CONTROL A LASER GUIDED CLOSE AIR SUPPORT STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. A suitable target has been designated for an immediate air strike. The FAC is equipped with a laser designator and has decided either to engage the target with a laser guided bomb or to pinpoint the target's location and designate it for attack by aircraft equipped with laser tracking equipment. A JTAR has been submitted. The delivery of live ordnance can occur at night, during the day, or during periods of limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Demonstrates the ability to determine target range, target elevation, and azimuth to the target using the laser designator.
- .2 ____ Ensures line of sight (LOS) exists between the designator and the target, as well as between the target and the ingress route of the aircraft.
- .3 ____ Chooses a position which is unobscured by smoke, dust, or chemical particles and free from obstructions such as shrubs and trees.
- .4 ____ Verifies minimum weather requirements exist for the type of aircraft and ordnance.
- .5 ____ Ensures that the laser designator is positioned within the optimum range for the seeker to acquire the target.
- .6 ____ FAC personnel are prepared for the aircraft's arrival and establish communications immediately.
- .7 ____ Briefs the pilots using the standard nine-line CAS briefing guide.
- .8 ____ Uses covered communications with the attack aircraft.
- .9 ____ Gives the pilots a time to target/time on target.
- .10 ____ Utilizes a night sight for target identification for engagements at night and during periods of low visibility.
- .11 ____ Uses the proper code as coordinated with the aircraft.
- .12 ____ Aims the laser designator at the top third of the target in an attempt to optimize the amount of reflected energy.
- .13 ____ Uses offset laser designation techniques to enhance target acquisition.
- .14 ____ Maintains positive air-to-ground communications throughout the mission.
- .15 ____ Uses correct and precise communications when designating the target.
- .16 ____ Designates the target at the proper time.
- .17 ____ Is able to designate moving targets.
- .18 ____ Ensures that the aircraft is safely engaging the correct target prior to clearing the aircraft.
- .19 ____ Transmits a positive clearance to release ordnance to the aircraft ("cleared hot").
- .20 ____ Knows the proper method to abort an attack.

- .21 ____ Coordinates effective suppressive fires.
- .22 ____ Transmits a battle damage assessment (BDA).

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Timing requirements should take into account:

- 1. Weapons requiring lock-on before launch (LOBL).
- 2. Weapons allowing lock-on after launch (LOAL).
- 3. Lofted weapons.
- 4. Direct fire weapons.

Ground attack scoring criteria are as follows:

BOMBS*

<u>THREAT</u>	<u>DELIVERY</u>	<u>BDA VS CEP (METERS)</u>			<u>TARGET</u>	
Low	Low or high dive	BDA CEP	70% 50	85% 25	100% 15	Raked or live range
Medium	Any dive		60	35	20	
High	Any dive		90	55	20	
Any	Loft		500	300	200	

* Evaluator will interpolate CEP's and round off to the nearest 5 percent increment.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

10B.6 MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY

TASK: 10B.6.1 CONDUCT HASTY WATER CROSSING OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company has encountered a water obstacle that must be crossed. Time is limited. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander preplans the crossing operation.
 - a. Selects possible crossing sites based on map reconnaissance.
 - b. Uses a broad crossing front to reduce congestion and vulnerability.
 - c. Identifies the amount of crossing equipment available.
 - d. Determines the enemy's defense plan or most probable course of action along with the obstacle's physical characteristics.
 - e. Plans for protection of the force and use of darkness and smoke.
 - f. Plans for command and control.
 - g. Provides enough space for support forces to work and for assault forces to concentrate before crossing.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. Determines the timing of the crossing.
- .2 ____ Company employs indirect fires.
 - a. Suppresses known and suspected OPFOR locations.
 - b. Uses smoke to obscure OPFOR observation of fording or crossing.
- .3 ____ Company establishes security.
 - a. Platoons occupy overwatch positions.
 - b. Scouts secure the flanks of the water crossing area.
- .4 ____ Company scouts make an assessment of the fording/crossing site in accordance with unit SOP and commander's directives.
- .5 ____ XO conducts an assessment of site.
 - a. Receives reports.
 - b. Conducts an estimate.
 - c. Makes a recommendation to the commander.
 - d. Coordinates for crossing support if necessary.
- .6 ____ Company crosses the body of water with scouts fording and remainder using tactical bridging.
- .7 ____ Company commander directs crossing to begin.
 - a. Orders platoon(s) to ford body of water at points of tactical advantage.
 - b. Orders overwatch platoon(s) to new positions if necessary (positions provide good fields of observation and fires on known or suspected enemy locations).
 - c. Establishes direct and indirect fire control measures.
 - d. Locates with the fording or overwatch element
- .8 ____ Fording platoon(s) execute their assigned mission.
 - a. Move minimum number of scouts forward with equipment necessary to ford.
 - b. Prepare equipment to swim.
 - c. Initiate movement.
 - d. Cover movement with indirect fires.
 - e. Remain at fording site to guide follow-on platoons.
 - f. Ford or swim the body of water.
 - g. Secure fighting positions on far side.
 - h. Reconnoiter far side.
- .9 ____ Scout platoon(s) that do not ford execute their assigned mission.
 - a. Relieve other platoons' scouts and position scouts near crossing site to guide AVLB.
 - b. Ford or swim the body of water with the remainder of the platoon.
 - c. Secure fighting position on far side of the body of water.
- .10 ____ Company commander directs overwatch elements to cross to far side and retrieve AVLB.

- .11 ____ Company commander reports completion of crossing and current position to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company must conduct hasty water crossing without losing momentum. At a minimum, fire support is preplanned, security is maintained, and reconnaissance of the obstacle is performed.

TASK: 10B.6.2 PERFORM HASTY OBSTACLE BREACHING

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company has encountered an obstacle that must be breached to complete its mission. Time is limited, and engineer support is not available. OPFOR contact is likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander reconnoiters the obstacle.
- a. Receives report of obstacles.
 - b. Conducts analysis.
 - c. Directs platoons to deploy to support scouts' reconnaissance and breaching activities.
 - d. Directs platoons to develop the situation to determine the front edge and flanks of the obstacles.
 - e. Ensures XO reports obstacles to battalion over tactical net.
- .2 ____ Platoons reconnoiter the obstacle.
- a. Identify obstacles and report.
 - b. Develop the situation by reconnoitering to identify the front edge and flanks of the obstacle, enemy disposition, and bypass routes.
- .3 ____ Platoons employ indirect fires.
- a. Suppress known and suspected OPFOR locations.
 - b. Use smoke to obscure OPFOR observation.
- .4 ____ Platoons establish security.
- a. Platoons occupy overwatch positions.
 - b. Scouts secure the flanks of the obstacle area.
- .5 ____ Company makes an assessment.
- a. Platoons report obstacles, known or suspected enemy locations, fields of observation, and flanks of obstacle area.
 - b. XO receives reports, conducts and estimate, and makes a recommendation to the commander.
 - c. Company commander chooses a course of action based on factors of METT-TSL.
- .6 ____ Company commander decides to breach the obstacle.
- a. Orders platoon(s) to breach obstacles at point of advantage.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Orders overwatch platoon(s) to new positions, if necessary, to ensure positions have good fields of observation and fires on known or suspected OPFOR locations.
 - c. Establishes direct and indirect fire control measures.
 - d. Locates with the breach or overwatch elements.
- .7 ____ Platoon breaches the obstacle.
- a. Moves minimum number of scouts forward with equipment necessary to breach.
 - b. Performs actions in accordance with commander's directives and unit SOP.
 - c. Moves through cleared obstacle path.
 - d. Secures fighting positions on far side of the obstacle area.
- .8 ____ Platoons overwatch obstacle area from near side.
- a. As the breaching element breaches the obstacle, platoons prepares to suppress the far side by direct fire.
 - b. Platoon prepares to move to far side on order.
- .9 ____ Platoons not breaching or overwatching move through cleared obstacle path.
- a. Secure fighting positions on far side.
 - b. Set up local security to flanks.
- .10 ____ Company commander makes assessment.
- a. Assesses the obstacle area required for follow-on forces.
 - b. Determines the degree of preparation to support movement of follow-on forces.
- .11 ____ Company commander orders platoons to move through cleared paths.
- a. Scouts mark route.
 - b. Scouts continue mission.
- .12 ____ Company reports obstacle in formation.
- a. Reports location and extent of obstacle.
 - b. Reports location of breach.
- .13 ____ Company continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit must breach the obstacle and clear a lane 20 feet wide within 30 minutes. Lanes must be clearly marked. The unit must be through the breach 45 minutes from the beginning of the breaching operation.

TASK: 10B.6.3 DEVELOP OBSTACLE PLAN

CONDITION(S): The company has received an order from the battalion and must plan to conduct either an offensive or a defensive combat operation. The mission is received in the field, and all planning must be conducted under field conditions. The company may be in an AA or conducting a tactical mission when planning begins.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander and engineer representative coordinate obstacle planning.
 - a. Analyze the mission.
 - b. Determine task organization for allocation of resources.
 - c. Determine area of operation.
 - d. Determine availability of time.
 - e. Analyze avenues of approach.
 - f. Perform a terrain analysis.
 - g. Identify existing man-made and natural obstacles.
 - h. Visualize the avenues of approach under all conditions.
 - i. Determine the size of OPFOR or friendly elements the avenues of approach will support.
 - j. Analyze EAs, BPs, and locations of weapon systems.
 - k. Analyze existing obstacle areas, fields of fire, and natural cover and concealment.
- .2 ____ Commander and engineer representative determine obstacle location and types.
 - a. Employ and emplace obstacles based on selected EAs.
 - b. Balance what needs to be done with what is possible.
- .3 ____ XO and engineer representative determine commander's obstacle priorities.
 - a. Determine the unconstrained obstacle estimate.
 - b. Determine obstacles that need to be emplaced to support the operation.
 - c. Establish a priority of emplacement for obstacles.
 - d. Determine purpose, type, and proposed location of obstacles based on type of operation.
- .4 ____ Commander, engineer representative, and XO determine resources available to execute obstacle plan.
 - a. Determine the time available to accomplish obstacle mission.
 - b. Set time for the delivery of munitions and material for emplacement of obstacles.
 - c. Determine haul requirements.
 - d. Consider alternate obstacles that may be substituted to overcome logistical difficulties.
- .5 ____ Company commanders determine actual work requirements.
 - a. Determine work force and time available.
 - b. Determine logistical assets.
 - c. Determine task organization required.

- d. Request additional engineer assets, if necessary.
 - e. Determine coordination required to transport materials, integrate scattered mines, and notify adjacent units regarding locations of obstacle systems.
- .6 _____ Commander coordinates with engineer representative, XO, and other commanders to ensure plan supports scheme of maneuver.
- a. Coordinates to ensure offensive operations include reinforcements and flank security along the axis of advance.
 - b. Coordinates defensive operations based on the scheme of maneuver.
 - c. Coordinates delay operations, including use of obstacles to assist in inflicting losses and breaking contact.
 - d. Ensures all obstacles are covered by fire.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Obstacles are placed to canalize, delay, restrict, or divert movement of enemy forces to enhance maneuver plan and fires, tie in to existing and reinforcing obstacles, and integrate with direct and indirect fires.

TASK: 10B.6.4 PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS IN AN NBC ENVIRONMENT

CONDITION(S): Higher headquarters informs the company that the OPFOR is using NBC warfare in the area. Effective downwind messages (EDM) and chemical downwind messages (CDM) are being received.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Commanders check accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment.
 - a. Ensure that NBC detection equipment is issued to trained operators.
 - b. Ensure that NBC detection equipment is employed and operating within 15 minutes.
 - c. Identify equipment shortages.
 - d. Obtain replacement equipment.
- .2 _____ Company assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher headquarters or as the NBC situations dictates.
 - a. Personnel must mask within 15 seconds.
 - b. Personnel must assume MOPP 4 within eight minutes.
- .3 _____ Company takes actions to protect itself against NBC attack.
 - a. Uses vehicle overpressure systems, if so equipped.
 - b. Prepares protective shelters such as foxholes with overhead cover.
 - c. Employs NBC alarms.
- .4 _____ Company commander adjusts MOPP level using MOPP analysis.
 - a. Commander receives and assesses the enemy NBC threat capability.
 - b. Commander directs collection of weather data.

- .5 ____ Commander/XO receives information and assesses the enemy NBC threat.
- a. Determines if the company is, or can be, targeted.
 - b. Determines if the enemy has the capability to deliver chemical nuclear weapons.
 - c. Determines when or where the enemy would most likely deliver chemical or nuclear weapons.
 - d. Determines the company mission.
 - e. Determines company physical and training level.
- .6 ____ XO/NBC NCO collects and assesses weather data.
- a. Determines current weather conditions.
 - b. Determines weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company uses collective protection or takes measures to limit effects of NBC contamination and continues the mission.

TASK: 10B.6.5 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Company receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable. Higher headquarters directs implementation of NBC SOP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander warns company of nuclear attack.
- a. Warns subordinate elements.
 - b. Alerts unit NBC teams.
 - c. Directs actions to maximize protection consistent with mission.
- .2 ____ Platoon commanders issue warning order to subordinate elements.
- .3 ____ The company begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.
- a. Positions vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.
 - b. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment in accordance with unit SOP.
 - c. Ties down essential antennas.
 - d. Takes down nonessential antenna leads in accordance with unit SOP or other guidance.
 - e. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.
 - f. Zeros dosimeters.
 - g. Secures loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.
 - h. Ensures personnel takes cover in hardened shelters if available.

- .4 ____ Company takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation.
- a. Continues periodic monitoring.
 - b. Reports all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company must prepare for NBC attack by hardening positions, equipment, and conducts periodic monitoring.

TASK: 10B.6.5 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): Company conducts continuous combat operations under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The company has encountered a radiologically contaminated area that cannot be bypassed and must be crossed in completing its mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander selects a route.
- a. Uses NBC-5 report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.
 - b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission.
 - c. Obtains route clearance and approval.
- .2 ____ Company prepares to cross the area.
- a. Provides extra shielding (such as sandbags) for nonarmored vehicles if necessary.
 - b. Assumes MOPP 4.
 - c. Establishes operational exposure guide (OEG) and ensures all commanders and radiac operators know exposure limits.
 - d. Checks radiac instruments.
 - e. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, and commanders know route of march and have strip maps.
- .3 ____ Company crosses the area.
- a. Dispatches an advance party and/or reconnaissance team.
 - b. Avoids stirring up dust and avoids dust clouds as much as possible.
 - c. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible.
- .4 ____ Company exits contaminated area.
- a. Conducts decontamination if mission permits, or:
 - b. Arranges for decontamination as soon as possible if mission does not permit.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company conducts crossing of radiologically contaminated area as rapidly and directly as possible.

TASK: 10B.6.7 CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY

CONDITION(S): Fallout is complete in the unit's operational area, and monitoring has not provided a sufficient picture of the hazard area. Higher headquarters directs a survey to be conducted.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company plans survey.
 - a. Control party determines type of survey and techniques to be employed.
 - b. Uses OEG set by higher headquarters.
 - c. Considers previous exposure of survey teams when establishing the turn-back dose and dose rate.
 - d. Balances survey requirements against tactical situation.
- .2 ____ XO/NBC NCO brief teams.
 - a. Conducts briefing in a modified five-paragraph field order.
- .3 ____ Ensures each team prepares vehicles and equipment to conduct mission.
- .4 ____ Company conducts survey.
 - a. Executes mission as planned, with control party approving deviations unless caused by tactical considerations.
 - b. Ensures team executes check and record radiological contamination drill in accordance with directed survey techniques.
 - c. Ensures turn-back dose and/or dose rate are not exceeded without permission of higher headquarters.
- .5 ____ Company completes survey.
 - a. Determines need for decontamination using AN/PDR-27 and conducts decontamination if required.
 - b. Ensures control party debriefs survey teams.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company plans and conducts reconnaissance of the radiologically contaminated area. As a minimum, turn-back dose and dose rates are established; teams are designated; personnel and equipment are prepared; survey data are collected and reported.

TASK: 10B.6.8 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company receives a message from higher headquarters warning it of a friendly nuclear attack. The message directs protective measures to be implemented.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander issues warning order to subordinate elements.
- .2 ____ Company begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.
 - a. Ensures vehicle commanders direct personnel to position vehicles to shield against a nuclear attack.
 - b. Positions vehicles with front slope toward blast to take advantage of natural terrain.
- .3 ____ Crew prepares vehicle/equipment for nuclear attack.
 - a. Secures loose equipment inside vehicle.
 - b. Takes down antennas of nonessential radios and stores in vehicle.
 - c. Disconnects antenna cables.
 - d. Removes all exterior equipment which could be damaged by blast and stores it inside vehicle or ties it down and covers it.
 - e. Buries oils/combustibles or covers them away from vehicles.
 - f. Covers vision blocks and sights.
 - g. Closes and locks all hatches, shields, and ramps.
 - h. Places the NBC system into operation.
 - i. Operates gas particulate filters.
 - j. Zeros dosimeters.
 - k. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.
- .4 ____ Marines take individual protective actions.
 - a. Assume MOPP level specified by commander if not already done.
 - b. If not in armored vehicles, take shelter in individual fighting positions or designated (prebuilt) shelter or beneath vehicles.
 - c. Close eyes and brace for shock.
- .5 ____ Designated crews monitor continuously for nuclear contamination.
 - a. Monitoring team warns commanders when dose rate equals 1 rad/hr or higher.
 - b. Monitoring team submits NBC reports as required.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company completes preparations within 30 minutes before friendly nuclear strike.

TASK 10B.6.9 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company receives fallout or becomes radiologically contaminated by crossing a contaminated area. The mission allows the company to conduct decontamination.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander directs individual sustainment decontamination procedures.
 - a. Ensures procedures start within 15 minutes.
 - b. Ensures personnel remove contamination and dispose of it.
 - c. Plans for detailed decontamination procedures.
 - d. Platoons perform detailed decontamination when time permits.

- .2 ____ Company commander directs vehicle and equipment hasty decontamination procedures.
 - a. Ensures procedures start within 30 minutes if mission permits.
 - b. Ensures personnel remove contamination and dispose of it.
 - c. Plans for detailed decontamination procedures when mission permits.
 - d. Platoons perform detailed decontamination when time permits.

- .3 ____ Decontamination team commander updates platoon radiation status.
 - a. Reads dosimeters.
 - b. Averages total dose readings.
 - c. Rounds off to nearest centigrade.
 - d. Zeros all dosimeters using PP-1578/PD.

- .4 ____ Company resumes mission.
 - a. Continues assigned mission.
 - b. Continues to monitor the NBC situation.
 - c. Replenishes decontamination supplies.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company decontaminates personnel and equipment within the negligible risk level. Contamination is controlled.

TASK: - 10B.6.10 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Chemical warfare has been initiated or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of SOP items to minimize casualties and damage.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander issues warning order and ensures the order is understood.
- .2 ____ Company starts defensive preparation for a chemical attack.
 - a. Assumes MOPP 4 within eight minutes after notification.
 - b. Marines attach M9 detector paper to their right arm and left wrist and to either the right or left ankle.
 - c. Conducts field sanitation procedures.
 - d. Positions chemical agent alarm upwind of position.
- .3 ____ Company prepares fighting positions and shelters.
 - a. Uses existing natural or man-made facilities as fighting positions and shelters.
 - b. Digs fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover of at least 18 inches of soil, if time permits.
- .4 ____ Company commander and platoon commanders check personnel and fighting positions.
 - a. Ensure all personnel are at MOPP 4.
 - b. Ensure that individual and company fighting positions are hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.
- .5 ____ Company commander takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP level as appropriate.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company must assume MOPP 4 within eight minutes and complete its preparation efforts prior to the attack or the effects of the attack reaching the company location. Personnel, equipment, food, and water are protected and the mission continues.

TASK: 10B.6.11 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company is alerted by automatic alarms or automatic masking events that it is under chemical agent attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company reacts to the sound of chemical agent alarm or recognizes the indicators for chemical/biological attack.
 - a. Marines put on protective mask with hood within 15 seconds.
 - b. Marines give the alarm (vocal and nonvocal).
 - c. Marines go to MOPP 4 as quickly as possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- d. Marines seek-additional shelter if available.
 - e. Marines administer nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other Marines if symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning are detected.
 - f. Commanders check their personnel to ensure protective measures are followed.
- .2 ____ Company personnel take additional protective measures.
- a. Protect exposed equipment and supplies.
 - b. Monitor the area by testing with detector kits.
 - c. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.
- .3 ____ Company conducts basic skills decontamination.
- a. Individuals decontaminate their skin.
 - b. Individuals conduct wipedown of personal equipment with M258A1 or M280 decontamination kits (if available).
 - c. Personnel conduct operator's spraydown of equipment.
- .4 ____ Company reorganizes.
- a. Reestablishes chain of command and communications.
 - b. Receives company status and passes to higher headquarters.
 - c. Identifies, treats, prepares, and evacuates casualties.
 - d. Decontaminates KIAs before medical evacuation.
 - e. Wraps, marks, and evacuates KIAs to designated collection point.
 - f. Resumes mission.
- .5 ____ Company uses chemical detection equipment to find the extent and nature of the hazard.
- .6 ____ Company submits NBC-1 report to higher headquarters.
- .7 ____ Company adjusts MOPP level.
- a. Ensures personnel wear appropriate clothing.
 - b. Ensures personnel take appropriate steps to reduce stress and fatigue.
 - c. Supervises unmasking procedures and recommends an all-clear signal to the commander if it is determined that hazard no longer exists.
- .8 ____ Company replenishes chemical defense equipment and supplies.
- .9 ____ Company continues mission or requests movement to alternate location.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company personnel take immediate protective actions. NBC defense teams take appropriate actions, initiating NBC-1 report and identifying agents used. Company MOPP level is adjusted based on the tactical situation.

TASK: 10B.6.12 CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous operations under all battlefield conditions. The company has encountered a chemically contaminated area that cannot be bypassed and must be crossed in completing its mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander selects a route.
 - a. Uses NBC-5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.
 - b. Selects a route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission.
 - c. Obtains route clearance and approval.

- .2 ____ Company prepares to cross the area.
 - a. Assumes MOPP level 4 for crossing the area.
 - b. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, and commanders know route of march and/or have strip maps.
 - c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up for mounted movement.
 - d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material.
 - e. Attaches M9 detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.

- .3 ____ Company crosses the area.
 - a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.
 - b. Conducts dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.
 - c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible.

- .4 ____ Company exits the contaminated area.
 - a. Checks for casualties.
 - b. Conducts necessary decontamination.
 - c. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company must cross the contaminated area without sustaining casualties from a chemical agent. Company personnel must be in the appropriate MOPP level. Chemical decontamination is performed as soon as possible.

TASK: 10B.6.13 CONDUCT A CHEMICAL SURVEY

CONDITION(S): Chemical contamination may be present in an area of operational concern. Monitoring reports do not provide a sufficient picture of the hazard area. Higher headquarters directs a survey to be conducted.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander issues guidance to survey team.
- .2 ____ Survey team prepares to conduct the survey.
 - a. Personnel are dressed in MOPP 4 or assume MOPP 4 before entering the suspected area of contamination.
 - b. M9 detection paper is attached to personnel and vehicles.
 - c. Loads chemical agent detection equipment.
- .3 ____ Survey control party briefs survey team.
 - a. States the amount of time allowed for completion of survey.
 - b. Describes the operational situation as it pertains to the conduct of the survey.
 - c. Describes the enemy and friendly situation.
 - d. States any factual information available about the suspect contaminated area.
 - e. Issues a clear and concise statement of mission to include specific tasks to be accomplished.
 - f. Briefs the survey team on the concept of operation.
 - g. States the specific coordinating instructions.
 - h. Indicates the time of departure and return.
 - i. Identifies primary/alternate routes to and from the suspected area of contamination.
 - j. Identifies administrative and logistical requirements.
 - k. Identifies required forms.
 - l. Identifies required equipment.
 - m. Identifies command and signal procedures.
- .4 ____ Survey team conducts the survey.
 - a. Moves to the suspected area of contamination.
 - b. Survey team commander identifies a starting point for the team IAW initial overlay.
 - c. Survey team commander ensures that the team conducts tests with the M256A1 detector kit at the initial testing point.
 - d. Uses detector paper and chemical agent monitor to take readings at every 200 meter interval until agent reacts with the detector paper or until each team member comes within 200 meters of the attack center.
 - e. Collects samples at selected intervals.
 - f. All team members reach the last test point at approximately the same time.
 - g. Survey team commander determines the initial limits of contamination.

- h. Executes 180 degree turn and proceed backward along the previously used path halfway to the last sampling point.
 - i. Rechecks again for contamination.
 - j. Continues the bracketing technique to refine the initial limits of hazard.
 - k. Survey team commander ensures that all members exit the area using the route established.
- .5 ____ Team commander records the results of the chemical survey.
- a. Annotates the type of agent(s) present within the area.
 - b. Annotates the location of contamination.
 - c. Annotates the type of detector used.
- .6 ____ Survey team completes survey.
- a. Survey team commander reports results to the control party.
 - b. Marks contaminated area.
 - c. Moves to designated decontamination area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit must move to the suspected area of contamination, determine the initial limits and define the actual boundary of contamination within 50 meters accuracy. Submit results of survey back to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10B.6.14 COORDINATE FOR DETAILED EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): The tactical situation permits withdrawal of the unit to the decontamination site. This task is usually performed in conjunction with a detailed individual decontamination. Must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander coordinates for deliberate decontamination.
- a. Coordinates with higher headquarters and decontamination element for the location of decontamination site.
 - b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for routes to the decontamination site.
 - c. Ensures basic skills decontamination is complete (personal wipedown and operator sraydown) prior to leaving the area of operations.
- .2 ____ Company sends advance party to rendezvous with decontamination elements to assist with setup at the decontamination sites.
- a. Company personnel set up detailed company decontamination station.
 - b. Decontamination unit sets up the detailed equipment decontamination station.
 - c. Contaminated unit's main body moves to predecontamination staging area.

.3 ____ Company arrives at the predecontamination staging area.

- a. Prioritization and segregates vehicles based on mission requirements.
- b. Checks vehicles/equipment for contamination.
- c. Crews (except drivers) dismount vehicles.
- d. Checks personnel for contamination and segregates accordingly.
- e. Prepares vehicles for decontamination (buttons up and removes items that cannot be decontaminated using DS2).
- f. Drivers move vehicles/equipment to the equipment decontamination site.
- g. Dismounted crew move to company decontamination site.

.4 ____ Company processes vehicles/equipment through the site.

- a. Contaminated unit follows directions of NBC unit personnel.
- b. Contaminated unit provides traffic control.
- c. Contaminated unit provides site security for decontamination site.
- d. Note: Halfway through the equipment decontamination site, a decontaminated assistant driver takes over for a contaminated driver, who moves to the company decontamination station. Assistant drivers should be the first through individual decontamination site so they are available for this exchange.
- e. Note: After decontamination, Marines from the individual area and vehicles from the equipment decontamination area are reunited.
- f. Drivers move decontaminated vehicles to the decontamination area and upwind of the decontamination site.

.5 ____ Company clears the site.

- a. Decontaminates using decontamination equipment.
- b. Spreads STB over the affected area.
- c. Marks the site.

.6 ____ Company resumes operation.

- a. Continues assigned operational mission.
- b. Continues to monitor the NBC situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company requests detailed equipment decontamination through higher headquarters. The company provides an advance party and prepares for unit decontamination.

TASK: 10B.6.15 PERFORM DETAILED DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): The tactical situation permits withdrawal of the unit to the decontamination site. This unit is located in a predecontamination staging area. Must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company establishes detailed company decontamination station.
- a. Provides two 30 gallon containers, two long-handled brushes, water, STB, M8 paper, and M256 kit for decontamination of individual equipment.
 - b. Prepares STB shuffle pit for overboot contamination.
 - c. Provides scissors or knife to cut away the hood and overboot laces.
 - d. Provides containers to hold discarded overgarments, hoods, overboots, and gloves.
 - a. Designates and makes "hot line."
 - f. Provides M8 paper, skin decontamination kits, and first aid items.
 - e. Provides containers with soapy water, rinse water, sanitizing solution, sponges, and paper towels.
 - h. Supplies a complete set of MOPP gear at the reissue point for each Marine.
- .2 ____ Company processes through detailed decontamination station.
- .3 ____ Company clears the site.
- a. Disposes of used supplies and decontaminates reusable equipment.
 - b. Marks decontamination area.
- .4 ____ Company reconstitutes and resumes operations.
- a. Continues assigned operational mission.
 - b. Continues to monitor the NBC situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company establishes a detailed decontamination station and processes personnel and equipment through the site. The company clears and marks the site.

TASK: 10B.6.16 PROTECT SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT FROM CONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): The company conducts this mission under all battlefield conditions. The company operates under threat of NBC attack or in an active NBC environment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company protects against contaminating interior of vehicles.
- a. Ensures all hatches remain closed when possible.
 - b. Ensures SOP lists entry procedure to be used by a contaminated crewman.
 - c. Ensures crew members exit vehicle while in a contaminated area only to perform critical tasks.
 - d. Ensures maintenance and resupply are delayed whenever possible until after movement to a clear area and decontamination are completed.
- .2 ____ Company avoids contamination of equipment and supplies.
- a. Uses covers to protect equipment and supplies stored outside or on vehicles.
 - b. Covers important equipment items.
 - c. Keeps ammunition covered or in containers as long as possible.
 - d. Covers weapons or disperses them under foliage when possible.
 - e. Covers unsheltered communications equipment.
 - f. Takes special care to protect headsets, microphones, and telephone handsets from contamination.
- .3 ____ Company avoids contamination of food.
- a. Ensures proper packaging of food.
 - b. Ensures proper storage of food.
 - c. Ensures suspected contaminated food is not eaten until approved by medical personnel for consumption.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company personnel prevent or limit contamination of equipment and supplies.

TASK: 10B.6.17 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company is located within a predicted fallout area. The unit mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company prepares for fallout.
- a. Ensures individuals wear protective masks or cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags; roll sleeves down; and wear gloves.
 - b. Covers equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water containers or places them inside shelters or vehicles.
 - c. Uses shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Maintain continuous monitoring using available survey instruments.
- .2 ____ Company-designated personnel monitor fallout.
- a. Maintain total dose information using available total dose rate instruments.
 - b. Ensure exposure is minimized while commander determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible.
 - c. Calculate optimum time of exit.
 - d. Unit commander sends NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required, using secure means when possible.

- .3 ____ Commander develops a contingency plan based on guidance from higher headquarters, the mission, and previous radiation exposure.
- a. Plans for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.
 - b. Ensures that entry or exit procedures are followed to minimize vehicle contamination.

- .4 ____ Company continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK: 10B.6.18 PERFORM HASTY DECONTAMINATION (VEHICLE WASHDOWN)

CONDITION(S): The company has completed operations in a contaminated area. Fallout has ceased, or contamination has been picked up from a contaminated area. The unit is required to select a decontamination site en route to a new location and perform hasty decontamination. Only organic battalion decontamination assets are available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander conducts essential coordination with battalion CP.
- a. Requests hasty decontamination support.
 - b. Notifies the battalion CP of the area for hasty decontamination.
 - c. Establishes communication with PDDE crew.
 - d. Ensures that PDDE crew knows the location of hasty rendezvous area and selected decontamination site.
- .2 ____ Company commander ensures that the decontamination site is set up and operated efficiently.
- a. Ensures that the PDDE crew prepares and operates the vehicle washdown area.
 - b. Ensures site control and security are maintained.
- .3 ____ Contaminated unit prepares decontamination site.
- a. Operates MOPP gear exchange area.
 - b. Assists the PDDE crew in operating the vehicle washdown station.

- .4 ____ Company conducts hasty-decontamination (radiological).
- a. Vehicle commanders maintain the proper interval between vehicles while processing through vehicle washdown station.
 - b. Vehicle commanders ensure that vehicle operators maintain visual contact with each other to know when to move from concealment to washdown area.
 - c. Personnel in armored vehicles secure doors/hatches and remain in the vehicles during the washing process.
 - d. Personnel in wheeled vehicles dismount vehicle during washing process to avoid getting wet and get back into vehicles after the washing process.
 - e. Conducts MOPP gear exchange (if time permits).
 - f. Ensures that battalion PDDE crew covers, marks, and reports contaminated areas.
- .5 ____ Company continues its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Cross contamination is removed from vehicles and equipment. Contaminated material is properly disposed of to limit spread of contamination. If radiological contamination exists, contamination level is brought below .33cGy (rad) per hour. Unit continues mission without sustaining additional casualties from contamination.

10B.7 AIR DEFENSE

TASK: 10B.7.1 TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT

CONDITION(S): The company receives early warning of aircraft in the area. Element personnel detect unknown or hostile aircraft. The element is tactically deployed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company takes active air defense measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Occupies defensive positions.
 - c. Searches assigned sectors for aircraft.
 - d. Identifies and reports presence of aircraft in the area and PIR to higher headquarters.
 - e. Remains concealed and holds fire to avoid revealing its position.
 - f. Leader orders the element to engage.
 - e. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms.
 - h. Reloads weapons following engagement.
 - i. Reports PIR to higher headquarters.
 - j. Evaluates situation and moves platoon position as directed by higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 ____ The company takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking a moving unit.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Disperses vehicles laterally and in depth or vehicle operators continue to move unit.
 - c. Moves vehicles to covered, concealed positions while all personnel prepare to engage the aircraft or increase dispersion.
 - d. Engages nonattacking aircraft only as directed.
 - e. Visually indentifies threat aircraft.
 - f. Reports all aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - g. Leader orders the element to engage.
 - h. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms.
 - i. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
- .3 ____ The element takes active air defense measures against aircraft attacking stationary unit.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. All available personnel immediately engage attacking aircraft.
 - c. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - d. OPs continue to scan their assigned sectors for additional aircraft.
 - e. Visually indentifies attacking aircraft.
 - f. Reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - g. Evaluates situation and moves platoon position as directed by higher headquarters.
- .4 ____ The company takes active air defense measures during convoy movement.
- a. Alerts vehicle commanders of impending attack.
 - b. Disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road and turns to covered, concealed positions if terrain permits.
 - c. Maintains vehicle intervals or increase interval or dispersion, and uses evasive driving techniques.
 - d. Dismounts and takes up firing positions.
 - e. Prepares personnel to fire on orders of the senior individual present or automatically returns fire if an aircraft is attacking.
 - f. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms.
 - e. Reloads weapons following the attack.
 - h. Identifies the aircraft.
 - i. Reports the attack and submits PIR to higher headquarters.

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company destroys or wards off all attacking aircraft.

TASK: 10B.7.2 DEVELOP AIR DEFENSE PLAN

CONDITION(S): The company receives an order from the battalion and must plan to conduct either an offensive or a defensive combat operation. The mission is received in the field, and all planning must be conducted under field conditions. The company may be in an AA or conducting a tactical mission when planning begins. OPFOR air attack is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander establishes priorities for different phases of the operation.
- a. Uses the LAAD unit leader's experience and expertise to develop a plan.
 - b. Determines what area to cover.
 - c. Determines where OPFOR aircraft are expected to be engaged.
 - d. Identifies aircraft avenues of approach.
 - e. Considers critically, vulnerability, recuperability, and threat when determining priorities.
- .2 ____ Company commander employs air defense assets to achieve long-range fires.
- a. Defends the unit's flanks.
 - b. Concentrates fires on avenues of approach.
 - c. Integrates artillery planning into air defense planning to shoot high-explosive, variable time (HE-VT) rounds at attacking helicopters on likely avenues of approach.
 - d. Positions assets to engage enemy aircraft before they reach the unit.
 - e. Selects subsequent and alternate positions.
 - f. Maintains overlapping fires.
- .3 ____ Company commander determines and disseminates air defense weapons control status.
- a. Receives the air defense weapons control status, as determined by the region or area air defense commander, in paragraph 3 of the battalion OPORD.
 - b. Disseminates weapons control status in the company OPORD.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company integrates and synchronizes air defense asset support into the tactical plan. The air defense support provides coverage and protection for the commander's air defense priorities. Air defense assets monitor the early warning net and company command net. Air defense assets must provide early warning of hostile aircraft.

CONDITION(S): The company is tactically employed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the general area. Weapons control status is hold.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The company uses passive air defense measures in a tactical situation.

- a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion) to hide the element and limit its vulnerability.
- b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.
- c. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.
- d. Disperses vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.
- e. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.
- f. Mans OPs (daytime or nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aircraft.
- g. Establishes a listening watch on the air defense early warning net if equipment is available and operational.

.2 ____ The company uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.

- a. Receives briefing from convoy commander (all element personnel).
- b. Camouflages vehicles and equipment before moving out.
- c. Selects column interval based on instructions, mission, and terrain.
- d. Alternates individual and crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks (avenues of approach).
- e. Assigns Marines to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.
- f. Visually identifies threat aircraft.
- g. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.
- h. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.

.3 ____ The company uses passive air defense measures when the element is occupying or displacing.

- a. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the movement order.
- b. Staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns.
- c. Assigns air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintains coverage until element completes movement.
- d. Visually identifies threat aircraft.
- e. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.
- f. Establishes vehicle order of precedence.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company uses passive air defense measures to decrease or eliminate the chances of being detected by enemy aircraft.

10B.8 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10B.8.1 DEVELOP CSS PLAN

CONDITION(S): The company conducts combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company may be in an AA or conducting a tactical mission when planning begins. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander plans for routine resupply.
- a. Ensures company gunnery sergeant collects logistical reports from platoons.
 - b. Ensures XO assesses current and future mission requirements to determine CSS capabilities and requirements.
 - c. Determines current company status and capabilities.
 - d. Determines CSS requirements based on factors of METT-TSL in organizing trains for Class I through X needs.
 - e. Plans for coordination with higher headquarters for support, if needed.
 - f. Ensures XO and company gunnery sergeant complete CSS plan and establishes specifics of the plan.
- .2 ____ The company commander plans for emergency resupply during combat operations.
- a. Ensures company gunnery sergeant collects logistical reports from platoons.
 - b. Ensures XO assesses supply mission.
 - c. Ensures XO and company gunnery sergeant determine capabilities and requirements for CSS operations.
 - d. Ensures company gunnery sergeant establishes CSS capabilities based on company capabilities for LOGPAC.
 - e. Ensures XO and company gunnery sergeant determine CSS requirements based on METT-TSL in organizing trains for Class I through X needs.
 - f. Plans for coordination with higher headquarters for support, if needed.
 - g. Ensures XO and company gunnery sergeant complete CSS plan and establishes specifics of the plan.
- .3 ____ The company gunnery sergeant coordinates with higher headquarters for support, if needed.
- a. Coordinates for CSS elements, responsibilities, supply, maintenance, medical support, and food.
 - b. Coordinates method of resupply (tailgate or service station).

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company plans for the conduct of resupply as required to maintain continuous operations. Logistical information is collected to assist in planning for LOGPAC sites. The plan must be based on CSS requirements and company capabilities.

TASK: 10B.8.2 ORGANIZE COMPANY COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The company conducts combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company operates in an active NBC environment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander/XO organizes echeloned trains.
- .2 ____ Company company gunnery sergeant maneuvers combat trains consisting of maintenance personnel with vehicle, recovery vehicle with crew, and other attached vehicles.
- .3 ____ Company company gunnery sergeant directs movement and employment of combat trains.
 - a. Directs the movement of trains over established road network, if possible.
 - b. During offensive operations, directs the positioning of combat trains about 2 to 5 km to the rear.
 - c. During defensive operations, directs the positioning of trains in the center of the company sector so that maximum security can be provided.
- .4 ____ Company company gunnery sergeant coordinates logistics matters.
 - a. Coordinates logistical matters with XO to ensure company is resupplied.
 - b. Directs recovery teams forward as needed.
 - c. Coordinates with field trains for composition of LOGPACs based on reports received from the platoons.
- .5 ____ Company gunnery sergeant directs resupply operations.
 - a. Leads company LOGPAC forward from LRP to resupply company and leads LOGPAC back to LRP.
 - b. Organizes and directs LOGPAC to conduct routine or supplementary resupply operations using tailgate or service-station method.
 - c. Directs evacuation of KIA, WIA, EPWs, and disabled vehicles.
- .6 ____ Company gunnery sergeant establishes local security for combat trains.
 - a. Directs trains to provide their own local security by establishing OPs for early warning.
 - b. Directs use of vehicle dispersion and camouflage for passive security.
 - c. Directs and coordinates small arms fire of trains for 360-degree coverage.
- .7 ____ Company gunnery sergeant receives and sends logistical reports.
 - a. Receives logistical, personnel, vehicle, and equipment reports from all platoons.
 - b. Sends logistical reports and requests to battalion S4 over company command net.

14 Oct 94

- c. Sends service support to higher headquarters over battalion logistics net.

.8 ____ Company supply NCO directs field trains supply operations.

- a. Assists in organizing procurement of rations, ammunition, fuel, repair parts, and replacements from battalion rear area and in directing movement of these assets to the company on the battlefield.
- b. Ensures all items requested by the company are in the LOGPAC.
- c. Assembles vehicles in company LOGPAC and leads them from field trains to the LRP, where he meets the company gunnery sergeant.
- d. Coordinates with battalion trains to ensure company LOGPAC meets company CSS requirements.
- e. Maintains communications with battalion to ensure company receives all required CSS.
- f. Assists in preparing logistical reports that are sent to battalion headquarters.
- g. Assists battalion field trains in providing local security.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Chat service support (CSS) elements must organize and resupply the company in accordance with unit SOP and the commander's directives.

TASK: 10B.8.3 PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The company is moving or occupying stationary positions. The commander has specified a time by which supply should be completed. OPFOR contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company gunnery sergeant reports personnel status and requests replacements to battalion headquarters/trains.
- .2 ____ Company gunnery sergeant reports vehicle, equipment, fuel, and ammunition statuses to battalion headquarters/trains.
 - a. Requests recovery support, as necessary.
 - b. Requests evacuation support, as necessary.
 - c. Requests resupply of Classes I, III, and V, as required.
- .3 ____ Company commander directs tailgate resupply.
- .4 ____ Company gunnery sergeant/XO coordinates with battalion S4.
 - a. Verifies LRP with support platoon.
 - b. Requests special items not included in routine LOGPAC.
- .5 ____ Unit commander determines priority of Classes I, III, and V and maintenance.
 - a. Specifies order in which platoons will be resupplied.
 - b. Ensures operational vehicles are supplied first.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Ensures nonoperational vehicles receive maintenance support first.
- .6 ____ Company gunnery sergeant guides LOGPAC to company position.
- a. Moves to LRP using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Verifies that proper supplies are present.
 - c. Alerts commander that the LOGPAC is en route,
 - d. Receives an update on the company tactical situation.
 - e. Uses covered and concealed routes into and out of each platoon BP.
- .7 ____ Company gunnery sergeant coordinates actions at LRP.
- a. Cross-levels supplies.
 - b. Provides resupply requirements.
 - c. Updates company roster.
 - d. Picks up and delivers mail.
- .8 ____ Company conducts tailgate resupply activities.
- a. Company gunnery sergeant guides LOGPAC vehicles to each platoon position for resupply.
 - b. Platoon leaders or platoon sergeants guide LOGPAC vehicles to each individual vehicle position within their platoon.
 - c. Disperses LOGPAC vehicles throughout the battle position to avoid clustering around a single vehicle fighting position.
 - d. Guides LOGPAC vehicles to those vehicles with the greatest need in accordance with priorities established by the commander.
 - e. Strictly enforces noise and light discipline to avoid detection of vehicle positions by enemy forces.
 - f. Platoon sergeant relays future needs to company gunnery sergeant.
 - g. Crewmen rotate through Class I point and receive personal items and mail.
 - h. LOGPAC vehicles rotate to each individual battle position until all platoon vehicles have been serviced.
 - i. Once rearming and refueling is complete, LOGPAC vehicles move to a company holding area.
 - j. Upon completion of platoon resupply operations, platoon sergeant reports to the platoon leader and company gunnery sergeant.
 - k. The company gunnery sergeant guides the LOGPAC to the next platoon BP.
 - l. The company gunnery sergeant guides LOGPAC and supply vehicles back to LRP/combat trains.
- .9 ____ Company commander reports completion of the resupply to battalion CP, or:
- .10 ____ XO/company gunnery sergeant coordinates with battalion S4.
- a. Verifies time the LOGPAC will be at LRP.
 - b. Verifies LRP location with the support platoon.
 - c. Requests special items not included in routine LOGPAC resupply.
- .11 ____ Company gunnery sergeant selects resupply site for unit.

14 Oct 94

- a. Ensures site is easily accessible to tracked and wheeled vehicles.
 - b. Ensures site provides cover and concealment.
 - c. Ensures site is located within one terrain feature of unit position.
- .12 ____ Company commander determines priority for Classes I, III, and V and maintenance.
- a. Specifies order in which platoons and attachments will resupply.
 - b. Ensures operational vehicles receive first priority for resupply.
 - c. Ensures nonoperational vehicles receive first priority for maintenance.
- .13 ____ Company gunnery sergeant moves to LRP to receive LOGPAC.
- a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Verifies that normal and requested supplies are present.
- .14 ____ The company gunnery sergeant guides LOGPAC to resupply site.
- a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Alerts commander that LOGPAC is en route.
- .15 ____ Unit prepares to move to resupply site.
- a. Company gunnery sergeant disseminates location and time via a FRAGO or OPORD.
 - b. Prepares vehicle positions for easy identification and reentry upon completion of resupply activities.
 - c. Company gunnery sergeant briefs platoon sergeants on organization of resupply site, specifying locations of medics, maintenance, supply, KIA collection points, and EPW holding area.
- .16 ____ Designated platoon moves to resupply site.
- a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Conducts handoff of sector of responsibility.
- .17 ____ Designated platoon conducts out-of-position resupply.
- a. Platoon leader and wingman move to refuel point.
 - b. Platoon sergeant and wingman move to rearm point.
 - c. Platoon sergeant reports to company gunnery sergeant with actual and anticipated logistics requests.
 - d. Platoon leader and wingman complete refueling and move to rearm point.
 - e. Crewmen rotate through feeding area and receive personal supply items.
 - f. Once rearming and refueling are complete, entire platoon moves to holding area.
 - g. Platoon sergeant reports status to platoon leader and company gunnery sergeant.
 - h. Platoons maintain local security throughout resupply activities.
- .18 ____ Resupplied platoon moves back to defensive position and relieves second platoon for resupply.
- a. Unit commander ensures defense is not degraded during resupply operation.
 - b. Commander adjusts sectors of responsibility to compensate for vehicles at resupply site.

- .19 ____ Company commander reports completion of the resupply to the battalion CP.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Resupply is effected in accordance with unit SOP. Resupply does not expose friendly positions to the enemy. Company resupply is conducted using tailgate or service-station method without loss of security.

TASK: 10B.8.4 PERFORM MEDICAL TREATMENT AND EVACUATION

CONDITION(S): While conducting combat operations, the company has sustained casualties requiring medical treatment and evacuation. Corpsman are available to provide emergency medical aid and evacuation for the company. The commander has designated the trains area as the casualty collection point.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company receives casualty report request for medical treatment and evacuation.
- a. Ensures casualty report includes number, location, and status of casualties.
 - b. Platoon leaders/platoon sergeants report the enemy situation.
 - c. Platoons treat casualties in accordance with unit SOP.
- .2 ____ Company reacts to mass casualty situation.
- a. Company establishes aid station.
 - b. Ensures all casualties are evacuated to aid station.
 - c. Company gunnery sergeant coordinates evacuation using CSS/combat vehicles.
 - d. Corpsmen, with support from other CSS personnel, stabilize casualties.
 - e. Company gunnery sergeant coordinates medical evacuation from battalion.
- .3 ____ Corpsman examine casualties.
- a. Conduct quick visual examination.
 - b. Determine which patients are most seriously ill or injured.
 - c. Move casualties to secure location.
- .4 ____ Corpsman treat casualties.
- a. Determine the general conditions, types of injuries, and need for immediate lifesaving measures.
 - b. Provide emergency medical treatment to stabilize a seriously wounded soldier for transportation to the battalion aid station.
 - c. Provide first aid for minor injuries or illness.
 - d. Initiate casualty tags.
- .5 ____ Company transports casualties requiring further treatment to the battalion aid station.
- a. Moves patients as quickly as possible by any available means using covered and concealed routes.

14 Oct 94

- b. Provides supporting treatment en route.
- .6 ____ Company submits requests and prepares landing site for aeromedical evacuation.
- a. Company gunnery sergeant/XO identifies the best available covered and concealed landing zone.
 - b. Provides security for landing zone.
 - c. Provides number, types of casualties, and patient conditions.
 - d. Medics move casualties to the landing zone and continue treatment.
 - e. Assists the flight crew with loading of casualties.
- .7 ____ Company first sergeant supervises evacuation of KIA.
- a. Submits a casualty report to higher headquarters in accordance with unit SOP.
 - b. Takes custody of government property under control of the KIA.
 - c. Ensures the remains and personal effects of the KIA are evacuated in accordance with unit SOP.
 - d. Prepares recognition and witness statements and forwards them to higher headquarters.
 - e. Updates company personnel roster.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

All WIA are evacuated and treated without causing additional injury. KIA are properly evacuated. Unit provides its own local security.

TASK: 10B.8.5 PERFORM COMPANY MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The company is tactically deployed and is currently engaged in combat. Company maintenance personnel have received requests to repair inoperative equipment. Repair parts are available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander/XO directs unit maintenance program.
- a. Monitors implementation of unit maintenance program.
 - b. Monitors unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports.
 - c. Identifies current or anticipated maintenance problems.
 - d. Coordinates resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters.
 - e. Requests control substitution approval from higher headquarters.
 - f. Approves emergency field repairs.
 - g. Prepares materiel condition status reports.
- .2 ____ Platoon leader/platoon sergeant/section leader supervise operator maintenance.
- a. Monitor performance of PMCS.

- b. Monitor equipment repair parts status.
 - c. Inspect vehicles, weapons, and equipment.
 - d. Coordinate maintenance assistance with company maintenance section.
 - e. Request approval for emergency field repairs from company commander.
 - f. Maintain maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.
 - g. Provide input for materiel condition status report.
- .3 ____ Company personnel perform operator maintenance.
- a. Perform PMCS.
 - b. Perform operator's adjustments in accordance with appropriate TM.
 - c. Notify maintenance chief of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities.
 - d. Perform emergency field repairs.
- .4 ____ Maintenance chief supervises unit-level maintenance.
- a. Organizes unit maintenance personnel.
 - b. Supervises BDAR procedures.
 - c. Supervises Class IX requisition procedures.
 - d. Supervises recovery operations.
 - e. Coordinates maintenance status with platoon/section leaders.
 - f. Requests controlled substitution approval from commander.
 - g. Provides unit maintenance status update to company commander.
- .5 ____ Maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.
- a. Verify fault diagnosis and category of maintenance.
 - b. Acquire required repair parts.
 - c. Repair equipment.
 - d. Perform final inspection of completed work.
 - e. Record completed work on appropriate document(s).
 - f. Notify platoon/section upon completion of repairs.
- .6 ____ Maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles.
- a. Verify location of disabled vehicles.
 - b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicles.
 - c. Inspect vehicles to determine required parts.
 - d. Repair vehicles on site.
 - e. Evacuate nonrepairable vehicles to unit maintenance area.
- .7 ____ Maintenance personnel conduct transactions with battalion maintenance.
- a. Identify category of maintenance.

- b. Correct all unit-level maintenance deficiencies.
 - c. Prepare requires documentation.
 - d. Evacuate equipment to support maintenance.
 - e. Pick up equipment upon notification.
 - f. Verify completion of repairs.
- .8 ____ Maintenance personnel react to battle-damaged vehicle (recoverable).
- a. Request covering fire.
 - b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicle.
 - c. Tow vehicle to a concealed location.
 - d. Remove casualties from vehicle.
 - e. Perform self aid/buddy aid.
 - f. Request medical assistance, if required.
 - g. Evacuate casualties.
 - h. Perform battle damage assessment.
 - i. Repair vehicle, if possible.
 - j. Recover nonrepairable vehicle.
- .9 ____ Maintenance personnel react to battle-damaged vehicle (unrecoverable).
- a. Request direct and supporting fire.
 - b. Move on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle.
 - c. Remove casualties from vehicle.
 - d. Perform self aid/buddy aid.
 - e. Request medical assistance, if required.
 - f. Evacuate casualties.
 - g. Request disposition of unrecoverable vehicle from commander.
 - h. Conduct salvage operations.
 - i. Prepare vehicle for destruction.
 - j. Destroy vehicle on order from commander or designated representative.
- .10 ____ Maintenance personnel perform administrative and support maintenance functions.
- a. Maintain PLL.
 - b. Request repair parts for unit equipment.
 - c. Maintain documents.
 - d. Maintain maintenance control records.
 - e. Maintain publications, tools, and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company vehicles and equipment must be maintained in an operational ready status.

TASK: 10B.6.6 CARE FOR NBC CONTAMINATED CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): The company conducts continuous combat operations under all battlefield conditions. The company is alerted by automatic alarms or automatic masking event that it is under chemical agent attack. The company has casualties.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company personnel care for and evacuate casualties in a chemically or biologically contaminated area.
- a. Position as close to the casualty as practical to facilitate transport of the wounded.
 - b. Determine if the wounded are contaminated.
 - c. Put protective masks on unmasked casualties.
 - d. Continue to perform procedures, avoiding contamination of the wounded if the wounded are not contaminated.
 - e. Decontaminate wounded with M13 and M58 kits prior to loading if they are contaminated.
 - f. Load wounded and position contaminated personnel so that they do not contaminate those not already contaminated.
 - g. Cover contaminated personnel to reduce hazard to those not contaminated.
- .2 ____ Company personnel care for and evacuate casualties in an area contaminated by nuclear radiation.
- a. Position as close to the casualty as practical to facilitate transport of the wounded.
 - b. Determine if the wounded are contaminated.
 - c. Put protective masks on unmasked casualties.
 - d. Continue to perform procedures, avoiding contamination of the wounded if the wounded are not contaminated.
 - e. Decontaminate wounded with M13 and M58 kits prior to loading if they are contaminated.
 - f. Load wounded and position contaminated personnel so that they do not contaminate those not already contaminated.
 - g. Cover contaminated personnel to reduce hazard to those not contaminated.
 - h. Conduct emergency decontamination of casualties by wiping and brushing off dust and dirt prior to loading the vehicle.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company classifies casualties as immediate, minimal, delayed, or expectant. Chemical agents for chemically contaminated personnel are identified. Casualties are treated within the tactical situation.

TASK: 10B.8.7 MAINTAIN COMPANY STRENGTH

CONDITION(S): The company is engaged in combat. Personnel losses and gains have occurred.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company XO/first sergeant collects strength information from subordinate platoons.
 - a. Logs SITREP and other personnel information.
 - b. Verifies strength data.
 - c. Corrects and completes data.
- .2 ____ Company XO/first sergeant processes information.
 - a. Consolidates subordinate element personnel information.
 - b. Updates company roster.
 - c. Prepares strength reports.
- .3 ____ Company headquarters processes replacements.
 - a. Conducts unit welcome/orientation briefing.
 - b. Inspects critical clothing and equipment shortages.
 - c. Coordinates issue of needed items.
 - d. Briefs replacements on duties and responsibilities.
 - e. Briefs replacement on mission, tactical situation, and company policies and procedures.
- .4 ____ Company first sergeant disseminates strength information.
 - a. Briefs commander on unit strength and replacement status.
 - b. Forwards personnel SITREP to battalion S1 section.
 - c. Informs subordinate platoons of projected replacements.
- .5 ____ Company commander performs strength management functions.
 - a. Performs cross-leveling.
 - b. Verifies cross-critical personnel requirements.
 - c. Reviews and approves strength management reports.
 - d. Spot-checks strength information processing.
 - e. Briefs superiors on unit strength and replacement status.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.15
14 Oct 94

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Company morning report, which accounts for 100 percent of company personnel, must be prepared and sent in accordance with unit SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-B-96

MCO 3501.15
14 Oct 94

SECTION 10C
LAN SCOUT PLATOON

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

MPS 10C.1 - COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS

TASK 10C.1.1	. . . . .	X-C-1
	PRODUCE A PLATOON FIRE PLAN	
TASK 10C.1.2	. . . . .	X-C-2
	PERFORM PRECOMBAT CHECKS	
TASK 10C.1.3	. . . . .	X-C-4
	PERFORM REHEARSALS	
TASK 10C.1.4	. . . . .	X-C-5
	PERFORM TACTICAL PLANNING	
TASK 10C.1.5	. . . . .	X-C-6
	EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES	
TASK 10C.1.6	. . . . .	X-C-8
	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC)	
TASK 10C.1.7	. . . . .	X-C-10
	PREPARE FOR TACTICAL OPERATIONS	

MPS 10C.2 - INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE

TASK 10C.2.1	. . . . .	X-C-11
	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	
TASK 10C.2.2	. . . . .	X-C-12
	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	
TASK 10C.2.3	. . . . .	X-C-13
	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST (OP)	

MPS 10C.3 - MANEUVER

TASK 10C.3.1	. . . . .	X-C-16
	PERFORM A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	
TASK 10C.3.2	. . . . .	X-C-17
	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	
TASK 10C.3.3	. . . . .	X-C-18
	PERFORM A PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10C.3.4	. . . . .	X-C-19
	ASSIST A PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10C.3.5	. . . . .	X-C-20
	CONDUCT TACTICAL MOVEMENT	
TASK 10C.3.6	. . . . .	X-C-22
	PERFORM A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10C.3.7	. . . . .	X-C-24
	PERFORM A ZONE RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10C.3.8	. . . . .	X-C-25
	PERFORM AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 10C.3.9	. . . . .	X-C-26
	RECONNOITER AN OBSTACLE AND A BYPASS	
TASK 10C.3.10	. . . . .	X-C-27
	EXECUTE ACTIONS ON CONTACT	
TASK 10C.3.11	. . . . .	X-C-28
	SUPPORT A HASTY ATTACK	
TASK 10C.3.12	. . . . .	X-C-29
	CONDUCT A SCREEN	
TASK 10C.3.13	. . . . .	X-C-30
	EXECUTE A DISMOUNTED PATROL	
TASK 10C.3.14	. . . . .	X-C-31
	CONDUCT A RELIEF IN PLACE	

MPS 10C.4 - MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK 10C.4.1	. . . . .	X-C-32
	EMPLACE/RETRIEVE A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD	
TASK 10C.4.2	. . . . .	X-C-34
	PERFORM DEMOLITION GUARD FORCE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10C.4.3	. . . . .	X-C-35
	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10C.4.4	. . . . .	X-C-35
	RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10C.4.5	. . . . .	X-C-36
	RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10C.4.6	. . . . .	X-C-37
	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10C.4.7	. . . . .	X-C-38
	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10C.4.8	. . . . .	X-C-40
	PERFORM CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION	
TASK 10C.4.9	. . . . .	X-C-41
	CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	
TASK 10C.4.10	. . . . .	X-C-42
	CROSS A RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATED AREA	

MPS 10C.5 - AIR DEFENSE

TASK 10C.5.1	. . . . .	X-C-43
	USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	
TASK 10C.5.2	. . . . .	X-C-43
	TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT	

MPS 10C.6 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK 10C.6.1	. . . . .	X-C-45
	PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS	
TASK 10C.6.2	. . . . .	X-C-47
	PREPARE/EVACUATE CASUALTIES	
TASK 10C.6.3	. . . . .	X-C-48
	PERFORM PLATOON MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10C.6.4	. . . . .	X-C-49
	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION OPERATIONS	

ENCLOSURE (1)

10C.1 COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS

TASK: 10C.1.1 PRODUCE A PLATOON FIRE PLAN

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting defensive preparations in a platoon battle position or assembly area. The platoon commander has received an OPORD or FRAGO from the commander, has issued the platoon OPORD or FRAGO, and has pointed out to each vehicle commander the engagement areas, TRPs, overlapping sectors of fire, alternate and supplementary firing positions, and indirect fire targets. The platoon has coordinated with adjacent platoons and finalizes the defensive plan. Vehicle commanders have occupied hull-down positions in their primary fighting positions.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Each crew produces complete range cards or sector sketches for each primary, alternate, or supplementary firing position within each occupied or prepared battle positions.
 - a. Vehicle bumper number, ammunition, and firing position are identified in upper right corner.
 - b. The vehicle's sector of fire is bounded by double lines indicating its left and right limits.
 - c. Reference point is indicated (on range cards only).
 - d. Each target is indicated by word description, a standard map symbol, a military graphic symbol, a military abbreviation, or combinations of the above.
 - e. Deflection to each target is indicated (on range cards only).
 - f. Range to each card is indicated.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander, or another individual he designates, collects copies of each vehicle's range cards or sector sketches, checks them for completeness and accuracy, and develops a platoon fire plan for each occupied or prepared platoon battle position.
 - a. The platoon's sector is indicated on the plan.
 - b. Individual vehicle positions are indicated.
 - c. OP locations are shown.
 - d. TRPs and engagement areas are indicated.
 - e. Obstacle locations and types are shown.
 - f. Indirect fire targets are indicated.
 - g. Final protective fires (FPF) are depicted, if allocated.
 - h. Range lines are shown.
 - i. A legend is included listing targets in the platoon's sector and the vehicles that can fire on each target, explaining direct fire and indirect fire graphics in the sketch, and explaining obstacles and barriers present in the platoon's sector.
- .3 ____ The platoon commander checks the completed fire plan and distributes it.
 - a. Checks the plan for accuracy and completeness.
 - b. Distributes one copy to each vehicle commander and higher commander.
- .4 ____ The platoon repeats the process for other battle positions.
 - a. A platoon fire plan is produced for each occupied or prepared battle position the platoon is responsible for.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon complete range cards or sector sketches for each vehicle's primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions. The platoon produces a platoon fire plan containing all essential information for each occupied and prepared battle position within one hour of establishing the battle position.

TASK: 10C.1.2 PERFORM PRECOMBAT CHECKS

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning order for an upcoming mission. The warning order specified earliest time for movement and the location of the OPORD. The platoon has sufficient time for thorough preparation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares for upcoming mission.
 - a. Directs precombat checks be performed.
 - b. Coordinates for technical assistance, if required.
 - c. Supervises the precombat checks.
 - d. Identifies and reports uncorrected deficiencies to higher echelon maintenance personnel.
- .2 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks for personnel.
 - a. Ensures Marines are in complete appropriate seasonal uniform.
 - b. Asks questions to ensure Marines have been briefed on current mission/situation.
 - c. Briefs Marines on preventive hot/cold-weather injuries.
- .3 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks for vehicle commander.
 - a. Map is complete with current overlay.
 - b. CEOI is current.
 - c. Vehicle commander has binoculars and night-vision goggles.
 - d. Vehicle commander has a compass.
- .4 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks for vehicles (general).
 - a. Loads according to load plan.
 - b. Ensures vehicles are topped off with fuel.
 - c. Ensures POL package products and small arms lubricants are loaded.
 - d. Ensures water cans are filled.
 - e. Ensures MREs are stowed.
 - f. Ensures weapons cleaning kits are present.
 - g. Ensures first-aid kits are complete.
 - h. Ensures operator's manuals with all changes and LO are present for radios, equipment, weapons.

14 Oct 94

- i. Ensures critical tools and tool kits are present.
 - j. Ensures prepare-to-fire checks are complete.
- .5 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on vehicles.
- a. Performs maintenance IAW before-operations checks in appropriate operators manual.
 - b. Ensures no deadline deficiencies exist.
 - c. Ensures firing circuits are operational.
 - d. Ensures recoil system is correct and functional.
 - e. Ensures sights are clean, uncovered, and operational.
 - f. Ensures covers are off periscopes and weapons.
 - g. Ensures vision blocks are clear.
 - h. Ensures traversing and elevation system is functional.
- .6 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on miscellaneous equipment.
- a. Inspects binoculars.
 - b. Inspects camouflage nets and supports.
 - c. Inspects compasses.
 - d. Inspects night-vision goggles (with spare batteries).
- .7 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on communication equipment.
- a. Ensures radios are operational.
 - b. Ensures speech security equipment is functional.
 - c. Ensures proper frequencies are set.
 - d. Ensures matching units are operational.
 - e. Ensures antennas are tied down.
 - f. Ensures connectors are clean and serviceable.
 - g. Ensures vehicle intercom system is operational.
 - h. Ensures combat vehicle crewman helmets are operational.
 - i. Ensures TA-312/TA-1 is present with batteries.
 - j. Ensures AN/GRA-39 is complete with batteries.
 - k. Ensures WD-1 is on board and serviceable.
 - l. Ensures AN/PRC-77 is complete with assembly pack.
- .8 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on NBC equipment.
- a. Ensures protective clothing is complete.
 - b. Ensures protective mask is complete.
 - c. Ensures mask and hoods are serviceable.
 - d. Ensures nerve agent antidote is available to distribute.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on crew-served weapons.
- a. Ensures weapons are clean and functional.
 - b. Ensures tubes/barrels are clean.
 - c. Ensures spare barrels, cleaning tools, bolts, and ruptured cartridge extractors are present.
 - d. Ensures machine guns are properly mounted/stowed.
 - e. Ensures machine guns are properly mounted to include lock and pins.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's equipment and personnel are checked for serviceability and accountability before specified movement time, and deficiencies are corrected.

TASK: 10C.1.3 PERFORM REHEARSALS

CONDITION(S): Time is available before execution of a task to conduct a rehearsal sufficient time-distance relationship from the Threat exists so the element will not make Threat contact before completing the rehearsal. Sufficient space is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander issues warning order.
- a. Plans rehearsal of all tasks required by mission.
 - b. Plans rehearsal of all contingencies.
- .2 ____ Platoon sergeant forms platoon at designated rehearsal site.
- a. Issues rehearsal order.
 - b. Explains new or unfamiliar tactics/techniques.
- .3 ____ Platoon conducts rehearsal.
- a. Rehearses tasks so platoon understands and is capable of executing tasks.
 - b. Platoon commander conducts AAR to point out mistakes as well as tasks accomplished to standard.
 - c. Vehicle commanders ensure necessary retraining of individual tasks.
 - d. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures necessary retraining of section tasks.
 - e. Repeats rehearsal until all tasks and missions are accomplished to standards.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander reports results of rehearsal to commander.
- a. Prepared for mission.
 - b. Requires more time for rehearsals.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The rehearsal should replicate, as closely as possible, the upcoming task. All members of the platoon thoroughly understand their duties during the conduct of the tasks. Platoon commander checks vehicle commanders knowledge through briefbacks.

TASK: 10C.1.4 PERFORM TACTICAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received at least a warning order and may have received an operations order on an upcoming task.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commanders receive mission.
 - a. Identify the specific tasks located in paragraphs 2 and 3 of the OPORD.
 - b. Identify the implied tasks to accomplish the mission.
 - c. Identify the essential tasks from the list of specific and implied tasks.
 - d. Put the essential tasks in the form of a restated mission that includes who, what, when, where, and why.
- .2 ____ Commanders issue a warning order.
 - a. Issue a warning order immediately after determining the platoon mission.
 - b. Ensure warning order is brief.
 - c. Start the message by saying "Warning Order."
 - d. List addressees.
 - e. Tell subordinates the nature of the operation so they can immediately start preparing.
 - f. Tell subordinates the time the operation is to begin.
 - g. Tell subordinates the earliest time they must be ready to move out.
 - h. Tell subordinates if there are any changes in task organization and what the changes are so they can be executed quickly.
 - i. Tell subordinates the time and place the complete order (if any) will be given.
 - j. Make sure subordinate elements acknowledge receipt of the warning order.
- .3 ____ Commanders make a tentative plan.
 - a. Develop a tentative plan based on METT-TSL.
 - b. Develop alternative courses of action based on the tentative plan.
 - c. Compare alternative courses of action.
 - d. Select the best course of action.
- .4 ____ Commanders initiate necessary movement.
 - a. Coordinate movement route.

- b. Coordinate necessary transportation.
- .5 ____ Commanders perform leader's reconnaissance.
- a. Conduct a reconnaissance.
 - b. Analyze the five military aspects of terrain.
 - c. Determine route of movement.
 - d. Determine formation and technique of movement and areas where the technique or formation may change.
 - e. Determine likely Threat positions and kill zones.
 - f. Determine likely routes around Threat positions.
 - g. Determine likely locations for sector/zone observation.
 - h. Determine likely overwatch positions.
 - i. Determine likely artillery targets.
 - j. Verify map reconnaissance, if possible.
- .6 ____ Commanders complete the plan.
- a. Make final adjustments.
 - b. Put the plan in the five-paragraph order.
 - c. Prepare an operations overlay which graphically depicts the final plan.
- .7 ____ Commanders issue the order.
- a. Ensure the complete orders group is present.
 - b. Issue overlays.
 - c. Give subordinates time to post overlays.
 - d. Check subordinates' overlays to ensure they are posted correctly.
 - e. Brief the entire order in sequence covering all details.
 - f. Fix responsibility for all activities.
 - g. Ensure everyone understands the mission and concept of operations; check through backbriefs.
- .8 ____ Commanders supervise and refine the order.
- a. Refine the plan as the situation changes.
 - b. Commander is located where the most critical events or activities are to take place.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Leaders utilize troop leading steps to plan tactical missions, brief personnel, and platoon plan supports commander's plan and intent. All platoon members are able to briefback and explain platoon plan when directed.

TASK: 10C.1.5 EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received an OPORD and overlay from its parent unit. The platoon is in continuous operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commanders employ terrain index reference system (TIRS).
 - a. Designate each TIRS point with one letter and two numbers in upper right-hand quadrant of the tick mark.
 - b. Use TIRS as a tool to maneuver the element.
 - c. Use TIRS to communicate control measures.
- .2 ____ Commanders employ eavesdrop system.
 - a. Vehicle commanders listen to platoon radio transmission.
 - b. Vehicle commanders stay off the radio unless communication is necessary.
 - c. If part of a message was missed while eavesdropping, the receiving station requests sender to repeat the communication missed upon end of transmission.
- .3 ____ Commanders assist or control attached/OPCON combat support elements.
 - a. Explain mission to element leader.
 - b. Control element, if necessary, by issuing orders to it during operations.
- .4 ____ Commanders control platoon maneuver and fires using graphic control measures.
 - a. Conduct platoon fires and maneuver coordination IAW established control measures.
 - b. Report locations in relation to the applicable control measures.
- .5 ____ Leaders control direct fire.
 - a. Issue fire commands.
 - b. Use reference to TRPs and/or engagement areas.
 - c. Establish and change target priorities, as necessary.
- .6 ____ Leaders control indirect fires.
 - a. Use assigned forward observer to engage or shift from preplanned targets.
 - b. Employ fire support coordination measures to speed the responsiveness of fire support units.
 - c. Change target priorities, methods of engagement, shell/fuze combinations and target effect criteria, as necessary.
 - d. Nominate mortars and/or artillery targets based on known or suspected Threat positions.
 - e. Coordinate for employment of CAS, CIFS, or NGF if available.

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's use of command and control techniques facilitates the tactical plan and ensures the successful accomplishment of the mission.

TASK: 10C.1.6 EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC)

CONDITION(S): The platoon conducts its missions in an active theater of operations against the Threat. Threat intelligence collectors may consist of agents, patrols, long-range reconnaissance elements, refugees, terrorists, special operations elements, indigenous signal collectors.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon employs physical security measures.
- a. Prevents unauthorized vehicle entry into position or areas.
 - b. Selects and mans positions which detect and report Threat intrusion or observation of position or area.
 - c. Prevents civilian access to position or area.
 - d. Established primary and alternate means of communications between positions.
 - e. Established a guard force that precludes unauthorized entry to positions or areas.
 - f. Conducts random security patrols to detect unauthorized personnel before they penetrate the platoon position or area.
 - g. Establishes a reaction force that maintains communications with guard force.
 - h. Reacts with force to destroy or repel Threat intrusions.
- .2 ____ Platoon employs information security measures to protect vulnerable information.
- a. Controls information on a need-to-know basis.
 - b. Does not permit fraternization with civilians.
 - c. Enforces civil-military curfew.
 - d. Does not brief personnel on upcoming operations until they have a need-to-know or, if preparations are of some duration, briefs them and places them in isolation.
 - e. Conducts alert, deployment preparation, and loading procedures to minimize detection.
 - f. Warns personnel not to reveal the details of upcoming operations in their personal mail.
 - g. Uncontrolled maps do not contain friendly order of battle data.
 - h. Combat personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal material such as letters, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.
 - i. Limits classified document holdings to those necessary to accomplish the mission.
 - j. Minimizes reproduction of classified material.
- .3 ____ Platoon employs signal security measures.

14 Oct 94

- a. Uses authentication procedures outlined in unit CEOI and/or systems during all communications.
 - b. Changes call signs and radio frequencies as directed by CEOI.
 - c. Does to use names of persons, equipment, units, and locations over nonsecure communications.
 - d. Avoids unnecessary transmissions.
 - e. Encrypts sensitive information which must be transmitted by electrical means, using an authorized cryptosystem.
 - f. Reports COMSEC discrepancies to the net control station.
- .4 _____ Platoon reduces potential for effective jamming/direction finding when the Threat has integrated electronic warfare and firepower.
- a. Camouflages and conceals communications equipment from Threat line-of-sight.
 - b. Follows SOP for communications during radio silence and emission control conditions.
 - c. Establishes alternate means and alternate routes for communications.
 - d. Observes radio silence when directed.
 - e. Uses directional antennas where possible/practical.
 - f. Uses lowest possible power setting to communicate with desired stations.
 - g. Keeps transmissions as short as possible.
- .5 _____ Platoon takes anti-jamming actions (initiates the following procedures).
- a. Disconnects the RF cable to confirm jamming.
 - b. Increases power.
 - c. Repeats transmission, speaking slowly and distinctly.
 - d. Changes location of radio/antenna.
 - e. Does not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming over the jammed frequency.
 - f. Changes frequency.
- .6 _____ Platoon prevents imitative communication deception (ICD). Uses the following techniques or procedures at all times to prevent ICD.
- a. Correct authentication procedures.
 - b. Authorized brevity lists, prosigns, prowords and operations codes.
 - c. Call signs and frequencies.
 - d. Net discipline.
 - e. Radio listening silence when imposed.
- .7 _____ Platoon employs countersurveillance measure.
- a. Masks or removes all vehicle marking, such as unit or personnel identification and march serial numbers.
 - b. Covers all reflective surfaces with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick to prevent glare.
 - c. Does not use bright engineer tape.

- d. Avoids large concentration of vehicles.
- e. Uses buildings and terrain features in camouflaging vehicles.
- f. Does not strip trees, nor cut too much foliage within vicinity of camouflaged positions.
- g. Uses camouflage nets and erects them correctly.
- h. Uses cut foliage from local areas.
- i. Ensures the area is free of trash and litter and other material such as gas cans, tent liners, and tarps.
- j. Ensures the area is free of personal items such as wash cloths, towels, and underclothing, which contrast with the natural surroundings.
- k. Camouflages freshly dug earth from fighting positions.
- l. Ensures vehicles are at least 50 meters apart (METT-TSL dependent).
- m. Minimizes movement to and from main areas.
- n. Uses existing tracks/roads for movement of vehicles.
- o. Obliterates tracks left by vehicles moving into a defensive position, or continues tracks beyond destination.
- p. Minimizes shadows and moves them when the shadows shift.
- q. Where no shade is present, parks vehicles to avoid facing sun where possible.
- r. Changes deployment action patterns to preclude Threat from predicting future operations or determining locations of concealed units.
- s. Camouflages antennas using natural vegetation.
- t. Keeps antenna height at the lowest level without reducing or hampering communications.
- u. Turns volume and squelch to lowest setting consistent with operational requirements.
- v. Observes noise discipline.
- w. Employs smoke if directed by higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon performs its missions without security breaches.

TASK: 10C.1.7 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment and has been given an order to conduct a tactical operation at a given time.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon sergeant establishes the priority of work for the platoon, as per METT-TSL.
- a. Guard and security.
 - b. Maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
 - c. Resupply of Class III and Class V.
 - d. Weapons cleaning.
 - e. Class I.
 - f. Sleep plan.
- .2 ____ Platoon assumes or upgrades readiness condition (REDCON) status ordered by the company commander to accomplish specified tasks, but does not decrease its REDCON level below that ordered by the commander.
- a. REDCON 4 (minimum security). One man guard, one man local security. Remainder of platoon conducts required preparations, and platoon is prepared to move within one hour of notification.
 - b. REDCON 3 (reduced security). Fifty percent of platoon conducts security, remainder of platoon conducts required preparations, and the platoon is prepared to move within 30 minutes of notification.
 - c. REDCON 2 (stand-to). All equipment stowed (except hot loop and NBC alarms). vehicles and weapons manned (OPs still out), precombat inspections completed, OPORD or FRAGO and graphics issued, prepare-to-fire checks completed, and all maintenance and resupply completed. All vehicles started together on order from platoon commander or platoon sergeant, stand-to reports submitted to platoon by each crew (over hot loop), and platoon commander enters company radio net and sends platoon's stand-to report by unit SOP. The platoon is prepared to move within 15 minutes of notification.
 - d. REDCON 1 (full alert). All personnel mounted on vehicles (OPs in), hot loop and NBC alarms taken in, and platoon is prepared to execute mission immediately.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon is prepared to conduct the operation at the time stated in the OPORD.

10C.2 INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE

TASK: 10C.2.1 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. Threat personnel have surrendered or have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon searches captured prisoners of war.
- a. Removes all weapons and documents.
 - b. Returns personal items of no military intelligence value.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Prisoners from whom personal property is taken are given a written receipt for the property.
 - d. Tags each prisoner of war and each item removed from him with necessary information.
 - e. Leaves the prisoner's of war helmet, protective mask, and gear to protect him from the immediate dangers of the battlefield.
- .2 ____ Platoon segregates captured prisoners of war.
- a. Segregates prisoner's of war by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, and nationality.
 - b. Turns wounded prisoner's of war over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
- .3 ____ Platoon maintains silence among prisoners.
- a. Prevents prisoner of war leaders from giving orders.
 - b. Prevents prisoners of war from planning escape.
 - c. Does not talk in front of prisoners of war except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
- .4 ____ Platoon speeds prisoners/information to the rear.
- a. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant notifies parent unit that prisoners of war have been captured.
 - b. Platoon commander evaluates information gained from prisoners of war for immediate tactical significance.
 - c. Passes information to higher commander or command post.
 - d. Rapidly removes prisoners of war to the rear.
- .5 ____ Platoon safeguards prisoners from harm.
- a. Remove prisoners of war from immediate dangers of the battlefield.
 - b. Does not allow anyone to abuse prisoners of war.
 - c. Treats prisoners of war humanely.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon utilizes the five "Ss" in processing EPWs who are evacuated to the next higher EPW holding areas within six hours of capture.

TASK: 10C.2.2 PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. Threat equipment and documents have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon tags documents and captured equipment with necessary information.
- a. Type of equipment.
 - b. Date and time of capture.
 - c. Place of capture.
 - d. Capturing unit.
 - e. Circumstances of capture.
 - f. Prisoner's name.
- .2 ____ Platoon reports capture of documents/equipment to higher headquarter.
- a. Reports type of document/equipment.
 - b. Reports date and time of capture.
 - c. Reports place of capture.
- .3 ____ Platoon disposes of captured equipment.
- a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the captured equipment in accordance with the disposition instructions.
 - b. Evacuates documents to designated personnel/higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon destroys, secures, marks, and evacuates all captured documents and equipment based on disposition instructions from the parent unit.

TASK: 10C.2.3 ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST (OP)

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment. The platoon has been assigned a sector of responsibility to watch for Threat activity. Threat contact is possible or expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Section/squad leader recons the area to site the OP.
- a. Selects a position that provides good observation of sectors and provides early warning of Threat activities.
 - b. Selects multiple positions if one OP cannot cover the platoon's sector.
 - c. Ensures that positions have overlapping fields of view.
 - d. Ensures that positions provide good cover and concealment.
 - e. Ensures that positions are within small arms supporting range of the platoon.
 - f. Ensures that positions have covered and concealed routes back to the platoon's position.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 ____ Section/squad leader assigns at least two personnel per OP and briefs them-prior to sending them out.
 - a. When, where and how to locate the OP.
 - b. When and how to report.
 - c. When and how to withdraw.
 - d. If and when to fire at a Threat target.
 - e. Challenge and password.
 - f. When they will be replaced.

- .3 ____ The OP personnel collect essential equipment.
 - a. Individual weapons.
 - b. TA1/TA312 telephone.
 - c. MOPP suits and protective masks.
 - d. Binoculars and night-vision goggles and scopes.
 - e. Map and compass.
 - f. Flashlights with filter.
 - e. Helmets and web gear with canteen, first aid pouch, and ammunition pouches.

- .4 ____ If the platoon is to be in position for less than six hours, it establishes a hasty OP.
 - a. Establishes communication between the platoon and its OP's by hooking the telephone into the hot loop wire.
 - b. Camouflages position, vehicles, and equipment.
 - c. Camouflages withdrawal routes, as necessary.
 - d. Reinforces position using logs, rocks, and sandbags.
 - e. Continues to improve position.

- .5 ____ If the platoon is to be in position for more than six hours, it establishes a deliberate OP.
 - a. OP personnel draw additional equipment: shovel, mattock, and pick; M8 chemical agent alarms; and claymore mines, trip flares, colored star clusters, and smoke and fragmentation grenades.
 - b. The OP establishes communication with the platoon by hooking the telephone into the hot loop wire.
 - c. The OP emplaces M8 chemical agent alarms by unit SOP.
 - d. OP personnel prepare a two-man fighting position, chest deep with grenade sump.
 - e. OP personnel camouflage their positions, dirt mound to front, and overhead.
 - f. The OP improves its covered and concealed route to and from OP position and conceals hot loop wire.
 - g. Each OP emplaces claymore mines and trip flares to front and flanks.
 - h. Each OP improves its position.

- .6 ____ Both hasty and deliberate OP personnel develop an OP sketch card.

- a. Depict platoon's position.
- b. Show OP's position and patrol routes.
- c. Show sectors of observation and reference points.
- d. Show small arms fields of fire.
- e. Depict location of obstacles and booby traps.
- f. Show platoon's TRP's and engagement area.
- g. Show indirect-fire targets.
- h. Depict platoon's trigger point and break point.
- i. Outline all dead space.

.7 ____ The platoon operates the OP.

- a. Searches assigned sectors continuously, using search techniques.
- b. Conducts a communication check every 30 minutes or by unit SOP.
- c. Switches observers within OP every 20 to 30 minutes; more often in extreme cold or wet conditions.
- d. Sets up and inspects night-vision devices prior to darkness to ensure they are complete and operational.
- e. Conducts surveillance using night-vision devices during hours of darkness.
- f. Uses senses to determine Threat activities: sight, sound, smell, touch (vibrations), and common sense.
- g. Maintains noise, light, and liter discipline.
- h. Collects and reports tactical information by hot loop to alert the platoon to Threat activities in sector.
- i. Challenges unrecognized personnel approaching the OP.
- j. Returns to the platoon's position only on order, when relieved, or to avoid capture.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon establishes OP's which provide early warning of Threat activities within its assigned sector of responsibility.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10C.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10C.3.1 PERFORM A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon must move from one location to another along a designated route. Threat contact is not likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander plans the mission IAW troop leading procedures.
 - a. If not already specified, determine speed and interval.
 - b. Chooses appropriate formation, either column or staggered column.
- .2 ____ Platoon reconnoiters route to the SP.
 - a. Determines suitability of the route.
 - b. Determines travel time to the SP.
- .3 ____ Platoon crosses SP/LD.
 - a. Departs the assembly area at the appropriate time to cross the SP at the +/- time specified in the operation order (OPORD).
 - b. Crosses the SP at the speed, interval, and formation specified in the OPORD.
- .4 ____ Platoon maintains security during movement.
 - a. Maintains 360-degree air guards.
 - b. Maintains all-around local security through crew sectors of observation and weapon's orientation.
 - c. Maintains contact with lead, flank, or rear security elements of larger march unit (if appropriate).
- .5 ____ Platoon performs actions at halts.
 - a. If the halt is scheduled:
 - 1) Clears the route by assuming a coil or herringbone.
 - 2) Establishes all-around security.
 - 3) Accomplishes the actions planned for in the OPORD/movement plan.
 - 4) Performs maintenance as time permits.
 - 5) Places dismounted OP's on key terrain surrounding the platoon position.
 - b. If the halt is unscheduled:
 - 1) Clears the route by assuming a coil or herringbone.
 - 2) Immediately seeks the cause of the halt.
 - 3) Platoon commander determines a course of action.
 - 4) Platoon commander reports to higher headquarters, if appropriate.
 - 5) Continues movement.
 - c. Platoon clears the RP.
 - 1) Arrives at the designated RP and continues movement.

2) Completes movement in accordance with OPORD.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon reaches its destination without personnel or equipment loss, or breaches of security, and within specified times.

TASK: 10C.3.2 OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon has been ordered to move to an assembly area. Threat contact is possible up to platoon level.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander plans occupation of the assembly area.
 - a. Conducts a map reconnaissance and assigns tentative vehicle locations.
 - b. Develops a tentative plan for defense of the assembly area.
 - c. Identifies and briefs the quartering party on the tentative occupation plan.
- .2 ____ Platoon performs quartering party duties.
 - a. Conducts a reconnaissance of the assembly area.
 - b. Checks concealment from air and ground observation.
 - c. Checks for good drainage on the surface that supports vehicles.
 - d. Checks for good exits, entrances, and adequate internal roads or trails.
 - e. Checks for space for dispersion of vehicles, personnel, and equipment.
 - f. Checks a suitable landing site nearby for a helicopter (if necessary).
 - g. Marks or removes obstacles, mines, or booby traps.
 - h. Marks entrances and exits of assembly area.
 - i. Marks vehicle locations.
 - j. Reports status to platoon commander or to leader of quartering party.
 - k. Moves to RP to perform guide duties.
 - l. Guides vehicles to designated areas.
- .3 ____ Platoon occupies the assembly area.
 - a. Meets guides and moves to designated vehicle locations.
 - b. Moves into assembly area without slowing or halting on route of march.
 - c. Establishes communications within the platoon and higher headquarters.
- .4 ____ Platoon establishes security.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Designates vehicle/section fighting positions on the perimeter of the assembly area that permit observation and fires on all mounted/dismounted avenues of approach into the
 - b. Emplaces mines and early warning devices for protection.
 - c. Establishes dismounted OP's/LP's outside the perimeter of the assembly area.
 - d. Conducts mounted/dismounted security patrols at random intervals in and around the assembly area.
- .5 ____ Platoon prepares to depart the assembly area.
- a. All platoon personnel are fully alert and ready to conduct combat operations at the time specified in the OPORD.
 - b. Secures and properly stows tools, equipment, and personal effects.
 - c. Communicates with all platoon vehicles and higher headquarters.
 - d. Vehicle commanders confirm that all personnel and equipment are mounted and ready to move, consistent with the established readiness condition.
 - e. Opens the platoon net correctly and requires proper authentication.
 - f. Performs slow count to start vehicles (if permitted by OPORD or SOP).
 - g. Enters the higher headquarters net correctly and uses proper authentication.
 - h. Provides higher headquarters with a status of operational/nonoperational vehicles.
- .6 ____ Platoon departs the assembly area.
- a. Recovers any mines or early warning devices emplaced.
 - b. Takes steps to reduce signs of the unit's presence in the area prior to departure.
 - c. Vehicles depart the area without bunching up along designated route.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Conducts quartering party activities, occupies assembly area, establishes security that provides early warning, and departs in accordance with platoon commanders plan.

TASK: 10C.3.3 PERFORM A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is required to pass through a stationary force. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant coordinates the passage.
- a. Sends a representative to the contact point to meet with stationary unit representative.
 - b. Coordinates composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
 - c. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
 - d. Coordinates recognition signals and guide activities.

- e. Coordinates attack positions or assembly areas.
- f. Coordinates CEOI information.
- g. Coordinates moving unit arrival time at contact points.
- h. Coordinates procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat support service.
- i. Coordinates release points.
- j. Coordinates procedure for handover of the battle or Threat contact.
- k. Coordinates Threat situation.
- l. Coordinates friendly situation.
- m. Coordinates barriers/minefields/obstacles.

.2 ____ Platoon executes the passage.

- a. Platoon commander issues FRAGO containing pertinent information for passage execution.
- b. Arrives at the contact point at the time specified and displays the proper recognition signals.
- c. Picks up guides and moves through passage lanes without halting.
- d. Employs stationary force indirect fires (as necessary).
- e. Uses stationary force service support assets (as necessary).
- f. Completes the passage by the time specified in the higher headquarters OPORD.
- g. Reports completion of passage to next higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made in accordance with the unit plan and SOP. The platoon conducts the passage without loss due to fratricide. The platoon is able to start execution of its next mission without delay.

TASK: 10C.3.4 ASSIST A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is required to assist the passage of another force through its position. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander plans to assist passage of another unit with passing unit or higher headquarters.

- a. Coordinates composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
- b. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
- c. Coordinates recognition signals and guide activities.
- d. Coordinates attack positions or assembly areas.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- e. Coordinates CEOI information.
- f. Coordinates moving unit arrival time at contact points.
- g. Coordinates procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat support service.
- h. Coordinates release points.
- i. Coordinates procedure for handover of the battle or Threat contact.
- j. Coordinates Threat situation.
- k. Coordinates friendly situation.
- l. Coordinates barriers/minefields/obstacles.
- m. Issues FRAGO containing pertinent information to the platoon.
- n. Locates his vehicle where he can best control his platoon.

.2 ____ Platoon deploys to assist passage.

- a. Establishes contact points if not directed by higher headquarters.
- b. Establishes passage points.
- c. Establishes overwatch positions.
- d. Reconnoiters and marks routes for passing unit.
- e. Marks reserve targets on obligated routes.

.3 ____ Platoon guides passing units.

- a. Guides the passing unit along specified routes to designated location.
- b. Reports completion of the passage.
- c. Closes passage lanes through obstacles.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made in accordance with the unit plan and SOP. The platoon assists the passing unit so that no loss occurs to personnel or equipment during the passage.

TASK: 10C.3.5 CONDUCT TACTICAL MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The platoon must move from one location to another. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon moves on designated axis/route.

- a. Moves in designated formation and IAW designated techniques of movement.
- b. Reports control measures.
- c. Maintains mutual support and security.

- .2 ____ Platoon executes traveling.
- .3 ____ NOTE: Threat contact is not likely.
 - a. Platoon commander chooses appropriate formation, either column, staggered column, vee, or spilt vee.
 - b. Platoon commander initiates movement for traveling.
 - c. Maintains orientation along the designated route or axis.
 - d. Maintains continuous movement.
 - e. Maintains interval and dispersion between vehicles as terrain and weather permit.
 - f. Vehicles disperse to prevent destruction in the event of an unexpected air or ground attack.
 - g. Individual vehicles use terrain-driving techniques to reduce exposure.
 - h. Maintains visual contact between lead and trail element.
 - i. Maintains section integrity for vehicles.
 - j. Maintains visual contact between the sections for the duration of the movement.
 - k. Vehicle commanders maintain areas of responsibility for observation and fire to ensure 360-degree security.
- .4 ____ Platoon executes traveling overwatch.
 - a. Threat contact is possible.
- .5 ____ Platoon commander chooses appropriate formation, either column, staggered column, vee, or spilt vee.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander initiates movement for traveling overwatch.
- .7 ____ Maintains orientation along the designated route or axis.
- .8 ____ Maintains contact between the sections for the duration of the movement.
- .9 ____ Individual vehicles use terrain-driving techniques to reduce exposure.
- .10 ____ Lead element moves continuously.
- .11 ____ Trail element moves at variable speeds and may halt periodically on terrain features to overwatch the movement of the lead element.
- .12 ____ Maintains visual contact between lead and trail element. Lead element may be required to slow down if contact with trail element is lost.
- .13 ____ Trail element maintains enough distance behind lead element so that Threat fires directed at the lead element will not prevent trail element from firing and maneuvering in support.
- .14 ____ Maintains section integrity.
- .15 ____ Vehicle commanders maintains 360-degree security for his vehicle.
- .16 ____ Dismounts scouts as necessary to provide security.
 - a. Platoon executes bounding overwatch.
- .17 ____ Threat contact is expected.
 - a. Maintains orientation along the designated route or axis.

- b. Maintains visual contact between bounding and overwatch elements whenever possible, depending on terrain.
- c. Uses terrain-driving techniques.
- d. Dismounts scouts, as necessary, to provide security.
- e. Vehicle commanders maintain all-around security.

- .18 ____ Platoon commander establishes positioning of sections.
- .19 ____ Platoon commander selects the appropriate formation based on METT-TSL, either vee or spilt vee.
- .20 ____ Platoon commander ensure immediate direct-fire support for the bounding element by the overwatch element.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The tactical movement used must provide for the security and speed of the platoon based on the tactical situation and the commander's guidance. The execution of each tactical movement must be completed in accordance with unit SOP and factors of METT-TSL.

TASK: 10C.3.6 PERFORM A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the platoon will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon deploys.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation, either vee, or spilt vee.
 - b. Uses techniques of movement specified in OPORD.
- .2 ____ Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
- .3 ____ Dismounts scouts as necessary to gather information and provide security.
- .4 ____ Platoon collects information about the route and adjacent terrain.
 - a. Determines trafficability along the route.
 - b. Locates and evaluates all bridges along the route.
 - c. Locates and evaluates fords and/or crossing sites near bridges.
 - d. Evaluates road surface of the route to include width.
 - e. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
 - f. Locates and evaluates all underpasses and tunnels.
 - g. Identifies and evaluates all restrictive curves and steep grades along the route.
 - h. Identifies and evaluates all other restrictive passages.
 - i. Locates and evaluates bypasses of all restrictive passages.

- j. Completes and confirms map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and adjacent terrain.
 - k. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates along the route.
 - l. Reconnoiters all built-up areas along the route.
 - m. Reconnoiters all lateral routes.
 - n. Determines existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.
- .5 ____ Platoon identifies 65% of Threat forces that can influence the route.
- a. Determines Threat location to six-digit grid.
 - b. Determines Threat strength.
 - c. Determines Threat composition.
 - d. Determines Threat activity.
 - e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
 - f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
 - g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).
- .6 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares a route classification overlay.
- a. Shows beginning and end coordinates of the route.
 - b. Shows the trace of the route.
 - c. Shows all restrictions to traffic flow (include bypass capability and classification data on all restrictive passages).
 - d. Shows all sharp curves and series of curves.
 - e. Shows level grade railroad crossings.
 - f. Shows length and width of constrictions.
 - g. Shows percentage of slope on steep grades.
 - h. Shows overall capability of the route.
 - i. Reports terrain information by submitting route classification overlay.
 - j. Reports terrain information by submitting obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must collect and report information on dominant and key terrain and Threat forces (squad size or greater), and reconnoiter the assigned route and lateral routes. It must report all route information and retain freedom, to maneuver.

TASK: 10C.3.7 PERFORM A ZONE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct a zone reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the platoon will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon deploys in appropriate formation and uses techniques of movement specified in element OPORD.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation either vee, or spilt vee.
 - b. Uses appropriate organization.
 - c. Uses techniques of movement specified in OPORD.
- .2 ____ Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
 - a. Retains freedom, to maneuver.
 - b. Dismounts scouts as necessary to gather information and provide security.
- .3 ____ Platoon collects and records terrain information.
 - a. Determines trafficability of any major route.
 - b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the zone.
 - c. Gathers intervisibility information.
 - d. Locates and evaluates all bridges within the zone.
 - e. Locates and evaluates fords and/or crossing sites near all bridges within the zone.
 - f. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
 - g. Locates and evaluates all underpasses and tunnels.
 - h. Determines existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.
 - i. Locates a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles and contaminated areas.
- .4 ____ Platoon identifies 65% of Threat forces that can influence the route.
 - a. Determines Threat location to six-digit grid.
 - b. Determines Threat strength.
 - c. Determines Threat composition.
 - d. Determines Threat activity.
 - e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
 - f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
 - g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).
- .5 ____ Platoon commander reports terrain information.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must collect and report information on dominant and key terrain and Threat forces (squad or larger) within the zone. The platoon will orient on the reconnaissance objective, retain freedom to maneuver, and gain and maintain contact if Threat is present.

TASK: 10C.3.8 PERFORM AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the platoon will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Platoon deploys in appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified on OPORD.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation, either vee or split vee.
 - b. Uses technique of movement specified in OPORD.
- .2 ____ Platoon conducts the reconnaissance and dismounts scouts as necessary to gather information.
- .3 ____ Platoon collects and records terrain information.
 - a. Determines trafficability of all major routes.
 - b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area.
 - c. Locates and evaluates all bridges within the area.
 - d. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area.
 - e. Locates and evaluates all tunnels and underpasses.
 - f. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers in the area.
 - g. Locates a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
 - h. Locates landing or drop zones.
 - i. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates the area, if required.
 - j. Determines the existence and extent of NBC contamination within area, if required.
- .4 ____ Platoon identifies 65% of Threat forces within the area.
 - a. Determines Threat locations to a six-digit grid.
 - b. Determines Threat strength.
 - c. Determines Threat composition.
 - d. Determines Threat activity.
 - e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
 - f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
 - g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 ____ Platoon reports information to higher headquarters.
- a. Submits overlay of area (if required).
 - b. Submits obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator/trainer must know the size/composition of the OPFOR, which may be up to company/team in size, in order to assess successful task accomplishment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must collect and report information on Threat forces (squad or larger), orient on the reconnaissance objective, retain freedom to maneuver, and gain and maintain contact with the Threat, if present.

TASK: 10C.3.9 RECONNOITER AN OBSTACLE AND A BYPASS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting reconnaissance operations and encounters an obstacle which impedes movement. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 ____ Platoon reports and overwatches obstacle.
- a. Scouts discovering obstacle deploy in an overwatch position and report.
 - b. Platoon commander reports obstacle to higher headquarters (SALUTE).
 - c. An element moves to a position overwatching the obstacle.
 - d. Employs indirect fires to suppress known or suspected Threat positions (if the use of indirect fire is prudent).
- .2 ____ Platoon establishes security and locates a bypass.
- a. Locates bypass on either side of obstacle.
 - b. Moves to far (Threat) side of obstacle and establishes forward OP's.
 - c. Develops bypass report while moving to establish OP.
 - d. One squad moves to obstacle and dismounts local security.
 - e. Remaining squad leaders move their vehicles to the flanks to provide flank security.
- .3 ____ Platoon sergeant reconnoiters the obstacle and prepares reports.
- a. Moves to the near side of the obstacle.
 - b. Reconnoiters obstacle for trip wires, mines, and other booby traps.
 - c. Determines if the obstacle can be breached or cleared with organic assets.
 - d. Receives bypass reports from squad leaders.
 - a. Reports results of reconnaissance to platoon commander.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander reports results and submits recommendations to higher headquarters.

14 Oct 94

- a. Sends report via designated means.
- b. Sends recommendation to use bypass around obstacle, no assistance required, or
- c. Sends recommendation there is no bypass around obstacle, assistance required, or
- d. Sends recommendation there is a difficult bypass around obstacle, assistance required.

.5 ____ Platoon prepares to continue mission.

- a. Squad vehicles pick up local security at obstacle and return to forward OP.
- b. Platoon bypasses obstacle and prepares to resume mission.
- c. If bypass is not possible, platoon provides overwatch and local security of obstacle until arrival of breaching force.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must perform a reconnaissance of the obstacle, locate any bypasses and provide the necessary information to the commander in the obstacle report in accordance with unit SOP.

TASK: 10C.3.10 EXECUTE ACTIONS ON CONTACT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving and encounters a Threat force of platoon size which is in hasty defensive positions. The Threat platoon is composed of tanks or personnel carriers or a combination of both. The platoon/section may or may not be engaged by the Threat.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Element deploys and reports (SALUTE).
 - a. Scouts who are engaged return fire.
 - b. All scouts that see or are engaged by Threat elements send an accurate spot report to the platoon commander.
- .2 ____ Element develops the situation.
 - a. Platoon commander moves to a position where he can best observe the situation.
 - b. Scout section in contact gathers information about Threat position and equipment.
 - c. Scout section not in contact moves to flanks of Threat position to further refine information about the Threat.
 - d. Platoon commander correctly reports activity of Threat IAW SALUTE format.
 - e. On order, scouts provide continuous suppression on Threat position (normally indirect fires).
 - f. Platoon commander makes an assessment of Threat activity within his sector.
 - g. Platoon commander determines covered and concealed approaches into the flank of the Threat position(s) through reports from the scout sections.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander chooses a course of action.
 - a. Scouts recommend a course of action.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Platoon commander considers higher command's intent.
- c. Platoon commander considers critical tasks of primary mission.
- d. Platoon commander chooses from courses of action available at his level.

.4 ____ Platoon commander reports a course of action.

- a. Reports a course of action to commander (Course of action is within platoon's capability), or
- b. Recommends a course of action requiring support. (Course of action is beyond platoon's capability.)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must fix the Threat forces, recommend a course of action to the commander while retaining sufficient combat power and freedom to maneuver to successfully continue the mission. No more than one vehicle/crew lay be lost to Threat fire.

TASK: 10C.3.11 SUPPORT A HASTY ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon has identified a Threat tank or motorized rifle platoon in hasty defensive positions, has performed its action on contact, and is ordered to support a hasty attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon reconnoiters the Threat.

- a. Confirms the size, type of equipment, and disposition of the Threat.
- b. Confirms the position and orientation of Threat weapon systems and barriers.
- c. Locates the flanks of the Threat.
- d. Determines if the Threat is supported by nearby units.
- e. Correctly reports activity of Threat forces IAW SALUTE format.

.2 ____ Platoon/section assists maneuver elements.

- a. Locates last covered and concealed position for the maneuver element, short of the Threat position.
- b. Assists/guides maneuver element into assault position.
- c. Screens Threat flank of maneuver element during conduct of the assault.

.3 ____ Platoon/section establishes a base of fire element (if required).

- a. Suppresses Threat with indirect fires.
- b. Suppresses Threat with long-range direct fires (if required).
- c. Ceases direct fires when ordered or when fires are masked by assaulting element.

.4 ____ Platoon performs consolidation activities.

- a. Once assault is complete, moves to Threat location to process captured personnel, documents, and equipment.
 - b. Once assault is complete, assumes positions forward and to the flanks of maneuver element to provide early warning of Threat counterattack.
 - c. Sends status report to higher headquarters.
- .5 ____ Platoon performs reorganization activities (as necessary).
- a. Reassigns personnel to fill key positions and mans key weapon systems.
 - b. Redistributes ammunition and equipment.
 - c. Treats and evacuates casualties.
 - d. Performs battle damage assessment.
 - e. Reports status to higher headquarters.
 - f. Provides information on killed, wounded, missing, and captured personnel to parent unit as soon as possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon guides the maneuver element into position and, if necessary, becomes the base of fire and provides indirect fire support onto the Threat. No more than one vehicle/crew is lost to Threat direct fire.

TASK: 10C.3.12 CONDUCT A SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to screen a larger force. Threat situation is unknown but may be up to company in size.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon deploys to screen location.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation, either vee or split vee.
 - b. Uses technique of movement specified in OPORD.
- .2 ____ Platoon establishes screen.
 - a. Reconnoiters/selects specific locations.
 - b. Reports actual OP locations to higher headquarters.
 - c. Establishes local security.
 - d. Improves positions.
 - e. Coordinates observation/fields of fire by making contact with adjacent OPs.
 - f. Confirms indirect fire plan.
 - g. Emplaces hasty obstacles (if applicable).
 - h. Platoon sergeant reconnoiters subsequent screen lines.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 ____ Platoon conducts screening operations.
 - a. Maintains continuous surveillance of all named areas of interest or avenues of approach into sector.
 - b. Provides early warning of Threat Approach.
 - c. Conducts irregularly scheduled mounted or dismounted patrols between OPs to cover dead space.

- .4 ____ Platoon detects all Threat elements entering the platoon sector.
 - a. Identifies, reports, and maintains contact with reconnaissance patrols.
 - b. In coordination with other combat element, destroys reconnaissance patrols (if required).
 - c. Maintains contact with the Threat until ordered to break contact.
 - d. Impedes and harasses the Threat by controlled use of artillery fires.

- .5 ____ NOTE: The counter-reconnaissance battle normally requires the scout platoon to augment other combat elements. Scouts function as the acquisition force and the tank or infantry augmentation force serves as the reaction/destruction force. The scout platoon may be required to engage with direct fire if other forces are unavailable, but this is the least desirable role for scouts in the counter-reconnaissance fight.

- .6 ____ Platoon displaces to a subsequent screen line.
 - a. Platoon commander requests permission to displace.
 - b. Displaces most threatened OPs first.
 - c. Continues to adjust indirect fires.
 - d. Maintains contact with advancing Threat elements.
 - e. Reports when set on subsequent screen line.
 - f. Platoon commander keeps higher headquarters informed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The screen must be established so that early warning of Threat activity is provided to the parent unit, and if Threat contact is made, no more than one vehicle/crew is lost to Threat direct fire.

TASK: 10C.3.13 EXECUTE A DISMOUNTED PATROL

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to execute a dismounted patrol with its organic personnel and equipment. Threat contact is possible up to platoon size.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander prepares for the mission.
 - a. Plans organization of patrol.
 - b. Effects coordination for special equipment requirement (such as demolitions).

- c. Plans transportation.
- d. Plans departure and reentry of friendly lines.
- e. Coordinates indirect fire plan.
- f. Plans primary and alternate routes.
- g. Plans rally points.
- h. Issues the order to patrol members.

.2 ____ Platoon conducts patrol.

- a. Departs from friendly lines.
- b. Conducts mission.
- c. Maintains all-round security.
- d. Collects/records information about the objective (SALUTE).
- e. Conducts actions on Threat contact.
- f. Conducts actions at rally points.
- g. Reenters friendly lines.

.3 ____ Platoon commander debriefs patrol members.

- a. Prepares patrol report.
- b. Reviews patrol report with patrol members to ensure accuracy and completeness.
- c. Submits completed patrol report to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The patrol must comply with the unit plan. It must depart friendly lines at the specified time and move close enough to the objective to accomplish the mission. The patrol must return to the parent unit without loss of personnel and equipment to report the gathered information.

TASK: 10C.3.14 CONDUCT A RELIEF IN PLACE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. It has been ordered to relieve or be relieved by another element. Threat contact is not likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander coordinates for the relief.

- a. Determines assembly areas for element before or after relief.
- b. Determines sequence of vehicle relief.
- c. Determines what equipment, if any, will be switched.
- d. Enforces effective camouflage.

- a. Enforces minimal radio communications.
 - f. Enforces light and noise discipline.
 - g. Participates in parent unit's deception plan.
 - h. Coordinates actions if Threat contact is made during the relief.
 - i. Coordinates for assumption or turn-over of combat support assets.
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for the relief.
- a. Prepares equipment for quick removal or for swap with incoming/outgoing element.
 - b. Prepares necessary range cards, sector sketches, minefield records, and prestocked supplies for transfer to incoming element.
 - c. Makes a reconnaissance of new positions.
 - d. Reports preparations are complete for the relief.
- .3 ____ Platoon conducts the relief.
- a. Meets incoming/outgoing element at a designated point.
 - b. Guides incoming element to new position in the determined sequence of relief.
 - c. Effects transfer of equipment, if required.
 - d. Outgoing element leader/commander remains in charge until the entire incoming element is in place and prepared to assume the mission.
 - e. Accepts responsibility for squad/section sectors of observation.
 - f. Reports completion of relief.
 - g. Reports outgoing element clear of old area of responsibility.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The relief is conducted, on time, without degrading sector coverage or operational security, and without fratricide.

10C.4 MOBILITY AND AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK: 10C.4.1 EMLACE/RETRIEVE A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. Mines from basic load are available, and use of mines has been allowed. Not Threat contact is expected while laying or retrieving mines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander reports intentions. Requests authorization to emplace minefield.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander reports intentions.
 - a. Selects location to block most likely avenue of approach.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Ensures site will tie in with natural obstacles.
 - c. Ensures site can be covered by direct fires and observation.
- .3 ____ Platoon establishes security.
- a. Designates a security element.
 - b. Positions element to provide local security until mines have been emplaced.
- .4 ____ Platoon installs mines.
- a. Reports initiation and location of mine emplacement.
 - b. Selects and marks mine locations.
 - c. Emplaces, but does not arm, mines.
 - d. Records the minefield.
 - e. Arms and camouflages mines, starting with row nearest the Threat.
 - f. Collects and stores safeties, shipping plugs, and so forth, pending recovery of mines. (Storage location must be known to all subordinate leaders.)
 - g. Marks minefield to include safety lanes. (Markings must only be visible from friendly side.)
 - h. Recovers security element.
 - i. Reports completion to higher headquarters.
 - j. Sends copy of completed minefield records to parent unit.
- .5 ____ Platoon retrieves mines.
- a. Receives orders to retrieve minefield.
 - b. Emplaces security.
 - c. Brings safeties, shipping plugs, and so forth, for the recovery.
 - d. Using minefield records, disarms mines, starting with row nearest friendly positions.
 - e. Removes and stores mines for use again.
 - f. Reports completion of retrieval.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon plans and emplaces the mines, without casualties, to provide local security or to cover deadspace. Retrieves all mines prior to departure.

TASK: 10C.4.2 PERFORM DEMOLITION GUARD FORCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is designated as a demolition guard force and is required to accept a reserve demolition target. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon receives control of the demolition target.
 - a. Makes positive identification check with engineers.
 - b. Coordinates with engineers to identify traffic control and roadblock locations.
 - c. Coordinates with engineers to receive current Threat and friendly situation.
 - d. Receives briefing on minefield record in complete detail from engineers.
 - e. Receives briefing on the target folder in complete detail from engineers.
 - f. Confirms the time required and procedures to change demolition state from "1" (SAFE) to "2" (ARMED).
 - g. Briefs members of the firing party on specific responsibilities.
- .2 ____ Platoon guards the target.
 - a. Provides far side, near side, and demolition site security for the target.
 - b. Obtains clarification (if necessary) from higher headquarters as to whether the guard is authorized to execute the target on his own initiative if it is in danger of capture.
 - c. Develops a tactical plan for the demolition guard to safeguard the activities of the firing party, to include withdrawal after the target is fired.
 - d. Protects the target against all types of attack.
- .3 ____ Platoon fires the demolition.
 - a. The far side security withdraws to the near side of the demolition target prior to becoming decisively engaged.
 - b. The firing party arms the demolition, on order.
 - c. Withdraws target guard immediately prior to firing demolition.
 - d. Fires the demolition, on order.
 - e. Demolition guard force provides for the firing party until target is executed.
 - f. Reports results of execution to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon receives the reserve target and guards/destroys the target as directed.

TASK: 10C.4.3 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and that the platoon must implement actions to minimize casualties and damage. No Threat contact is anticipated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon implements defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.
- a. Platoon commander issues warning order to the platoon.
 - b. Places vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.
 - c. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment; ties down essential antennas; takes down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.
 - d. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.
 - e. Zeros dosimeters.
 - f. Secures loose, flammable, and explosive items, and food and water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.
 - g. Ensures individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs.
 - h. Conducts periodic monitoring.
- .2 ____ The platoon takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation (FM 3-4, Chapter 3).
- a. Conducts periodic monitoring.
 - b. Reports all dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon hardens positions and equipment, conducts periodic monitoring, and is able to continue its tactical mission following the attack.

TASK: 10C.4.4 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom-shaped cloud.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes immediate protective action.
- a. Buttons up if mounted; drops to the floor if in shelter; or drops to the ground if in the open. Remains protected until blast effects have passed.
 - b. Reestablishes communications.
 - c. Prepares NBC 1 nuclear report. Forwards the NBC 1 nuclear report up the chain of command.
 - d. Reports casualties.
 - e. Identifies, treats, and ensures evacuations of casualties.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Evacuates fatalities.
 - g. Implements continuous monitoring.
 - h. Submits damage assessment to higher headquarters.
 - i. Continues mission.
- .2 ____ Platoon personnel put out fires. Extinguish secondary fires caused by smoldering debris, both on and around tanks, before they spread.
- .3 ____ The platoon impacts optics, fire control systems, gun bores, and automotive systems for serviceability, and field strips and cleans weapons before firing.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon takes actions to minimize the exposure to the the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK: 10C.4.5 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is located within a predicted fallout area, and the unit mission does not allow significant movement. No Threat contact is anticipated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander takes appropriate action.
- a. Maintains continuous monitoring.
 - b. Submits NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required by secure means, when possible.
 - c. Gathers and reports dosimeter data.
 - d. Plots NBC 3 report (if received), informs commander.
 - e. Requests optimum time of exit from higher headquarters.
 - f. Recommends actions to keep radiation exposure status (RES) within operational exposure guidance (OEG).
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for fallout.
- a. Covers equipment, munitions, petroleum, oils and lubricants (POL), food, and water containers or places them inside shelters or vehicles.
 - b. Ensures as many personnel as possible occupy shelters or closed vehicles.
 - c. Minimizes skin exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, or wearing MOPP gear.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander develops a contingency plan.
- a. Compares present platoon RES to OEG.
 - b. Ensures platoon does not exceed established OEG.
 - c. Selects whether or not to remain in location or relocate, based on actual fallout arrival, radiation dose received, and guidance received from higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon prepares response in accordance with unit SOP, continues mission, and reports effects to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10C.4.6 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Chemical warfare has been initiated or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and damage. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The Platoon commander issues a warning order to squads and subordinates.
 - a. Platoon implements defensive preparation for a chemical attack.
 - b. Squad leaders direct actions to maximize protection consistent with the mission.
 - c. Squad leaders enforce MOPP level wear.
- .2 ____ Platoon takes additional action consistent with tactical situation by:
 - a. Increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP protection as appropriate.
 - b. Hardening individual and platoon position.
 - c. Using existing, natural, and manmade terrain features as expedient shelters.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures personnel are prepared.
 - a. Keeps clothes loosely fitted.
 - b. Performs field sanitation and personal hygiene.
 - c. Emplaces detection equipment properly.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon assumes MOPP level 4 within 8 minutes, using the buddy system and completes the mission IAW OPORD.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.4.7 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Automatic alarm sounds. Detector paper changes color. Automatic masking event occurs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes action.
 - a. Stops breathing.
 - b. Puts on mask with hood.
 - c. Clears and checks mask. (Do not fasten the hood. Go immediately to the next step.)
 - d. Gives the alarm.
 - e. Takes cover.
 - f. Puts on gloves with liners.
 - g. Zips and fastens overgarment jacket.
 - h. Secures the hood, and then secures the overgarment to increase protection.
 - i. Puts on overboots.
 - j. Reports presence of standard and Warsaw Pact markers to supervisors, if present.
- .2 ____ Section leaders ensure Marines do no transfer contamination to interior of shelter.
 - a. Ensure entry and exit only when mission essential.
 - b. Ensure entry and exit procedures are conducted IAW unit SOP.
 - c. Periodically monitor interior air with M256 detector kit.
 - d. Implement MOPP level 3 or MOPP level 4 if persistent agents are used.
 - e. Ensure contaminated items are not stowed inside collective protection shelter.
- .3 ____ Platoon decontaminates skin, if required.
 - a. Mask.
 - b. Removes one decon 1 wipe packet.
 - c. Folds decon 1 wipe at the solid line marked "BEND," and then unfolds it.
 - d. Tears packet open at the notch, removes the wipe, and fully opens the wipe.
 - e. Wipes skin for 1 minute.
 - f. Drops decon 1 wipe to the ground.
 - g. Crushes the enclosed glass ampules in decon 2 wipe packet.
 - h. Folds the packet on the solid line marked "CRUSH AND BEND," and then unfolds it.
 - i. Tears packet open at the notch, and removes the wipe.
 - j. Fully opens the wipe. Lets the encased crushed glass ampules fall to the ground.
 - k. Wipes skin with the decon 2 wipe for 2 to 3 minutes.
- .4 ____ Platoon reorganizes.
 - a. Reestablishes chain of command and communications.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- b. Receives squad, team, and crew status, consolidates, and passes to higher headquarters.
 - c. Identifies, treats, prepares, and evacuates casualties. Decontaminates killed in action (KIA) before medical evacuation.
 - d. Wraps, marks, and evacuates KIA to designated collection point.
 - e. Resumes mission.
- .5 ____ Platoon commander provides NBC reports.
- a. Submits initial NBC 1 report (chemical).
 - b. Identifies type of agent.
 - c. Submits subsequent NBC 1 report (chemical) within 20 minutes after the attack.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander initiates unmasking procedures with a chemical agent detection kit.
- a. Chemical agent detection kit indicates negative results. Selects two or three individuals for the start of unmasking procedures.
 - b. Moves the selected individuals into a shady area to prevent false diagnosis.
 - c. Tells selected individuals to unmask for 5 minutes and to reseal and clear masks.
 - d. Observes for 10 minutes.
 - e. If no symptoms are present after 10 minutes, gives the "ALL CLEAR."
- .7 ____ Platoon commander initiates unmasking procedures without a chemical agent detector kit.
- a. Uses a shady area, if available.
 - b. Selects two or three individuals to take a deep breath, hold it, break the seal of their masks, and keep their eyes wide open for 15 seconds.
 - c. Have individuals clear and reseal their masks. Observes individuals for 10 minutes.
 - d. If no symptoms occur after 10 minutes, have the same individuals again break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, clear, and reseal their masks.
 - e. Individuals should unmask again for 5 minutes, reseal and clear masks, and be observed for 10 minutes in a shady area.
 - f. If no symptoms appear in 10 minutes, asks permission from higher headquarters to unmask all personnel and give the "ALL CLEAR."
 - g. The remainder of the group unmask.
- .8 ____ Platoon commander replenishes chemical defense equipment and supplies.
- a. Requests replacement supplies.
 - b. Ensures replacement supplies are distributed.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon asks within 15 seconds of chemical agent alarm. MOPP level 4 is reached within 8 minutes. Starts chemical survey of area and reports all information to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10C.4.8 PERFORM CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Persistent agent attack has occurred, or contamination has been picked up from crossing a contaminated area. Support battalion provides replacement overgarments, one 5-gallon container of supertropical bleach (STB) per squad, and one long-handled brush for every two individuals. Individual survival decontamination is completed. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon conducts decontamination.
 - a. Skin decontamination must be accomplished within 1 minute after the attack.
 - b. Conducts personal wipe down and operator's spraydown within 15 minutes.
 - c. Decontaminates only what is necessary.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander selects a squad and conducts MOPP gear exchange along with squad.
 - a. Decontaminates gear. Both Marines perform individually.
 - b. Decontaminates hood. Buddy assists Marine.
 - c. Removes overgarment. Buddy assist Marine.
 - d. Removes overboots and gloves. Buddy assists Marine.
 - e. Puts on overgarment. Buddy assists Marine.
 - f. Puts on overboots and gloves. Buddy assists Marine.
 - g. Secures hood. Buddy assists Marine.
 - h. Secures gear. Both Marines perform this.
 - i. Completes steps a through I in sequence.
- .3 ____ Platoon resumes mission.
 - a. Continues assigned operation mission.
 - b. Continues to monitor NBC situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Platoon must perform decontamination actions within 15 minutes of directed actions. The platoon is decontaminated and resumes its mission without spreading contamination. No Marines in the platoon become chemical casualties.

TASK: 10C.4.9 CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): Time and the mission dictate a contaminated area cannot be bypassed without unacceptably delaying the unit. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander selects a route.
 - a. Uses NBC 5 (chemical) report and/or recon reports to select a route.
 - b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission.
 - c. Obtains route clearance and approval.
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for crossing the area.
 - a. Platoon commander directs MOPP level 4 for crossing the area.
 - b. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders know route of march and/or have strip maps.
 - c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up (mounted movement).
 - d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material.
 - e. Attached M9 detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.
- .3 ____ Platoon crosses the area.
 - a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.
 - b. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible (if necessary).
 - c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible.
- .4 ____ Platoon exits the contaminated area.
 - a. Checks for casualties.
 - b. Conducts necessary decontamination.
 - c. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon uses the best available route in accordance with METT-TSL and moves as quickly as possible through the area. No Marines in the platoon become chemical casualties.

TASK: 10C.4.10 CROSS A RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives orders to prepare for crossing a contaminated area. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon prepares for crossing.
 - a. Identifies extra shielding requirements and takes action to provide necessary items (such as using sandbags on the floor).
 - b. Places externally stored equipment inside, or covers it with available material.
 - c. Directs individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to wear a protective mask or cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags.
 - d. Establishes OEG and ensures all leaders and radiac equipment operators know it.
 - e. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, leaders, and radiac equipment operators are aware that the crossing is about to take place.
 - f. Checks radiac instruments.
 - g. Starts continuous monitoring.
- .2 ____ Platoon crosses the area.
 - a. Avoids stirring up dust.
 - b. Keeps out of dust cloud to greatest extent possible by increasing the internal or lateral dispersion between vehicles.
 - c. Conducts mounted movement buttoned-up to the greatest extent provided by each vehicle and weapon system
 - d. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible.
- .3 ____ Platoon exits the contaminated area.
 - a. Performs hasty radiological decontamination if mission permits.
 - b. Performs deliberate radiological decontamination if mission permits.
 - c. Arranges and plans for decontamination if mission does not permit.
 - d. Records radiation dose reading.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon crosses a contaminated area, by shortest route possible, without receiving radiation casualties or spreading contamination. No Marines become casualties as a result of crossing the contaminated area.

10C.5 AIR DEFENSE

TASK: 10C.5.1 USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is tactically deployed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the general area. Weapon status is hold.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.
- a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide the platoon and limit its vulnerability.
 - b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshield and optics.
 - c. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms and actions.
 - d. Disperses vehicles to reduce vulnerability to air attack.
 - e. Mans observation posts (daytime/nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aircraft.
 - f. Reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ Platoon uses passive air defense measures when moving.
- a. Platoon commander establishes vehicle order of march.
 - b. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the order.
 - c. Staggers vehicles as necessary to avoid linear patterns.
 - d. Assigns air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintains coverage until movement is completed.
 - e. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon uses dispersion, camouflage, and concealment and avoids detection by Threat aircraft.

TASK: 10C.5.2 TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT

CONDITION(S): Warning of aircraft in the area has been received. Unknown/hostile aircraft have been detected by scouts. The platoon is tactically deployed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking the platoon while stationary.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Occupies positions that afford overhead concealment.
 - c. Identifies and reports presence of Threat aircraft in the area to higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

d. NOTE: When making the decision of whether to fire at nonattacking, hostile aircraft with small arms, the assigned mission and tactical situation must be taken into consideration. Positive visual identification of aircraft is required prior to engagement with small arms unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act. The firing signature can be expected to disclose the platoon's position.

e. Receives orders to engage using the following criteria.

f. <u>TYPE AIRCRAFT</u>	<u>COURSE</u>	<u>AIM POINT</u>
g. Jet	Overhead	Two football fields in front of nose
Jet	Crossing	Two football fields in front of nose
Jet	Directly at you	Slightly above the aircraft nose
Helicopter	Crossing or overhead	1/2 football field in front of nose
Helicopter	Directly at you	Slightly above helicopter body
Helicopter	Hovering	Directly at or slightly above helicopter body

h. NOTES: 1. Aiming points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.
2. Aim points are selected in football field lengths; one football field is approximately 100 meters/yards.

i. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aiming point until the aircraft has flown past the point. Maintain the aiming point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle has started.

j. Preselected aim points can be established when the unit is in a static position.

k. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary, however, accuracy in relation to the aiming point is. A coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through will achieve the desired results.

.2 _____ The platoon engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns). (NOTE: The firing signature from small arms can be expected to disclose the unit's position.)

- a. Reloads weapons following engagement.
- b. Reports to higher headquarters.

.3 _____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking the platoon when it is moving.

- a. Gives air attack alarm.
- b. Disperses vehicles laterally and in depth or vehicle operators continue to move element to a covered and concealed position.
- c. Identifies and reports the presence of Threat aircraft in the area to higher headquarters.
- d. Receives orders to engage.
- e. The platoon/section engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).
- f. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
- g. Reports to higher headquarters.

.4 _____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking the platoon.

- a. Gives air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
- b. Visually identifies attacking aircraft.

- c. Reports Threat aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - d. All available personnel immediately engage attacking aircraft.
 - e. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - f. Personnel assigned observation posts continue to scan their assigned sectors for additional aircraft.
 - g. Reports to higher headquarters.
- .5 ____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking during convoy movement.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road if possible), or moves to covered and concealed positions if terrain permits.
 - c. Personnel dismount and take up firing positions.
 - d. Personnel prepare to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire (IAW engagement procedures).
 - e. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles, machine guns, and so forth).
 - f. Reloads weapons following the attack.
 - g. Reports the attack to higher headquarters.
- .6 ____ Platoon reorganizes after air attack has ended.
- a. Maintains air watch.
 - b. Treats any casualties.
 - c. Assesses damage to equipment and supplies.
 - d. Gives report to higher headquarters.
 - e. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon destroys or wards off all attacking aircraft. The platoon incurs losses of no more than one vehicle and/or crew.

10C.6 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10C.6.1 PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations and has been directed to receive supplies. No Threat contact is expected.

- .1 ____ Platoon commander reports personnel status/requests replacements.
- a. Reports personnel strength and losses.
 - b. Reassigns remaining personnel to ensure key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.
 - c. Assigns replacements by the same criteria.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander reports vehicle/equipment/fuel/ammunition status.
- a. Reports vehicle/equipment strength, status, and battle damage assessment.
 - b. Requests maintenance, recovery, and evacuation support from higher headquarters, as necessary.
 - c. Requests recovery support from higher headquarters, as necessary.
 - d. Requests evacuation support from higher headquarter, as necessary.
 - e. Reports fuel/ammunition status.
 - f. Requests resupply of Classes I, III, and V, as required.
- .3 ____ Platoon resupplies using the tailgate method.
- a. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for link-up with LOGPAC.
 - b. Meets LOGPAC in a concealed position to the rear of the vehicle to be resupplied.
 - c. Halts LOGPAC in a concealed position to the rear of the vehicle.
 - d. Vehicle is resupplied.
 - e. Provides local security for LOGPAC during resupply.
 - f. Completes resupply and guides LOGPAC to next vehicle position.
 - g. Platoon sergeant monitors progress of resupply operation.
 - h. Platoon sergeant leads LOGPAC to link-up point or another point as designated by the company gunnery sergeant.
 - i. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for future requirements.
 - j. Platoon commander keeps parent unit informed on resupply operation.
- .4 ____ Platoon resupplies using the service-station method.
- a. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for location of LOGPAC.
 - b. If platoon does not move together, platoon commander and platoon sergeant determine which platoon vehicles will be resupplied first and when they will move.
 - c. If platoon moves together, platoon commander determines order of movement to resupply location.
 - d. Moves to resupply location.
 - e. Resupplies and returns to original position.
 - f. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for future requirements.
 - g. Platoon commander keeps parent unit informed on resupply operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's basic load of critical supplies is replenished.

TASK: 10C.6.2 PREPARE/EVACUATE CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations and has sustained casualties. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon performs medical treatment.
 - a. Identifies serious casualties requiring evacuation.
 - b. Administers the correct life-saving measures.
 - c. Treats Threat casualties IAW some standards as friendly casualties.

- .2 ____ The platoon reports casualties.
 - a. Reports casualties as expeditiously as time permits in keeping with the tactical situation.
 - b. Prepares witness statements.

- .3 ____ The platoon assists in evacuation of casualties.
 - a. Prepares casualties for evacuation by ground transportation to aid station /clearing station, or
 - b. Requests helicopter evacuation of casualties.
 - c. Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed landing zone.
 - d. Moves casualties by best available means to LZ and continues treatment.
 - e. Assists the flight crew with casualty loading.
 - f. Retains classified documents (CEOT, maps, orders, overlays, and so forth) previously controlled by casualty.
 - g. Applies five "Ss" to enemy casualties.

- .4 ____ Platoon personnel evacuate contaminated casualties.
 - a. Decontamination is attempted prior to loading.
 - b. If decontamination is impossible, the hazards of contamination enroute are minimized by covering casualties.
 - c. Reports contamination to transport element.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon provides or assists in medical treatment and evacuation or casualties without causing further injury.

TASK: 10C.6.3 PERFORM PLATOON MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon reports equipment deficiencies.
 - a. Vehicle commanders update platoon sergeant on equipment status.
 - b. Platoon sergeant consolidates equipment status reports.
 - c. Platoon sergeant gives status to platoon commander.
 - d. Platoon sergeant gives status to logistical coordinator for his platoon.
- .2 ____ Platoon performs operator maintenance/emergency repairs.
 - a. Performs operator maintenance on assigned vehicles, weapons, and equipment, whenever the tactical situation permits.
 - b. Effects emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued functioning of equipment.
 - c. Platoon sergeant informs organizational maintenance personnel of deficiencies as soon as possible.
 - d. Platoon sergeant coordinates for technical or upper echelon maintenance support.
- .3 ____ Platoon recovers scout vehicle using a similar vehicle.
 - a. Restores vehicle to state of mobility.
 - b. Ensures no further damage is caused to any of the vehicles during recovery operations.
 - c. Provides security for dismounted personnel.
 - d. Tows vehicle to maintenance collection point or designated location.
 - e. Takes all safety precautions to prevent damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's equipment deficiencies are corrected or reported. No more than one vehicle is non-mission capable at any given time.

TASK: 10C.6.4 PERFORM FIELD SANITATION OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting combat operations in a tactical environment, and may be either stationary or mobile. The platoon has formed a field sanitation team from within its ranks and has adequate supplies on hand to perform its mission. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ During combat operations, the platoon ensures potable water is available and utilized.
- a. Platoon personnel consume only potable water as designated by the field sanitation team.
 - b. The platoon maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW the unit SOP.
 - c. As, necessary, platoon personnel purify unpotable water.
- .2 ____ When stationary, the platoon establishes heads and hand-washing facilities.
- a. Heads and urinals are constructed at least 35 meters from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas.
 - b. Hand-washing facilities are provided at heads.
 - c. A soakage pit is provided under the hand-washing facility to prevent accumulation of standing water.
- .3 ____ During mobile operations, the platoon uses catholes when time is not available to construct heads. (platoon personnel prepare, use, and fill catholes, as necessary, throughout mobile operations.)
- .4 ____ when consuming prepared rations, the platoon takes adequate measures to avoid food spoilage, ensures cleanliness of utensils, and controls pests.
- a. Food is protected from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests, and is consumed promptly after delivery.
 - b. Cooking utensils and mess kits are cleaned and disinfected before and after use, and a mess kit washing facility is established or clean, disposable mess gear from sealed packages is utilized.
 - c. Garbage and waste are buried, incinerated, or evacuated from the platoon area in sealed bags or containers promptly.
 - d. Feeding locations are selected to minimize insect and rodent hazards. Protective measures against pests, to include wearing netting and insect repellent, spraying, dusting, poisoning, and trapping, as necessary, are employed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon and its corpsman take all steps necessary to ensure sanitation standards are established, maintained, and enforced. No platoon members are lost to illness or disease as a direct result of failure to maintain adequate field sanitation.

SECTION 10D

MORTAR PLATOON/SECTION

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10D.1 - FIRE AND MOUNT</u>	
TASK 10D.1.1	X-D-1
OPERATE BY SPLIT PLATOON	
<u>MPS 10D.3 - MOVE</u>	
TASK 10D.3.1	X-D-1
MOVE MOUNTED	
TASK 10D.3.2	X-D-3
CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	
<u>MPS 10D.4 - SHOOT</u>	
TASK 10D.4.1	X-D-5
FIRE HIPSHOT	
TASK 10D.4.2	X-D-6
FIRE HIPSHOT (ADJUST FIRE)	
TASK 10D.4.3	X-D-7
FIRE DIRECT LAY	
TASK 10D.4.4	X-D-8
FIRE DIRECT ALIGNMENT	
TASK 10D.4.5	X-D-9
REGISTER AND ADJUST PARALLEL SHEAF	
TASK 10D.4.6	X-D-10
FIRE ADJUST FIRE	
TASK 10D.4.7	X-D-10
FIRE FOR EFFECT	
TASK 10D.4.8	X-D-11
ADJUST A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE	
TASK 10D.4.9	X-D-12
FIRE A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE	
TASK 10D.4.10	X-D-12
FIRE PRIORITY TARGET	
TASK 10D.4.11	X-D-13
FIRE TIME-ON-TARGET	
TASK 10D.4.12	X-D-13
FIRE IMMEDIATE SUPPRESSION/SMOKE	
TASK 10D.4.13	X-D-14
FIRE QUICK SMOKE	
TASK 10D.4.14	X-D-15
FIRE ILLUMINATION	
TASK 10D.4.15	X-D-16
FIRE COORDINATED ILLUMINATION AND HIGH EXPLOSIVE	
TASK 10D.4.16	X-D-16
FIRE TWO ADJUST-FIRE MISSIONS	
TASK 10D.4.17	X-D-17
OPERATE A FIRE DIRECTION CENTER	
<u>MPS 10D.5 - RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY</u>	
TASK 10D.5.1	X-D-19
RECONNOITER A FIRING POSITION	
TASK 10D.5.2	X-D-21
EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	
TASK 10D.5.3	X-D-23
MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	
TASK 10D.5.4	X-D-26
CONDUCT A PASSAGE OF LINES	

MPS 10D.6 - SUSTAIN

TASK 10D.6.1	. . . . .	X-D-23
	PREPARE FOR COMBAT	
TASK 10D.6.2	. . . . .	X-D-30
	CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE	
TASK 10D.6.3	. . . . .	X-D-32
	SUSTAIN	
TASK 10D.6.4	. . . . .	X-D-36
	REPORT	
TASK 10D.6.5	. . . . .	X-D-37
	PLAN AND CONTROL COMBAT OPERATIONS	
TASK 10D.6.6	. . . . .	X-D-41
	CONDUCT VEHICLE OPERATIONS	

MPS 10D.7 - NBC

TASK 10D.7.1	. . . . .	X-D-44
	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.2	. . . . .	X-D-45
	RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.3	. . . . .	X-D-46
	RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.4	. . . . .	X-D-46
	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.5	. . . . .	X-D-47
	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.6	. . . . .	X-D-49
	PERFORM CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION	
TASK 10D.7.7	. . . . .	X-D-50
	CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	
TASK 10D.7.8	. . . . .	X-D-51
	CROSS A RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATED AREA	

ENCLOSURE (1)

10D.1 FIRE AND MOVEMENT

TASK: 10D.1.1 OPERATE BY SPLIT PLATOON

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives an indirect fire support mission requiring it to operate as two independent sections.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon divides into two sections.
 - a. Each section has enough equipment to
- .2 ____ The platoon takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation (FM 3-4, Chapter 3).
 - a. Conducts periodic monitoring.
 - b. Reports all dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Each section performs its assigned indirect fire support mission in accordance with the concept expressed in the OPORD.

10D.3 MOVE

TASK: 10D.3.1 MOVE MOUNTED

CONDITION(S): The leader orders mounted movement along a prescribed route.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; E; NE

- .1 ____ Unit maintains all-round security.
 - a. Crewmen orient weapons at possible enemy positions within assigned sector.
 - b. Unit maintains 360 degree observation at all times.
- .2 ____ Unit maximizes cover and concealment.
 - a. Covered and concealed routes are used whenever possible.
 - b. Skylining is avoided.
 - c. Obvious kill zones are avoided.
 - d. Open areas are crossed quickly.
- .3 ____ Unit moves in formation.
 - a. Formation of mortar carriers corresponds to mission, enemy situation, and terrain.
 - 1) Column Formation. Used for road marches, for movement during limited visibility, and when passing through defiles or thick woods.
 - 2) Line Formation. Used when crossing open areas, leaving a woodline, or emerging from smoke.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 3) Echelon Formation. Used to cover an exposed flank.
 - 4) Wedge Formation. Used when enemy situation is vague and greater firepower is needed to the front than the flanks.
- b. Vehicles maintain a lateral dispersion from 50 to 100 meters with vehicles to the front.
 - c. Formations are changed in accordance with changes in mission, enemy situation, and terrain.
 - d. Movement formations are controlled mainly by arm-and-hand signals with radios serving only as a backup.
 - e. Each vehicle is assigned a sector to guard and search corresponding to its position in the formation.
 - f. FDC vehicle and nonarmored vehicles are positioned in formation opposite the direction of greatest danger.
 - g. Vehicle commanders stay in visual contact with the vehicle to their front.
 - h. Designated personnel maintains visual contact with other vehicles.

.4 ____ Unit employs proper movement techniques.

- a. Movement technique is consistent with likelihood of contact and need for speed.
 - 1) Traveling. Contact not likely. Speed is essential.
 - 2) Traveling overwatch. Contact possible. Speed is desirable.
 - 3) Bounding overwatch. Contact expected.
- b. Unit correctly performs designated movement technique.
 - 1) Traveling
 - a) Unit uses column formations.
 - b) A mortar carrier occupies the rearmost position in the column formation.
 - 2) Traveling overwatch.
 - a) Lead vehicle is from 100 to 400 meters forward of the rear of the unit.
 - b) Distance between lead and second vehicle is increased if control can be maintained and the lead vehicle can be supported.
 - c) Distance between lead and second vehicle is decreased if terrain becomes more rugged, vegetation becomes dense, or visibility decreases.
 - d) Movement of the whole unit is continuous, when possible.
 - e) Visual contact is maintained between the lead vehicle and overwatching elements.
 - 3) Bounding overwatch.
 - a) Unit moves as two separate elements: one bounding while the other is overwatching.
 - b) Overwatching element occupies a covered and concealed position that permits observation of area traverse by bounding element.

14 Oct 94

- c) Observation is continuous and is enhanced with all available equipment.
 - d) Bounding element moves along chosen route to designated position within support range of overwatching element.
 - e) Enemy targets are engaged with all available direct fire weapons within five seconds after detection.
 - f) Direct communication exists between the overwatching and bounding elements.
 - g) Enemy cannot effectively engage moving element.
- c. Movement technique is changed to fit the likelihood of enemy contact.
 - d. Movement techniques are mainly controlled with arm-and-hand signals with radios used only as a backup.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit moves using traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch consistent with the mission, time, and Threat.

TASK: 10D.3.2 CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The unit is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. Speed is essential, unit integrity must be maintained, and road nets are available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; E; NE

.1 ____ Unit prepares for movement.

- a. Leader issues movement order, which must address: mission; enemy and friendly situations; destination; route; rate of march; catch-up speed; order of march; start point location and time; critical points, CS and CSS; communications; and location of the commander during the march.
- b. Drivers perform before-operation maintenance checks on their vehicles before movement.
- c. Vehicles are prepared for movement IAW applicable unit SOPs--for example, antennas tied down, convoy markings, reflector tape for night movement.
- d. Leaders inspect personnel and equipment.
- e. Each vehicle has the prescribed route graphically recorded-- (strip map, overlay, or marked map) along with the following information: start point, release point, critical points, and the distances between these points.
- f. A mortar carrier is assigned the rearmost position in the unit.
- g. Unit does not stop once it has started movement to the start point.

.2 ____ Unit conducts road movement.

- a. Unit arrives at the start point on time.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Vehicles maintain their prescribed positions in the march unit.
- c. Drivers maintain prescribed vehicle distance, whenever possible.
- d. Unit follows the prescribed route without deviation.
- e. All vehicles maintain prescribed rate of march.
- f. Drivers use prescribed catch-up speed to close with vehicle in front to reestablish vehicle distance.
- g. Movement is controlled mainly with arm-and-hand signals with radios serving only as a backup.
- h. Drivers perform during-operation maintenance checks on their vehicles at all halts.

.3 ____ Unit maintains security throughout the movement.

- a. Squad of each mortar carrier maintains 360 degree observation around the vehicle.
- b. Each mortar carrier is assigned a sector of fire covered by its .50 caliber machine gun.
- c. Assigned sectors of fire for all weapons ensure 360 degree security for the unit throughout movement.
- d. During scheduled halts, vehicles pull to the side of the road maintaining march distance.

.4 ____ Unit takes immediate action for disabled vehicles.

- a. Disabled vehicle is moved off the route of the march.
- b. Unit continues movement.
- c. March unit commander is informed of breakdown.
- d. Once vehicle is clear of the route of march, personnel from vehicle try to repair it.
- e. Personnel from disabled vehicle establish local security and provide guide(s) to direct traffic.
- f. Vehicle rejoins convoy.
 - 1) If the vehicle is repaired and its march unit has not yet passed, the vehicle rejoins the march unit at the end.
 - 2) If the vehicle cannot be repaired or if its march unit has already passed, the vehicle waits for the trail party.
- g. If vehicle cannot be repaired in time to rejoin its march unit, mission-essential personnel and materiel are transferred to another vehicle in the march unit.

.5 ____ Unit completes road movement.

- a. Unit arrives at release point at the time specified in the OPORD.
- b. Unit passes through the release point without stopping.
- c. Unit quartering party guides (when used) meet unit at release point.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit arrives at the start point and release point at the time specified in the OPORD. Prescribed positions, vehicle distance, and rate of march are maintained along the prescribed route. Security is maintained.

10D.4 SHOOT

TASK: 10D.4.1 FIRE HIPSHOOT

CONDITION(S): The unit receives an immediate suppression/smoke fire request while moving.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: E: NE

- .1 ____ Unit occupies firing position.
- a. Squad(s) place mortar into action.
 - b. Initial fire command is prepared.
 - 1) (FDC present.) processes calls for fire. OR
 - 2) (FDC not present.) Senior leader determines the direction and distance from the firing position to the target. He prepares initial fire command. Fire request authenticated.
AND
 - 3) (FDC not present.) Senior leader determines if the unit can accept the fire mission by verifying that:
 - a) The target is in the unit's area of responsibility.
 - b) The target does not endanger friendly troops.
 - c) The fire mission supports the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
 - d) The required ammunition is available and can be spared.
 - e) The target does not conflict with any fire support coordination measures.
 - f) Special permission is required and, if necessary, requests permission to fire the mission from the FO.
 - c. (Section only.) Interval between mortar carriers is 35 to 45 meters, terrain permitting.
- .2 ____ All mortars are laid.
- .3 ____ Unit conducts FFE.
- a. Squad(s) load and fire.
 - b. FFE is initiated within four minutes after receipt of target location.
 - c. (Live fire only.) FFE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates effective FFE within four minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.2 FIRE HIPSHOOT (ADJUST FIRE)

CONDITION(S): The unit receives an adjust fire request while moving.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Squad(s) places mortar into action.
- .2 ____ Initial fire command is prepared.
 - a. FDC processes call for fire. OR
 - b. (FDC not present.) Senior leader determines the direction and distance from the firing position to the target. He prepares initial fire command. Fire request is authenticated.
AND
 - c. (FDC not present.) Senior leader determines if the unit can accept the fire mission by verifying that:
 - 1) The target is in the unit's area of responsibility.
 - 2) The target does not endanger friendly troops.
 - 3) The fire mission supports the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
 - 4) The required ammunition is available and can be spared.
 - 5) The target does not conflict with any fire support coordination measures.
 - 6) Special permission is required and, if necessary, requests permission to fire the mission from the FO.
 - d. (Section only.) Interval between mortar carriers is 35 to 45 meters, terrain permitting.
 - e. Squad(s) performs reciprocal lay.
 - 1) Reciprocal lay with aiming circle:
 - a) Aiming circle operator prepares and orients aiming circle.
 - b) Adjusting squad and aiming circle operator performs a reciprocal lay with aiming circle and align aiming posts. OR
 - 2) Reciprocal lay with M2 compass: Adjusting squad performs a reciprocal lay with compass and align aiming posts.
- .3 ____ Adjusting squad fires initial adjusting round.
 - a. Adjusting squads load and fire.
 - b. Initial adjusting round is fired within four minutes by day or five minutes by night after receipt of the target location.
- .4 ____ Laying of the unit is completed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Adjusting mortar gunner levels the mortar while sighting on the aiming circle; gunner announces "Base piece ready for recheck."
 - b. Aiming circle operator confirms the lay of the adjusting mortar.
- .5 ____ Unit adjusts onto target.
- a. Squad(s) lay for small or large deflection change.
- .6 ____ Unit conducts FFE.
- a. Unit initiates FFE within seven minutes by day or eight minutes by night after receipt of the target location.
 - b. (Live fire only.) FFE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates an accurate FFE within seven minutes by day or eight minutes by night.

TASK: 10D.4.3 FIRE DIRECT LAY

CONDITION(S): The mortar squad is ordered to engage a visible target with indirect fire by direct lay.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; E; NE

- .1 ____ Squad prepares to fire the mortar.
- a. Squad places mortar into action.
 - b. Squad performs direct lay.
- .2 ____ Squad adjusts fire onto the target.
- a. Squad leader determines the distance from the firing position to the target. He determines charge and elevation.
 - b. Squad loads and fires.
 - c. Gunner turns the deflection micrometer knob on the M53 sight unit until the vertical crossline of the sight is on the centermost position of the impact of the previous round.
 - d. Gunner looks through his sightunit, shifts the mortar using the traversing handwheel until the vertical crossline is again aligned onto the target. All bubbles on the sightunit are centered.
 - e. Squad fires each adjusting round within 30 seconds after the impact of the previous round.
 - f. Squad fires no more than three adjusting rounds.
- .3 ____ Squad conducts FFE.
- a. PIE is initiated within four minutes after observing target/receiving order to engage target (whichever occurs second).
 - b. (Live fire only.) FFE is effective on the target.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Vehicle initiates accurate PIE within four minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.4 FIRE DIRECT ALIGNMENT

CONDITION(S): The squad is ordered to engage a target visible from an OP from which the squad's mortar position can also be observed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Squad prepares to fire the mortar.
 - a. Squad places mortar into action.
 - b. Squad performs direct alignment.
- .2 ____ Squad adjusts fire onto the target.
 - a. Squad leader determines the distance from the firing position to the target. He determines charge and elevation.
 - b. Squad loads and fires.
 - c. Initial round is fired within two minutes following squad leader's occupation of OP.
 - d. Each adjusting round is fired within 40 seconds after impact of the previous round.
 - e. Squad fires no more than three adjusting rounds.
- .3 ____ Squad executes PIE.
 - a. *
Squad loads and fires.
 - b. PIE is initiated within five minutes after squad leader sights on the target.
 - c. (Live fire only.) PIE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates an accurate PIE within five minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.5 REGISTER AND ADJUST PARALLEL SHEAF

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request to conduct a registration mission. Firing position and registration point have been surveyed, and current MET message is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC prepares to conduct the registration mission.
 - a. FDC processes call for fire.
 - b. FDC computer construct surveyed firing charts.
- .2 ____ Base mortar squad registers.
 - a. Base mortar squad lay for small or large deflection change.
 - b. Base mortar squad loads and fires.
 - c. If adjusting round impacts closer than 50 meters from the registration point, the correction is computed but not fired.
 - d. Final adjusting round is fired within eight minutes after receipt of the target location.
 - e. (Live fire only.) The final adjusting round impacts within 50 meters of the registration point.
- .3 ____ Section adjusts parallel sheaf.
 - a. FDC initiates message to observer to prepare to adjust sheaf.
 - b. FDC transmits fire command to sheaf-adjusting mortars IAW FO's order to fire section right or section left.
 - c. Sheaf-adjusting squads fire at 10 second intervals.
 - d. Base mortar squad does not fire unless requested by the FO.
 - e. Corrections of 50 meters or more are refines.
 - f. Last sheaf-adjusting round is fired within eight minutes after firing the first sheaf-adjusting round.
 - g. (Live fire only.) Sheaf is parallel.
- .4 ____ Section realigns aiming posts and revises firing data.
 - a. Each sheaf-adjusting mortar is referred to the deflection of the base mortar to an accuracy of 0 mils.
 - b. Following the FOs correction to the last sheaf-adjusting round, sheaf-adjusting mortars' aiming posts are realigned according to the following time standards: 75 seconds/day, 2 minutes/night.
 - c. Aiming posts are realigned within plus or minus one mil of the referred deflection.
 - d. FDC computers apply registration corrections to existing targets within the transfer limits of the registration point (400 mils left or right of registration point; 1,500 meters add or drop from registration point).

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit registers, adjusts its parallel sheaf, and applies all corrections to mortars and firing data.

TASK: 10D.4.6 FIRE ADJUST FIRE

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the FDC receives an adjust fire request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC process the adjust fire request.
- .2 ____ Section adjusts fire.
 - a. Base mortar squad fires initial adjusting round within two minutes after receipt of the target location.
 - b. Base mortar squad fires subsequent adjusting rounds within one minute after impact of the previous round.
- .3 ____ Section conducts PIE.
 - a. FFE is performed within one minute after the impact of the final adjusting round.
 - b. Section initiates PIE within five minutes after receipt of the target location.
 - c. (Live fire only.) PIE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates an accurate FFE within five minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.7 FIRE FOR EFFECT

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request to execute an FFE without adjustment. The target is within the transfer limits of the registration point.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC processes the FFE request.
- .2 ____ Section conducts PIE.
 - a. FFE is initiated within two minutes after receipt of the target location.
 - b. (Live fire only.) FFE is effective on the target.

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates an accurate PIE within two minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.8 ADJUST A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request to adjust an FPF. Coordination for the FPF has already occurred among the mortar section, FO, and supported unit. Every mortar is to be adjusted onto the FPF.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; E; NE

- .1 ____ FDC processes the request to adjust the FPF.
 - a. FDC processes calls for fire.
 - b. FDC computes FPF data.
 - c. Computers do not add safety factor when determining the initial target location.
 - d. Fire command specifies method of adjustment: either one round section left or section right.
 - e. Fire command specifies AT MY COMMAND.
- .2 ____ Section fires initial volley for sheaf adjustment.
 - a. Section fires section left or section right, each mortar squad firing 10 seconds apart, IAW initial fire command.
- .3 ____ Section adjusts the FPF.
 - a. Final adjusting round is fired within 12 minutes of the receipt of the target location.
 - b. All mortar squads record their last adjustment firing data as FPF data.
 - c. (Live fire only.) All final adjusting rounds impact within 50 meters of their aiming points.
- .4 ____ Section is ready to fire FPF.
 - a. FDC records firing data separately for each mortar on the data sheet.
 - b. When not firing other missions, mortars are laid on their FPF firing data.
 - c. Specified number of rounds are prepared and set aside for the FPF.
 - d. At least one crewman mans the mortar continuously to fire the FPF at once.
 - e. Every Marine knows the code word to fire the FPF.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit adjusts FPF within 12 minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.9 FIRE A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request to fire an FPF already adjusted.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC processes FPF call for fire.
 - a. FDC requires FO to authenticate.
 - b. FDC transmits designated code word to all mortar squads.
- .2 ____ Section fires FPF.
 - a. If section is already laid on the FPF--
 - 1) Section begins firing FPF within 30 seconds after receipt of the FPF request.
 - 2) Mortars continue firing until end of mission is received or ammunition is used up.
 - b. If section is not laid on the FPF--
 - 1) Section begins firing FPF within one minute after receipt of FPF request.
 - c. (Live fire only.) All rounds impact within 50 meters of the FPF.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates accurate FPF within 30 seconds (if already laid on FPF) or within one minute (if not already laid on FPF).

TASK: 10D.4.10 FIRE PRIORITY TARGET

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request to engage a priority target. The FDC has computed the target and given the firing data to the mortar squads. Target is within the transfer limits of a registration point.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC processes the call for fire.
- .2 ____ Section engages the priority target.
 - a. If section is already laid on the requested priority target--
 - 1) PIE is initiated within 30 seconds after receipt of the call for fire.
 - b. If section is not laid on the requested priority target--
 - 1) FFE is initiated within one minute after receipt of the call for fire.
 - c. PIE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates accurate PIE on the priority target within 30 seconds (if already laid on priority target) or 1 minute (if not already laid on priority target).

TASK: 10D.4.11 FIRE TIME-ON-TARGET

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request for a TOT fire mission at least five minutes before the TOT. Section has registered, and the target for the TOT is within the transfer limits of the registration point.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Section prepares to Fire a time-on-target mission.
- a. FDC determines initial firing data.
 - b. FDC determines the time of flight of the round and subtracts this time from the TOT.
 - c. PDC gives mortar squads FFE standby time and FFE time.
 - d. Mortar squads prepare rounds IAW fire command.
 - e. FDC informs mortar squads to stand by at FFE standby time.
 - f. FDC conducts countdown at least one minute before firing in 10 second intervals.
- .2 ____ Section conducts PIE.
- a. FDC orders mortar squads to fire.
 - b. (Live fire only.) Fire impacts on target within plus or minus five seconds of the scheduled TOT.
 - c. (Live fire only.) FFE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Accurate PIE lands on the target within five seconds of the requested TOT.

TASK: 10D.4.12 FIRE IMMEDIATE SUPPRESSION/SMOKE

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives an immediate-suppression/smoke fire request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Section prepares to conduct the Immediate-suppression/smoke mission.
- .2 ____ Section conducts PIE.
- a. Section fires the initial volley within 90 seconds after receipt of the target location.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. (Smoke mission only.) Section fires a parallel sheaf, each mortar firing one or two rounds of smoke.
- c. (Live fire only.) All rounds impact within 100 meters of the target.

.3 ____ Section adjusts onto target.

.4 ____ Unit conducts FFE following adjustment.

- a. (Live fire only.) PIE is initiated within five minutes after receipt of request to adjust fire.
- b. (Live fire only.) PIE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit initiates effective FFE within 90 seconds.

TASK: 10D.4.13 FIRE QUICK SMOKE

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request for quick smoke.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ FDC prepares to conduct the smoke mission.

- a. FDC computes data for quick-smoke mission.
- b. FDC obtains approval to fire quick-smoke mission from the highest unit commander affected.
- c. If mission is planned in advance, FDC estimates ammunition based on most unfavorable conditions that might be expected at time and place to fire.
- d. If mission is for producing casualty or blinding effects, FDC plans to fire twice the number of rounds per minute in effect.

.2 ____ Section adjusts fire.

- a. Initial adjusting round is fired within three minutes after receipt of the target location.
- b. Adjustment is performed using HE.
- c. Subsequent adjusting rounds are fired within one minute after receipt of each correction.
- d. After final adjustment round one smoke round is fired to confirm that it impacts in the desired location.

.3 ____ Section opens sheaf. (If normal parallel sheaf will not cover the area to be screened.)

- a. FDC recomputes firing data for each sheaf adjusting mortar to open sheaf.
- b. FDC transmits fire command to sheaf-adjusting mortars IAW FOs order to fire section right or section left.
- c. Sheaf-adjusting mortars change their lay by:

14 Oct 94

- d. Sheaf-adjusting mortars fire to confirm open sheaf within two minutes after final adjustment of adjusting mortar is confirmed by the smoke round.

.4 ____ Section establishes smoke screen.

- a. Squads fire twice the number of WP rounds needed to maintain the screen for one minute.
- b. Section fires at least 10 WP rounds.
- c. Section fires as quickly as possible, within safety restraints.
- d. Section fires all rounds to establish smoke screen within two minutes after desired sheaf (parallel or open) is achieved.
- e. (Live fire only.) Sheaf covers entire area to be screened.
- f. If mission is planned, screen is fully established at specified time.

.5 ____ Section maintains smoke screen.

- a. Section fires the determined number of rounds per minute.
- b. Section maintains screen for prescribed number of minutes as follows:
 - 1) IAW coordinated time schedule. OR
 - 2) On order of the commander who requested that the smoke screen be established. OR
 - 3) In the absence of any external control, FDC controls timing by ordering the section to cease fire.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Smoke screen is fully established and is maintained for the prescribed period in the requested location.

TASK: 10D.4.14 FIRE ILLUMINATION

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request for battlefield illumination.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ FDC prepares to conduct the illumination mission.

- a. FDC computes firing data for illumination mission.
- b. The vertical interval, charge correction, angle T, and deflection correction are not used to compute firing data.
- c. FDC uses firing table to determine corrections for time of flight, corrections for elevation, and range to impact.

.2 ____ Section adjusts illumination over the target.

- a. Initial adjusting illumination round is fired within two minutes after receipt of the target location.
- b. All corrections to move the round up or down are in relation to the height of burst.
- c. Corrections to height of burst are applied to the base charge and fuze setting.

ENCLOSURE (1)

.3 ____ Section illuminates the target.

- a. Target is illuminated within five minutes of receipt of target location.
- b. Illumination is maintained for entire period requested.
- c. (Live fire only.) FO is able to see the target with illumination.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Target is illuminated within five minutes and continuously for the period requested.

TASK: 10D.4.15 FIRE COORDINATED ILLUMINATION AND HIGH EXPLOSIVE

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives a request for coordinated illumination and HE. Illumination has already been adjusted.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Section prepares to fire the coordinated illumination mission.

- a. FDC computes firing data for coordinated illumination firing mission.
- b. FDC uses a new computers record.

.2 ____ Section coordinates the illumination and HE.

- a. FDC begins timing once illumination round is fired.
- b. When FO calls back "Illumination mark," the FDC stops timing and records the time on the computer's record.
- c. Computer compares the time of flight of the HE round with the illumination-mark time and subtracts the smaller from the larger. The difference is the amount of time that separates the firing of each illumination and HE round.
- d. Initial adjusting HE round is fired within four minutes after receipt of the target location.
- e. (Live fire only.) The target area is illuminated when adjusting HE impacts.

.3 ____ Section conducts FFE.

- a. (Live fire only.) Target area is illuminated when HE impacts in FFE.
- b. Section enters PIE within 12 minutes after receiving the target location.
- c. (Live fire only.) PIE is effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Target area is illuminated when PIE impacts. PIE occurs within 12 minutes after receipt of target location.

TASK: 10D.4.16 FIRE TWO ADJUST-FIRE MISSIONS

CONDITION(S): In a firing position, the section receives two adjust-fire requests, one immediately after the other.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC prepares to conduct the two fire missions.
 - a. Section Leader assigns one or both computers to compute each mission.
 - b. Mortars firing on different targets do not cross-fire.
- .2 ____ Section adjust fire onto the two targets.
 - a. Initial adjusting rounds for both missions are fired within three minutes after receipt of the second target Location.
 - b. Nonadjusting mortar squad follows the fire commands for the adjusting mortar with which it will fire the PIE.
- .3 ____ Section engages the two targets with FFE.
 - a. Section initiates FFE for both missions within seven minutes after receipt of the second target Location.
 - b. (Live fire only.) FFEs are effective on the target.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit engages both targets with accurate FFE within seven minutes.

TASK: 10D.4.17 OPERATE A FIRE DIRECTION CENTER

CONDITION(S): The FDC is controlling its section's indirect fires in support of the task force during a combat operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FDC maintains communications.
 - a. FDC monitors battalion command net, battalion mortar fire direction net, and platoon net.
 - b. Controlling FDC functions as net control station for battalion mortar fire direction net.
 - c. FDC maintains continuous communications with BN COC, battalion BN FO, platoon commander, other section's FDC, squads separated from section, and FO's of supported units.
- .2 ____ FDC controls sections indirect fires.
 - a. Computers prepare and maintain target lists, target overlays, and schedules of fire.
 - b. Computers prepare and maintain firing charts for current and planned firing positions.
 - c. Computers compute and apply registration corrections.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Computers maintain the computer's record.
 - e. Section sergeant maintains section's ammunition records.
 - f. Platoon sergeant ensures ammunition records are maintained.
- .3 ____ Section sergeant supervises FDC:
- a. Controls FDC personnel.
 - b. Supervises all fire missions.
 - c. Verifies fire commands.
 - d. Ensures fires are correctly plotted and attack guidance is followed.
 - e. Supervises the FDC sleep plan to ensure 24 hour operation.
 - f. Ensures FDC personnel use proper radiotelephone operating procedures.
 - g. Ensures FDC personnel understand their role in defending the section's perimeter.
- .4 ____ Section sergeant maintains a current situation map.
- a. Situation map includes:
 - 1) Friendly unit locations (to within 100 meters of accuracy).
 - 2) Targets (to within 100 meters of accuracy).
 - 3) Fire support coordination measures.
 - 4) Friendly unit graphic control measures.
 - b. Section sergeant updates map continuously based on the changing tactical situation.
 - c. Platoon sergeant ensures current situation map is maintained.
- .5 ____ FDC computers compute and apply meteorological corrections.
- a. Computes corrections to the nearest mil in deflection and to the nearest on-eighth charge in range.
 - b. Corrections are applied to all current firing data.
 - c. Corrections are computed and applied within 15 minutes after receipt of each applicable MET message.
 - d. Platoon sergeant ensures meteorological data are computed and applied to firing data.
- .6 ____ FDC operates with other FDC in platoon.
- a. Platoon commander designates one FDC to function as the controlling FDC.
 - b. When both sections are firing together from the same location, the controlling FDC-
 - 1) Computes firing data for both sections.
 - 2) Issues the fire command designating that the platoon, a section, or a squad delivers fire.
 - c. When the sections are employed together from the same location, the noncontrolling FDC, when directed, monitors fire requests and computes firing data as a check on the controlling FDC.
 - d. When sections are separated, the second FDC section monitors fire requests and computes initial firing data for its own mortars.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

FDC controls fires to provide accurate indirect fire in support of the supported unit.

10D.5 RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY

TASK: 10D.5.1 RECONNOITER A FIRING POSITION

CONDITION(s): The unit receives the order to occupy a new firing position. There is enough time to conduct a ground reconnaissance.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leader performs map reconnaissance and plans ground reconnaissance.
- a. At least two tentative firing positions are chosen.
 - b. A tentative covered and concealed route(s) to the new firing position is chosen.
 - c. Reconnaissance plan avoids known and suspected contaminated areas and obstacles, when possible.
 - d. Tentative location(s) for pre-positioned supplies and ammunition is identified.
 - e. Aerial photographs are used, when available.
 - f. Available current intelligence from company commander or battalion S2 is used.
 - g. Reconnaissance plan is consistent with location of friendly units and potential enemy threat.
 - h. Task force approval for the new firing positions and route(s) is requested and obtained.
 - i. When an advance party is used, leader specifies its composition, which must include:
 - 1) Designated Leader.
 - 2) Ability to compute firing data.
 - 3) Communications with unit main body.
 - 4) Guide for base mortar squad.
 - 5) Ability to detect/monitor chemical and radiological contamination.
 - 6) Aiming circle and operator (if prepared position is desired).
 - j. Areas for tentative en route hipshoot firing positions are identified.
- .2 ____ Unit reconnoiters the route to the firing position.
- a. Verifies cover, concealment, and trafficability of the route.
 - b. Selects and reconnoiters an alternate route, if needed.
 - c. Reports route changes to the unit main body and the task force headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Detects, marks, and reports all chemical/radiological contamination encountered. Locates and marks minefields and obstacles along the route, if time permits.
 - e. Estimates time needed to reach new firing position and informs main body.
 - f. Verifies en route hipshoot firing positions.
 - g. Reports all key information to the main body before its movement.
 - h. Marks routes, as needed.
- .3 ____ Unit reconnoiters and selects the firing position.
- a. Best position is chosen as primary firing position. Other suitable positions are designated alternate positions.
 - b. Firing position permits platoon to provide indirect fire support to task force consistent with the mission.
 - c. Consistent with METT-TSL and commander's guidance, firing position allows mortars to fire at least one half to two thirds of their range to the front of forward supported elements.
 - d. Firing position is far enough from forward supported elements to allow FPFs to be established immediately to their front.
 - e. Consistent with priority targets and priority of fires, firing position provides maximum coverage of forward supported elements' frontage.
 - f. Firing positions can be entered without enemy ground observation.
 - g. Firing position offers cover from direct fire and low-angle indirect fire.
 - h. Firing position offers concealment from air and ground observation.
 - i. Firing position avoids high-speed approaches from the FEBA.
 - j. Firing position has at least two routes for entry and exit.
 - k. Firing position permits communication between mortar squads and their FDC, and between mortar sections and their supported elements and the COC.
 - l. Firing position is near access routes for resupply and future displacement.
 - m. Firing position gives all mortars mask clearance (800 to 1065 mils elevation).
 - n. Firing position has no chemical or radiological contamination.
- .4 ____ Advance party prepares the new firing position.
- a. Selects and marks mortar positions that permit a 35 to 45 meter interval between squads (terrain permitting).
 - b. Selects a covered and concealed FDC position.
 - c. Checks firing position and near terrain for mines, NBC contamination, and enemy forces.
 - d. Prepares the aiming circle.
 - e. Marks direction of fire for mortars.
 - f. Prepares firing charts for the new positions.
 - g. Performs rough lay of the mortar positions.
 - h. Selects squad sectors and crew-served weapon positions, tentative obstacle locations, alternate and supplementary defensive positions, and exit routes.

- i. Establishes local security.
- J. Identifies hide positions that provide cover and concealment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Firing positions are identified that support the supported unit's mission.

TASK: 10D.5.1 EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

CONDITIONS(S): The unit must operate in the presence of an enemy air threat.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit employs air attack warning procedures.
- a. Unit has alarm procedure to warn all personnel of an impending attack.
 - b. Airguards maintain continuous surveillance or assigned sectors.
 - c. OP personnel are assigned airguard duties.
 - d. Special airguards are designated if OPs cannot effectively observe local airspace.
 - e. Airguards are rotated hourly.
 - f. Airguards use correct search techniques for flat terrain and hilly terrain:
 - 1) Flat terrain. Start at 20 degrees above the horizon. Using short eye movements, work up and across, then down and across the sky. Continue scan pattern below the horizon.
 - 2) Hilly terrain. Use the horizon as starting point and prominent terrain features as reference points. Search in short movements up the sky, over, and then down. Continue this movement across the terrain and below the horizon.
 - g. Airguards are familiar with signs of aircraft (sun reflections from aircraft canopies or cockpit windows; blade flash for rotating helicopter blades; smoke trails from jet aircraft, missiles, or rockets; dust and excessive movement of vegetation from helicopter blades; helicopter blade and aircraft engine noise).
 - h. All Marines know emergency air attack signals.
 - 1) NATO standard audible warning; Unbroken warbling siren for one minute OR succession of long blasts on a noisemaking air device (about three seconds on and one second off) OR vocal alert, "Air attack."
 - 2) NATO standard visual warning: Red symbol in square shape; outline lit at night.
 - 3) Any unit-specific SOP warning.
 - i. Airguards can distinguish friendly and hostile aircraft.
 - j. Airguards detect all aircraft in their assigned sector.
 - k. Airguards immediately disseminate air attack warning upon detecting enemy aircraft.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- l. Air attack warning is disseminated in time for entire unit to take damage-limiting measures.
 - m. Unit rehearses air attack alarms and warning,
 - n. Enemy aircraft actions are reported to higher headquarters.
 - o. Unit has continuous airguard observation in all directions.
 - p. Attached air defense systems are integrated into platoon air defense plan.
- .2 ____ Unit takes attack avoidance measures.
- a. Unit uses all available natural and man-made concealment.
 - b. Unit personnel camouflage themselves and equipment.
 - c. Shiny areas are covered or shaded, especially windshields and optics.
 - d. Leaders verify that their units are well camouflaged.
- .3 ____ Unit takes damage-limiting measures.
- a. Unit maintains maximum dispersion permitted by terrain consistent with the requirement for command and control.
 - b. Unit uses available natural and man-made cover to maximum advantage.
 - c. Unit improves cover as time permits, consistent with mission.
- .4 ____ Unit takes active defense measures.
- a. Decision to fire is made by leader (either at the moment of attack or during planning). Decision is consistent with assigned mission and tactical situation.
 - b. Engaged aircraft is positively identified as enemy or is observed committing a hostile act against friendly troops.
 - c. Unit engages enemy with tracer rounds.
 - d. Unit engages aircraft with every weapon that can be brought to bear.
 - a. Marines fire at their assigned, fixed aiming point.
 - f. Marines do not try to track the target aircraft or to estimate target range or speed.
 - g. Marines choose an aiming point according to the type of aircraft and its course, as follows:
- | <u>TYPE AIRCRAFT</u> | <u>COURSE</u> | <u>AIMING POINT</u> |
|----------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| Jet | Crossing | Two football fields in front |
| Jet | Overhead | " " " " |
| Jet | Directly at | Slightly above aircraft nose |
| Helicopter | Crossing | 1/2 football field in front |
| Helicopter | Hovering | Slightly above aircraft nose |
| Helicopter | Directly at | Slightly above aircraft body |
- h. Each member fires at maximum rate.
 - i. Each Marine continues to fire at the aiming point until ammunition is expended or when leader orders, CEASE FIRE.
 - j. All Marines immediately reload and prepare to engage follow-on attacking aircraft.
- .5 ____ Unit takes convoy attack avoidance measures.
- a. When possible, movement is performed during periods of limited visibility; at night and under strict blackout conditions or in bad weather (low clouds, rain, snow, fog).

14 Oct 94

- b. Unit moves along available hard-surface roads to avoid dust, when possible.
- c. When traveling on unpaved roads, unit reduces speed to eliminate dust.
- d. Leader selects routes offering best natural concealment.
- e. When crossing open country during the day, unit travels when the sun is high, if possible, to avoid casting long, highly visible shadows.

.6 ____ Unit takes convoy damage limiting.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit maintains air attack warning system. Unit takes measures to avoid air attack. Unit destroys or turns back attacking aircraft.

TASK: 10D.5.3 MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The unit is operating where it can be detected by the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit employs camouflage and concealment.
- a. Vehicles and personnel do not perform unnecessary movement that would allow the enemy to observe them.
 - b. The outlines of mortar positions and vehicles are modified to blend their shadows with terrain shadows.
 - c. Available shades positions are used for mortars and vehicles. Vehicles parked in shadows are moved as shadows shift.
 - d. Obvious firing positions are avoided (road junctions, hilltops).
 - e. Reflective surfaces are covered with non reflective materials (cloth, mud, camouflage stick).
 - f. Camouflage breaks up the distinctive outline of personnel and equipment. Camouflage nets are hung properly.
 - g. When possible, sections and platoon use terrain mortar positioning to avoid obvious mortar formations.
 - h. Color of camouflage is appropriate to the local surroundings.
 - i. Unit practices dispersion of personnel and equipment.
 - j. Mortar position camouflage does not obstruct mortar's fire and movement.
 - k. Foliage is not stripped near fighting positions, and earthen berms are camouflaged.
 - l. Crews obliterate vehicle tracks leading into positions.
 - m. Leaders inspect their unit's camouflage, platoon sergeant supervises the preparation and maintenance of camouflage.

.2 ____ Unit Establishes OPs.

- a. Leaders supervise emplacement of OPs.
 - b. OPs personnel know in detail their duties, what actions to take if the enemy is detected, and when and how to return to the unit's position.
 - c. Personnel in the perimeter know the locations of OPs within their sector.
 - d. OPs are repositioned when required by changing visibility conditions.
 - e. OPs are within range of supporting small-arms fire from the perimeter.
 - f. OPs have direct communication with the unit.
 - g. OP locations provide cover and concealment to occupants.
 - h. OPs have covered and concealed routes to perimeter, when possible.
 - i. OPs are operated in reliefs. At least two Marines man each OP relief.
- .3 ____ Unit performs Stand-to.
- a. Stand-to is performed at least 30 minutes before BMNT and EENT.
 - b. Personnel are awake, dressed, and ready for combat.
 - c. Vehicles are topped off with fuel, stocked with a basic load of ammunition, and loaded to the extent possible, less deployed weapons.
 - d. Weapons are clean, assembled, and ready for action.
 - e. Unit checks radios, aiming post lights (EENT only), and the lay of guns.
- .4 ____ Unit performs silent watch.
- a. Unit minimizes all sounds that might be detected by the enemy and interfere with friendly security elements.
 - b. Silent watch is maintained during lulls in battle and limited visibility.
 - c. Vehicle engines are run to ensure batteries are charged and ready before silent watch.
- .5 ____ Unit maintains local security.
- a. Unit leader assigns an area of surveillance to each squad.
 - b. Available binoculars are used during daylight and NODs at night.
 - c. Local security is continuous and in all directions.
 - d. Unit conducts security patrols around its perimeter, situation permitting. Personnel in perimeter are briefed on the routes and times of the patrols in their sector.
 - e. Leaders locate positions and sectors of fire are coordinated to ensure overlapping fires.
 - f. Sleep and work plans ensure continuous alert surveillance.
- .6 ____ Unit emplaces warning and security devices.
- a. Early-warning devices and security devices are emplaced as available and as time permits--for example, trip flares, booby traps, field-expedient early-warning devices, mechanical ambushes.
 - b. All unit personnel are aware of the type and location of warning devices and free lanes.
 - c. Leaders supervise emplacement of warning devices.
- .7 ____ Unit maintain noise and light discipline.

14 Oct 94

- a. Vehicle vision block covers are emplaced at night.
- b. During evening stand-to, vehicle panel control lights are tested.
- c. Volume on radios and headphones is turned down.
- d. At night, Marines use red or blue-green filters on flashlights.
- e. All unnecessary internal vehicle lights are turned off.
- f. During darkness, one member of each crew checks the outside of vehicles for any visible light from inside.
- g. Fast movements with vehicles and rapid idling are avoided.
- h. FDC relays fire commands and other data using field telephones or messengers, when possible.
- i. Ramps and hatches are closed before dark, whenever possible. Hatches are not slammed shut.
- j. Mounted generators are sandbagged, when removed from FDC vehicle, generators are dug-in and sandbagged.
- k. Personnel avoid making loud noises (loud talking, laughing, metal on metal sounds) or creating light at night (fires, smoking).

.8 ____ Unit maintains electronic and communications security.

- a. Unit uses radios only when alternate, more secure means of communication do not meet mission requirements.
- b. Radio operators require other communicating stations to authenticate, using only authorized authentication systems.
- c. Tactical situation permitting, unit uses directional antennas, low radio power, remote antennas, minimum transmission times, and radio sites behind hills between itself and the enemy.
- d. Leaders enforce net discipline, correct CEOI and RATELO procedures, and limit transmissions to official traffic.
- e. Leaders ensure radios operate in secure mode, when possible. When not in secure mode, information is transmitted using authorized codes; transmission patterns are avoided.

.9 ____ Unit exercises information security.

- a. Information is controlled on a need-to-know basis.
- b. Fraternization with civilians is prohibited.
- c. Uncontrolled maps do not show the friendly order of battle.
- d. All vehicle markings are removed or masked.
- e. Personnel do not carry sensitive information among personal items.
- f. Unit exercises trash discipline.
- g. Unit safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit takes effective measures to disguise and conceal itself, to prevent the enemy from approaching or infiltrating itself without detection, and to deny the enemy information from radio transmissions.

TASK: 10D.5.4 CONDUCT A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon must conduct a passage of lines. The platoon commander must coordinate directly with the stationary unit. The passage of lines is either forward or rearward.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander performs preliminary coordination with stationary unit.
- a. Platoon commander coordinates with the stationary unit commander or his authorized representative.
 - b. Platoon commander provides the following information:
 - 1) Mortar unit identification.
 - 2) Size of mortar unit conducting passage of lines.
 - 3) Time of execution of passage of lines.
 - 4) Area of mortar unit's operation.
 - c. Platoon commander obtains the following information:
 - 1) Nature of the terrain.
 - 2) Known or suspected enemy positions.
 - 3) Likely enemy ambush sites.
 - 4) Latest enemy activity.
 - 5) Detailed information on friendly positions.
 - 6) Obstacle Locations.
 - 7) Fire plan (to include restrictive fire control measures).
 - 8) Support the stationary unit can provide (sire support, vehicle recovery, reaction force).
 - 9) Procedures to be used by the mortar unit and guide during the passage.
 - 10) Location of contact point and initial rally point.
 - d. Platoon commander coordinates communications with stationary unit to include:
 - 1) Far recognition signals.
 - 2) Near recognition signals.
 - 3) Running password.
 - 4) Challenge and password.

14 Oct 94

5) Command and mortar fire direction call signs and frequencies.

6) Other CEOI information needed.

a. Platoon commander integrates direct and indirect fires of the stationary unit into his fire support plan.

.2 ____ Unit prepares to conduct forward passage of lines.

a. Mortar unit leader makes contact with stationary unit's guide at contact point.

b. Mortar unit moves into the previously coordinated initial rally point as directed by the guide.

c. Mortar unit leader issues a contingency plan to subordinate leaders before departing to make final coordination.

d. Mortar unit leader completes final coordination with forward unit commander to learn of recent enemy activity or changes in the situation.

e. Mortar unit leader and guide return to the mortar unit at the initial rally point.

f. All mortar unit members are counted to ensure all are present and to verify they are all mounted on their vehicles.

g. Mortar unit moves to a covered and concealed position near the passage point as directed by the guide.

h. Guide is informed of the number of Marines conducting the passage and the number and types of mortar platoon vehicles.

.3 ____ Unit prepares to conduct rearward passage of lines.

a. Mortar unit halts and establishes a reentry rally point.

b. Mortar unit contacts the stationary unit.

1) Mortar unit contacts the stationary unit by radio and tells it by using a code word that his unit is ready to reenter. **OR**

2) If radio communication is not possible, before reentry on Marine from the mortar mortar unit contacts an OP from the stationary unit using the challenge and password. **OR**

3) If radio communication is not possible and no OP from the stationary unit can be found, the mortar unit leader reconnoiters for the previously coordinated contact point.

c. Before departing the reentry rally point, the mortar unit leader issues a contingency plan.

d. A small security team accompanies the mortar unit leader to the contact point.

e. At the contact point, the mortar unit contacts stationary unit personnel using far and near recognition signals.

f. All mortar unit members are counted in the reentry rally point to ensure all are present and to verify they are all mounted on their vehicles.

g. Mortar unit leader bring a the mortar unit forward.

h. Guide is informed of the number of Marines and the number and types of mortar platoon vehicles conducting the passage.

.4 ____ Unit conducts passage of lines.

a. Mortar unit monitors the command net of the stationary unit for changes in the tactical situation.

- b. Mortar unit arrives at the specified passage point at the specified time.
- c. Vehicles are counted and identified by a mortar unit leader and guide as they move through the passage point to verify that all mortar unit vehicles have passed.
- d. Mortar unit moves through designated passage lanes without halting.
- e. Mortar unit avoids obstacles of stationary unit.
- f. All mortar unit members know the running password.

.5 ____ Unit completes a rearward passage of Lines.

- a. Mortar unit leader goes to the command post of the stationary unit and reports on any matters concerning the unit's area of responsibility.
- b. Mortar unit moves to an assembly area led by the guide.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made with the stationary unit. The unit conducts passage of lines at the coordinated time and place.

10D.6 SUSTAIN

TASK: 10D.6.1 PREPARE FOR COMBAT

CONDITION(S): The unit is ordered to prepare to conduct combat operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Unit performs maintenance of organizational equipment.

- a. Maintenance is performed on vehicles, weapons, NODs, communications equipment, NBC equipment, and any other mission-essential, special equipment.
- b. Equipment operators conduct preoperations checks IAW applicable operator TMs.
- c. Operators correct all operator-level equipment deficiencies and defects within their capability.
- d. Leaders inspect all mission-essential equipment for serviceability.
- e. Platoon sergeant requests required maintenance support in time for all essential equipment to be serviceable by ready time.
- f. All vehicles are topped off with fuel.
- g. All secure communications equipment is placed into operation and communications checks performed.

.2 ____ Unit performs resupply.

- a. Platoon sergeant requests required supplies.
- b. Each section's basic load of ammunition is replenished.
- c. Ammunition for special fire support requirements is obtained.

14 Oct 94

- d. Requested rations are sufficient for unit until next planned resupply.
- .3 ____ Unit prepares weapons systems for operations.
- a. Aiming circles and compasses are declinated at a surveyed declination station.
 - b. The established zero is applied to all weapons.
 - c. Mortars are boresighted.
 - d. Functional checks are performed on all weapons.
 - e. Weapons are test-fired, if situation permits.
 - f. All night sights and NODs are installed, boresighted, and zeroed on their weapons.
 - g. Batteries and lamps for fire control instruments and sights are checked and replaced, as needed.
 - h. Optics and weapons are clean.
- .4 ____ Marines prepare their equipment.
- a. Individual LBE is worn IAW unit SOP.
 - b. LBE is properly fitted, silenced, and strap ends are secured.
 - c. All canteens and water cans are filled with potable water.
 - d. All personnel wear two silenced identification tags around their necks.
 - e. All personnel are clean-shaven.
 - f. All Marines are in specified MOPP.
 - g. Backpacks and duffel bags are packed IAW unit SOP, OPORD, or FRAGO.
 - h. Personnel wear uniform and body armor, and carry other equipment specified by unit SOP, OPORD, or FRAGO.
 - i. ALL protective masks are fitted and checked for leaks.
 - j. M8 paper and M258-series kits are present and stowed in the protective mask carrier.
 - k. Individual weapons are clean and functional.
 - l. All magazines are clean, functional, and stowed in ammunition pouches.
 - m. Hand grenades are strapped onto ammunition pouches with pins bent and safety clasps in place.
 - n. Leaders conduct personnel inspections.
- .5 ____ Unit combat-loads vehicles.
- a. All equipment and supplies are stowed and mounted securely IAW TMs and unit load plans.
 - b. Ammunition is readily accessible to reload crew-served weapons.
 - c. Tools and camouflage nets are stowed to permit rapid access for repairs/position preparation.
 - d. Stowed supplies and equipment do not interfere with the operation of vehicles, mortars, and machine guns; vision of driver or vehicle commander; or air flow to the vehicle engine or radios.
 - e. Externally stowed items are protected from moisture.

- .6 ____ Unit remains operational and maintains security during preparations.
- a. Perimeter security is manned by at least on third of all personnel.
 - b. At least one mortar in each section is ready to deliver indirect fire support at all times.
 - c. At least one third of machine guns are operational at any one time.
 - d. All operational machine guns are constantly manned.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All mission-oriented equipment is operational by the time designated in the OPORD. All essential supplies are on hand.

TASK: 10D.6.2 CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE

CONDITION(S): The unit has just completed a combat operation. It has expended/lost materiel/personnel requiring it to consolidate and reorganize.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit consolidates.
- a. Leaders ensure OPs are manned.
 - b. Leaders reposition fighting positions and machine guns, assign new sectors to reestablish 360-degree security and cover likely avenues of approach, plan new obstacles, and inspect preparations, as needed.
 - c. Following enemy ground contact, a patrol searches the area to ensure there is no enemy present.
 - d. Unit repairs and prepares obstacles, fighting positions, and camouflage.
 - e. Communications with supported unit, company headquarters, and battalion COC are reestablished.
 - f. Personnel assuming new duty positions are briefed on current unit status and tactical situation.
- .2 ____ Unit processes EPWs and captured equipment.
- a. Leaders designate and supervise unit personnel to process EPWs.
 - b. EPWs are searched for documents, weapons, and any special equipment.
 - c. All items of intelligence value are identified, secured, and reported IAW local instructions to the battalion S2.
 - d. Silence is enforced among EPWs.
 - e. EPWs are segregated by military rank, civilians, sex, and nationality.
 - f. EPWs and captured equipment are forwarded to the company collection point as quickly as possible.

4 Oct 94

- g. EPWs are safeguarded from any mistreatment, humiliation, degrading acts, abuse, or injury IAW the Geneva Convention.
 - h. Unit allows EPWs to retain their protective masks, personal safety equipment, and personal identification papers.
 - i. EPWs, documents, and equipment are tagged specifying date, time, and location of capture and capturing unit.
 - j. Enough guards are assigned to escort EPWs to company collection point --
 - 1) By vehicle. At least one guard accompanies each vehicle.
 - 2) By foot. Enough guards are assigned to secure all four sides of the formation.
 - k. Leader selects route to evacuate EPWs that is away from friendly forces.
 - l. EPW litter patients are evacuated through medical channels.
- .3 ____ Leaders report personnel, equipment, ammunition and supply losses.
- a. Squad leaders report squad losses to section sergeants.
 - b. Section sergeants report section losses to platoon sergeant.
 - c. Personnel losses are reported IAW unit SOP to company headquarters.
 - d. Materiel losses are reported IAW unit SOP to company headquarters, identifying destroyed, damaged-nonrepairable, and recoverable/repairable vehicles and equipment.
 - e. Enough replacements and materiel are requested from higher headquarters to replenish losses.
 - f. Platoon commander requests maintenance, recover, and evacuation support from company headquarters.
 - g. Reports are sent without delay to higher headquarters.
- .4 ____ Unit reorganizes personnel.
- a. Unit fills key positions in the following order of priority; Platoon commander/sergeant, section sergeant, FDC computer, squad leader, gunner, assistant gunner, ammunition bearer/driver, and FDC radio operator.
 - b. Platoon and section chains of command are reestablished.
 - c. Maximum number of mortars and machine guns is manned.
 - d. Each FDC has at least one computer.
- .5 ____ Unit reorganizes materiel.
- a. Equipment, ammunition, and supplies are redistributed evenly among subordinate units IAW their assigned mission.
 - b. All subordinate units can perform assigned mission within limitations of available materiel.
 - c. Top priority for radio communications capability is given to the FDC.
- .6 ____ Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
- a. Designated Marines give first aid to casualties.
 - b. Medical assistance is requested to provide additional treatment.
 - c. Unit evacuates casualties and processes KIAs.

- 1) Ground evacuation. Unit evacuates WIAs with organic assets or requests ambulance support.
 - 2) Air evacuation.
 - a) Helicopter evacuation is requested in correct format.
 - b) The best available covered and concealed LZ is selected and marked.
 - c) WIAs are moved to LZ while receiving continuous treatment.
 - d) Unit assists flight crew with loading WIAs.
 - d. Unit treats and evacuates casualties consistent with triage.
 - e. KIAs are evacuated to battalion trains.
 - f. WIAs are not transported with KIAs.
 - g. Unit retains classified documents.
 - h. Unit recovers government property previously under control of KIAs.
 - i. Personal effects remain with KIAs.
 - j. Personal effects of KIAs are recovered, tagged, and forwarded to higher headquarters.
 - k. When evacuation assistance is requested, senior leader present determines the category of precedence (urgent, priority, routine, or tactical immediate).
- .7 ____ Unit recovers and evacuates damaged vehicles and equipment.
- a. Unit evacuates all damaged vehicles and equipment.
 - b. Damaged equipment is evacuated to the closest established UMCP.
 - c. Damaged equipment is destroyed in place to prevent its capture, consistent with tactical situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Unit reestablishes security. It is able to continue its fire support mission consistent with limitations in personnel and materiel.

TASK: 10D.6.3 SUSTAIN

CONDITION(S): The unit must conduct extended operations away from its support base.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Unit submits status reports.
- a. Unit reports personnel strength and casualties IAW unit SOP.
 - b. Unit reports vehicle and equipment status and losses IAW unit SOP.
 - c. Unit reports supply status IAW unit SOP.
 - d. Reports are submitted on time IAW unit SOP.

14 Oct 94

- e. Reports are submitted following major changes in status, which impair mission accomplishment.
- .2 ____ Leaders ensure unit is sustained.
- a. Platoon commander anticipates resupply needs and ensures timely resupply and maintenance support requests are submitted.
 - b. Platoon sergeant:
 - 1) Ensures required basic load and platoon equipment are on hand.
 - 2) Issues timely ammunition resupply requests.
 - 3) Supervises ammunition prestockage, when used.
 - 4) Ensures maintenance is actively supervised by subordinate leaders.
 - 5) Coordinates and supervises resupply and maintenance support.
 - 6) Request fortification materials.
 - c. Section sergeants supervise maintenance of section vehicles and equipment.
 - d. Squad leaders:
 - 1) Implement squad sleep plan.
 - 2) Supervise maintenance of squad and personal weapons and equipment.
 - e. All leaders know the locations of combat trains and field trains.
- .3 ____ Leaders submit support requests.
- a. Request is based on actual losses and expenditures, and forecasted requirements.
 - b. Unit requests enough replacement personnel, rations, fuel, oil, lubricants, ammunition, and repair parts to meet expected needs until next resupply.
 - c. Requests are submitted soon enough so as not to impair current or future operations.
 - d. Requests are made through the company XO or first sergeant.
- .4 ____ Unit coordinates resupply.
- a. Resupply is performed as quickly as possible in covered and concealed positions.
 - b. Supplies are distributed throughout unit consistent with their current and anticipated operations and needs.
 - c. When supplies have been prestocked at firing positions, unit consumes prestocked items first.
 - d. When possible, unit conducts resupply in position instead of out of position.
 - e. Unit prepares resupply point, when appropriate, according to resupply transport:
 - 1) Helicopter: Unit prepares marks, and secures LZ to the rear of the unit's position under leader supervision.
 - 2) Wheeled vehicle: Unit selects a covered and concealed unloading site with trafficable routes leading in and out.
 - f. Unit resupply does not restrict its communications, movement, delivery of direct fire, or ability to provide indirect fire support.
- .5 ____ Unit Rearms.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Unit makes advance preparations when rearming:
 - 1) Remaining stowed ammunition is repositioned to leave easy-to-stow areas open.
 - 2) Marines fill all M16 magazines.
 - 3) Adequate tools such as wire cutters and crowbars are available to open ammunition boxes.
 - 4) A plan exists to maintain security, divide ammunition, and unload and stow ammunition.
- b. The squad unpacks the ammunition and loads it on the vehicle IAW the vehicle TM and the unit SOP.
- c. Squad unpacks ammunition IAW SOP and mission.
- d. Squads load entire basic load of mortar ammunition onto mortar carriers within 45 minutes.

.6 ____ Unit refuels.

- a. During out-of-position refueling when the section must also have full firepower, mortars are ground-mounted. The gunner and assistant gunner remain with the mortar.
- b. When near the enemy, driver backs vehicle out of the position and moves undetected on a covered and concealed route to the fuel tanker.
- c. When refueled out of position by a fuel tanker, vehicle is positioned as directed by the fuel tanker crew.
- d. Vehicle's portable fire extinguisher is kept next to the fuel filler cap throughout refueling.
- e. When refueled from a fuel tanker, the fuel filler nozzle is grounded by ensuring good metal-to-metal contact.
- f. Vehicle is refueled IAW TM, allowing enough space for fuel expansion.
- g. Receipt of fuel is logged.
- h. Vehicle returns to unit immediately after refueling.

.7 ____ Unit conducts preventive maintenance on Organizational equipment.

- a. Maintenance is performed IAW TMs, lubrication orders, and any other maintenance directives.
- b. Priority for maintenance is given to weapons, vehicles, and radios.
- c. Units perform emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued operation and availability of equipment.
- d. Leaders inspect maintenance performed by their subordinates.

.8 ____ Unit sustains Marines.

- a. All injured Marines who do not warrant evacuation as casualties are given medical treatment as far forward as possible.
- b. Marines receive enough food, water, and rest consistent with mission requirements.
- c. Leaders prescribe uniform consistent with weather conditions and mission.
- d. Attached medical personnel routinely check the physical well-being of Marines.

.9 ____ Unit performs field sanitation operations.

- a. Marines shave each day.
 - b. Minor wounds are cleaned and bandaged to prevent infection. Exposed bandages are olive drab.
 - c. If wearing chemical protective overgarments continuously, Marines try to bathe and change undergarments every 48 hours to avoid rashes.
 - d. Each Marine's rucksack or duffel bag contains personal hygiene equipment and spare clothing IAW unit SOP.
 - e. Marines drink only potable water as identified by the field sanitation team.
 - f. Unit maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW unit SOP.
 - g. Unit purifies potable water using iodine tablets, calcium hypochlorite ampules, or by boiling.
 - h. Latrines and urinals are downhill from and at least 100 feet from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas. Hand-washing facilities are provided with a soakage pit beneath.
 - i. Marines prepare, use, and fill catholes during mobile operations.
 - j. Unit protects food from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests.
 - k. Marines clean and disinfect mess kits before and after use.
 - l. Unit takes measures to reduce exposure to insects and rodents.
 - m. Marines wash hands before eating or preparing food.
 - n. Leaders ensure their Marines follow field sanitation procedures.
- .10 ____ Unit plans and conducts tactical feeding.
- a. All mortars are operational throughout feeding.
 - b. At least one computer is present in the FDC.
 - c. All machine guns are manned.
 - d. Marines to not use heat tabs in enclosed areas where fumes can be trapped.
 - e. Unit burns or buries garbage, waste, and trash when authorized. When not authorized, waste is carried with pLatoon and disposed of as soon as possible.
 - f. Marines remain 3 to 5 meters apart in the serving line and at the eating site.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Essential personnel and logistical requirements are requested and coordinated. Routine maintenance is performed. The health and well-being of Marines are maintained.

CONDITION(S): The unit has information that must be forwarded to the next higher headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Unit submits a SITREP.

a. Unit submits the SITREP.

- 1) Size.
- 2) Activity.
- 3) Location.
- 4) Unit.
- 5) Time.
- 6) Equipment.

b. SITREP is sent by fastest means available.

c. SITREP is dispatched within five minutes after receipt of the information.

d. Unit submits the report even if the information is not complete.

.2 ____ Unit submits a SHELREP/MORTREP/BOMREP.

a. Unit uses the commander's SITREP (Line 23) report the SHELREP/MORTREP/BOMREP.

b. Report includes the following elements.

- 1) Unit of origin.
- 2) Position of observer.
- 3) Direction.
- 4) Time from.
- 5) Time to.
- 6) Area bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared.
- 7) Number and nature of weapons, aircraft.
- 8) Nature of fire.
- 9) Number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds.
- 10) Flash-to-bang time.
- 11) Damage.
- 12) Angle of fall or descent if crater analysis can be conducted.

c. Unit submits report within 30 minutes after event.

d. Unit submits report even if information is not complete.

e. Encryption is IAW unit and higher headquarters unit SOP.

.3 ____ Unit submits a MIJI report.

a. Unit reports all meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference.

- b. Unit submits report to the net control station within 10 minutes after event occurs.
- c. Report is submitted by secure means, when possible.

.4 ____ Unit submits an Operational Occurrence report.

- a. Unit submits report immediately or as soon as the tactical situation permits.
- b. Unit submits report IAW unit SOP or OPORDs/FRAGOs currently in effect.

.5 ____ Unit submits NBC 1 report.

- a. Unit submits NBC 1 initial report within five minutes after attack.
- b. Unit submits reports to higher headquarters.
- c. Report is sent by secure means, when possible.
- d. Report includes the most reliable and complete information available.
- e. Report has the correct precedence:
 - 1) Flash precedence for initial burst.
 - 2) Immediate precedence for subsequent attacks.

.6 ____ Unit submits NBC 4 report.

- a. Unit submits reports to higher headquarters.
- b. Report is sent by secure means, when possible.
- c. Report includes the most reliable and complete information available.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All reports are submitted on time, in the correct format, and disseminated to the appropriate level.

TASK: 10D.6.5 PLAN AND CONTROL COMBAT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): (Plan) The platoon receives a combat mission to execute. There is enough time to conduct troop-leading procedures. (Control) The platoon is conducting a combat operation in support of the battalion.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander receives the mission.

- a. Recommends employment techniques and positioning of platoon to the battalion commander and S3 to support the scheme of maneuver.
- b. Identifies additional required supplies and equipment.
- c. Determines and assigns any special tasks to be performed.
- d. Performs reverse planning, allocating enough time for all tasks to be performed.
- e. Allocates two thirds of available time to his subordinates for performing their tasks.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Tells subordinates the ready time for the operation.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander issues a warning order.
- a. Issues warning order within 10 minutes after receipt of OPORD.
 - b. Issues warning order to all subordinate leaders.
 - c. Warning order must state the mission, time of the operation, special instructions, and time and place for OPORD issue.
 - d. Special instructions in warning order address important preparations not covered by SOP.
 - e. Squad leaders issue warning orders to all squad members.
 - f. Unit performs SOP actions following issue of warning order.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander makes a tentative plan.
- a. Tentative plan is consistent with METT-TSL.
 - b. Tentative plan supports the commander's intent.
 - c. Tentative plan supports accomplishment of all specified and implied tasks.
- .4 ____ Leaders start necessary movement.
- .5 ____ Leader reconnoiters.
- a. Leader performs a map reconnaissance.
 - b. Leader performs ground or aerial reconnaissance of the area of operations.
 - c. Leader selects primary and alternate positions, based on commander's guidance, that support the entire combat operation.
 - d. Plan is revised based on leader's reconnaissance.
 - e. Ground/aerial reconnaissance does not compromise the mission.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander completes the plan.
- a. Indirect fire plan supports and facilitates battalion scheme of maneuver by destroying, suppressing, or obscuring known or suspected enemy positions.
 - b. Fire support coordination measures and required artillery support are coordinated with the FO.
 - c. Plan establishes control measures that depict the platoon's scheme of maneuver, mission, and if time permits, subordinate unit maneuver.
 - d. Plan supports the commander's intent and is consistent with all his guidance.
 - e. Individual, group, and series targets are coordinated with the FO.
 - f. Plan provides optimal support to units with priority of fires.
 - g. Plan identifies support requirements essential to the mission.
 - h. Plan is consistent with advantages and disadvantages of terrain in the area of operations.
 - i. Plan identifies ammunition requirements for firing against all planned targets and targets of opportunity.
 - j. Plan reflects enemy strength, dispositions, equipment, and capabilities.
- .7 ____ Leaders issue the complete order.

14 Oct 94

- a. Platoon commander issues the order to subordinate leaders.
- b. Order is issued at the time and place specified in the warning order.
- c. When possible, subordinate leaders receive order while observing the terrain over which they will operate. When this is not possible, a terrain model or sketch is used.
- d. Each Marine knows the basic plan of action.
- e. Order does not restate information contained in existing unit SOPs.
- f. If time permits, platoon commander issues a full five-paragraph OPORD that includes:
 - 1) Situation.
 - 2) A clear, concise mission statement that addresses who, what, when, and why (but not how).
 - 3) Commander's intent.
 - 4) A plan for movement with supporting control measures.
 - 5) A plan for indirect fires.
 - 6) Missions for all subordinate organic and attached elements, special teams, and individuals.
 - 7) Coordinating instructions listing tactical instructions applying to two or more elements.
 - 8) A plan for reorganization and service support, and administrative instructions.
 - 9) Location of platoon commander and platoon sergeant, succession of command, and location of command posts.
 - 10) CE operation instructions used during the operation.
- g. If time is not available for a full five paragraph OPORD, a FRAGO is issued to include the mission, commander's intent, direction of fire, firing positions, displacement techniques, and command relationship with supported unit(s).
- h. Platoon commander asks for and answers all questions about the order.
- i. Platoon commander performs time check (time hack).
- j. Following the order, subordinates have at least two-thirds of the total preparation time to get ready.

.8 ____ Leaders supervise preparations.

- a. Leaders question Marines to verify the order is understood.
- b. Leaders direct preparations to ensure order is properly carried out.
- c. Unit conducts rehearsals of high-priority tasks, time permitting.
- d. Rehearsals should be conducted on terrain resembling that on which the platoon will fight and under the expected light conditions.
- e. Leaders inspect personnel, equipment, supplies, and ammunition to verify preparations are complete.
- f. All preparations are completed at or before the ready time.
- g. FDC's coordinate fire plans, schedules of fire, and fire coordination procedures with the battalion staff, FO, companies, scout platoon, and attached CS elements IAW unit SOP/OPORD.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. FDC computes firing data in advance for each planned target that can be engaged from each planned firing position.
- i. Platoon commander ensures the FDC transfers the locations of friendly units from his overlay to the firing chart.
- j. Squad and section leaders transfer all appropriate graphics from platoon commander's map and overlay onto their own. Transferred graphics include all control measures used during the operation and all other information that can be graphically depicted.
- k. Platoon commander ensures enough ammunition (by type) is on hand to engage planned targets and targets of opportunity.
- l. Unit prepares all radios with chosen frequencies before the operation begins.
- m. Controlling FDC opens the battalion mortar fire direction net before the operation begins.

.9 ____ Leaders issue FRAGOs.

- a. FRAGO must state what actions subordinates must immediately accomplish.
- b. FRAGO addresses essential changes in the following items:
 - 1) Situation.
 - 2) Organization.
 - 3) Orders to subordinate units stated element by element with none left out.
 - 4) Fire support to include any changes in priorities or assets.
 - 5) Coordinating instructions.

.10 ____ Leaders control movement.

- a. All leaders navigate and know their unit's current location to within a six-digit grid coordinate.
- b. Platoon commander directs mortar displacement and coordinates moves with COC to ensure continuous fire support.
- c. Platoon commander coordinates use of terrain with the COC, and resupply routes with the support platoon commander.
- d. Platoon sergeant supervises platoon movement, as needed.
- e. Section sergeants control movement of their sections during split-platoon operations.
- f. Unit reports its location, as required, IAW applicable control measures to the COC.
- g. Squad leaders control movement of squads and place squads into position.

.11 ____ Units maintain communications.

- a. FDCs continuously monitor battalion fire direction net and any other specified nets.
- b. Squads are in continuous communication with FDC. When employed singly, squad maintains communications with supported unit and its FOs.
- c. When using radios, units use challenge and reply authentication IAW the CEOI, only authorized codes and ciphers, and only authorized call signs and frequencies. Messages are encoded and decoded without error.
- d. Leaders ensure their subordinates use proper radiotelephone operating procedures.

.12 ____ Platoon commander coordinates fire support during the operation.

14 Oct 94

- a. Acts as FSC in the absence of one from the supporting artillery battalion.
 - b. Keeps abreast of the enemy situation and location of friendly troops to ensure best use of ammunition and the safety of friendly troops.
 - c. Coordinates and controls all mortar fires.
- .13 ____ Sections coordinate with platoon headquarters, FO, and COC.
- a. Section sergeants keep platoon commander and platoon sergeant informed concerning ammunition status and tactical situation.
 - b. Section sergeants advise platoon commander when moves and displacements should be made.
 - c. Section sergeants keep platoon commander and platoon sergeant informed of ammunition status.
 - d. Section sergeants recommend when registrations should be conducted.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon commander develops a detailed plan to support the battalion's operation. Leaders communicate their plans to subordinates and supervise preparation. Leaders control their unit's movement and indirect fire support while maintaining continuous communications.

TASK: 10D.6.6 CONDUCT VEHICLE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The unit is conducting a tactical operation. The unit mission requires vehicles to operate.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Crew recovers or evacuates vehicles.
- a. Vehicle is recovered or evacuated as quickly as possible.
 - b. Personnel not directly involved in recovery or evacuation are dismounted and in position away from vehicle to provide local security.
 - c. Men and equipment from evacuated vehicle are redistributed among other vehicles, as needed.
 - d. Recovery or evacuation is performed IAW technical manual.
 - e. Tow cables, when used, are correctly employed to ensure safety and prevent damage to cables.
 - f. Recovery equipment is inspected before use to ensure it is serviceable.
 - g. When using two cables during recovery, personnel in vehicles keep their hatches closed, using periscopes to see hand signals.
 - h. When using tow cables during recovery and before operators apply power to rigging, dismounted personnel are located safely from the vehicle at a distance equal to 1 1/2 times the length of the longest line.
 - i. Only one signalman is designated to control the recovery operation.
- .2 ____ Crew abandons or destroys its vehicle.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Leader decides to abandon or destroy vehicle only after trying to recover or evacuate the vehicle. Decision to abandon or destroy vehicle is made by the platoon commander or senior leader present.
 - b. Vehicle is stripped of as much equipment as possible.
 - c. Crew dismounts vehicle and moves to covered and concealed position at least 50 meters from the vehicle.
 - d. Vehicle is destroyed within five minutes.
 - e. Vehicle is destroyed using the most effective and safest method that produces the least noise, light, and smoke signature.
 - f. If abandoned, vehicle is rendered inoperative so that it is of no immediate use to the enemy but can be readily repaired.
- .3 ____ Vehicle crew removes wounded from its vehicle.
- a. All Marines know and follow correct evacuation procedures for different casualties and for different vehicle positions.
 - b. If vehicle is damaged by enemy action, crew inspects vehicle for fire.
 - c. If possible, vehicle is moved to a safe location before removing casualty.
 - d. Casualty is checked for the extent of injury, and first aid is administered before removal, if appropriate.
 - e. Casualty does not suffer more injury while being evacuated.
- .4 ____ Crew extinguishes on board fire.
- a. Crew extinguishes fire in power plant compartment using fixed fire extinguisher.
 - 1) Driver stops vehicle and engine, and turns the master switch off.
 - 2) Crew member activates extinguisher, either externally or internally.
 - 3) Crew moves clear of vehicle.
 - b. Crew extinguishes fire using portable fire extinguisher.
 - 1) Extinguisher is removed from its mount in the personnel compartment.
 - 2) Crew member removes safety pin from handle, points nozzle at the base of the fire, then pulls the trigger.
 - c. Fire is extinguished within 15 seconds.
 - d. Least possible damage to equipment and injury to personnel are sustained.
- .5 ____ Driver negotiates steep slopes.
- a. Driver accelerates as the vehicle climbs a grade. Then he decelerates at the top of the grade.
 - b. When descending, driver decelerates and descends slowly.
 - c. When descending, driver approaches bottom cautiously to avoid digging.
 - d. Driver uses range 1 for 30 percent to 60 percent grades, and range 1 to 2 for up to thirty percent grade.
 - e. Driver steers in a series of short turns on side slopes, allowing debris to feed out of tracks.
 - f. Driver does not use engine or transmission to hold the vehicle on a slope.

14 Oct 94

- .6 ____ Driver negotiates a vertical obstacle.
- a. Vehicle is not damaged after negotiating obstacle.
 - b. Personnel are not injured after negotiating obstacle.
- .7 ____ Driver crosses a ditch or trench.
- a. Driver decelerates as the vehicle approaches the edge of the ditch or trench.
 - b. Driver uses gear range 1 or 1 to 2.
 - c. Driver accelerates when the track contacts the far side of the ditch or trench.
 - d. Driver does not try to cross a ditch or trench wider than 5 1/2 feet.
 - e. Vehicle is not damaged after negotiating ditch or trench.
- .8 ____ Vehicle crosses water obstacle.
- a. Crew reconnoiters the obstacle to select a crossing site.
 - b. Selected crossing site meets requirements IAW technical manual.
 - c. Vehicle and personnel are prepared IAW technical manual before arriving at the site in a covered and concealed location within 1 kilometer of the site.
 - d. Vehicle fords or swims IAW technical manual.
 - e. Crew performs after-water operations checks IAW technical manual.
 - f. Swimming vehicle is predipped and checked for leaks. Intercom and radio are checked to ensure they are operational.
 - g. If available, personnel wear life vests. Vests are not inflated inside the vehicle.
 - h. All personnel know emergency vehicle evacuation procedures.
- .9 ____ Vehicle crosses a bridge or raft.
- a. Crew prepares for the crossing IAW unit commander's orders.
 - b. Vehicle moves to the crossing site on the designated route, approaching the crossing point straight-on.
 - c. Crew follows all instructions of control personnel at the site.
 - d. (Bridge only.) Driver does not stop, accelerate, or change gears of vehicle on the bridge, and does not exceed 8 mph while crossing. OR
 - e. (Raft only.) Vehicle boards raft IAW instructions of the raft operators.
- .10 ____ Crew moves buttoned up.
- a. Vehicle hatches are closed and latched.
 - b. Driver reduces speed consistent with safety and tactical situation.
 - c. All periscope covers are removed. Vehicle commander maintains 360-degree observation using periscopes.
 - d. Crew resumes movement unbuttoned as soon as possible.
- .11 ____ Crew moves in vehicle during darkness.
- a. Interval between vehicles is reduced, as needed.
 - b. Driver reduces speed consistent with safety and tactical situation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. When moving in area with friendly dismounted personnel, ground guides are employed.
- d. Available guides are used while moving over unfamiliar terrain.
- e. Except when specifically authorized, no vehicle lights are displayed.
- f. Driver uses NODs or blackout lights only on order of the unit commander.
- g. Instrument lights are shielded or tuned to the lower setting before being turned on.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Crews safely recovers or evacuates its damaged vehicle. Crew performs correct actions to abandon or destroy its vehicle that cannot be recovered or evacuated. On-board fires are immediately extinguished, and onboard casualties are safely removed from the vehicle.

10D.7 NBC

TASK: 10D.7.1 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and that the platoon must implement actions to minimize casualties and damage. No Threat contact is anticipated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon implements defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.
 - a. Platoon commander issues warning order to the platoon.
 - b. Places vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.
 - c. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment; ties down essential antennas; takes down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.
 - d. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.
 - e. Zeros dosimeters.
 - f. Secures loose, flammable, and explosive items, and food and water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.
 - g. Ensures individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs.
 - h. Conducts periodic monitoring.
- .2 ____ The platoon takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation (FM 3-4, Chapter 3).
 - a. Conducts periodic monitoring.
 - b. Reports all dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon hardens positions and equipment, conducts periodic monitoring, and is able to continue its tactical mission following the attack.

TASK: 10D.7.2 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom-shaped cloud.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes immediate protective action.
 - a. Buttons up if mounted; drops to the floor if in shelter; or drops to the ground if in the open. Remains protected until blast effects have passed.
 - b. Reestablishes communications.
 - c. Prepares NBC 1 nuclear report. Forwards the NBC 1 nuclear report up the chain of command.
 - d. Reports casualties.
 - e. Identifies, treats, and ensures evacuations of casualties.
 - f. Evacuates fatalities.
 - g. Implements continuous monitoring.
 - h. Submits damage assessment to higher headquarters.
 - i. Continues mission.
- .2 ____ Platoon personnel put out fires. Extinguish secondary fires caused by smoldering debris, both on and around tanks, before they spread.
- .3 ____ The platoon inspects optics, fire control systems, gun bores, and automotive systems for serviceability, and field strips and cleans weapons before firing.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon takes actions to minimize the exposure to the the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.7.3 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is located within a predicted fallout area, and the unit mission does not allow significant movement. No Threat contact is anticipated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander takes appropriate action.
 - a. Maintains continuous monitoring.
 - b. Submits NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required by secure means, when possible.
 - c. Gathers and reports dosimeter data.
 - d. Plots NBC 3 report (if received), informs commander.
 - e. Requests optimum time of exit from higher headquarters.
 - f. Recommends actions to keep radiation exposure status (RES) within operational exposure guidance (OEG).
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for fallout.
 - a. Covers equipment, munitions, petroleum, oils and lubricants (POL), food, and water containers or places them inside shelters or vehicles.
 - b. Ensures as many personnel as possible occupy shelters or closed vehicles.
 - c. Minimizes skin exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, or wearing MOPP gear.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander develops a contingency plan.
 - a. Compares present platoon RES to OEG.
 - b. Ensures platoon does not exceed established OEG.
 - c. Selects whether or not to remain in location or relocate, based on actual fallout arrival, radiation dose received, and guidance received from higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon prepares response in accordance with unit SOP, continues mission, and reports effects to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10D.7.4 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Chemical warfare has been initiated or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and damage. No Threat contact is expected.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The Platoon commander issues a warning order to squads and subordinates.
- a. Platoon implements defensive preparation for a chemical attack.
 - b. Squad leaders direct actions to maximize protection consistent with the mission.
 - c. Squad Leaders enforce MOPP Level wear.
- .2 ____ Platoon takes additional action consistent with tactical situation by:
- a. Increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP protection as appropriate.
 - b. Hardening individual and platoon position.
 - c. Using existing, natural, and manmade terrain features as expedient shelters.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures personnel are prepared.
- a. Keeps clothes loosely fitted.
 - b. Performs field sanitation and personal hygiene.
 - c. Emplaces detection equipment properly.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon assumes MOPP Level 4 within 8 minutes, using the buddy system and completes the mission IAW OPOD.

TASK: 10D.7.5 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Automatic alarm sounds. Detector paper changes color. Automatic masking event occurs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes action.
- a. Stops breathing.
 - b. Puts on mask with hood.
 - c. Clears and checks mask. (Do not fasten the hood. Go immediately to the next step.)
 - d. Gives the alarm.
 - e. Takes cover.
 - f. Puts on gloves with liners.
 - g. Zips and fastens overgarment jacket.
 - h. Secures the hood, and then secures the overgarment to increase protection.
 - i. Puts on overboots.
 - j. Reports presence of standard and Warsaw Pact markers to supervisors, if present.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- .2 ____ Section leaders ensure Marines do no transfer contamination to interior of shelter.
 - a. Ensure entry and exit only when mission essential.
 - b. Ensure entry and exit procedures are conducted IAW unit SOP.
 - c. Periodically monitor interior air with M256 detector kit.
 - d. Implement MOPP level 3 or MOPP level 4 if persistent agents are used.
 - e. Ensure contaminated items are not stowed inside collective protection shelter.

- .3 ____ Platoon decontaminates skin, if required.
 - a. Mask.
 - b. Removes one decon 1 wipe packet.
 - c. Folds decon 1 wipe at the solid line marked "BEND," and then unfolds it.
 - d. Tears packet open at the notch, removes the wipe, and fully opens the wipe.
 - e. Wipes skin for 1 minute.
 - f. Drops decon 1 wipe to the ground.
 - g. Crushes the enclosed glass ampules in decon 2 wipe packet.
 - h. Folds the packet on the solid line marked "CRUSH AND BEND," and then unfolds it.
 - i. Tears packet open at the notch, and removes the wipe.
 - j. Fully opens the wipe. Lets the encased crushed glass ampules fall to the ground.
 - k. Wipes skin with the decon 2 wipe for 2 to 3 minutes.

- .4 ____ Platoon reorganizes.
 - a. Reestablishes chain of command and communications.
 - b. Receives squad, team, and crew status, consolidates, and passes to higher headquarters.
 - c. Identifies, treats, prepares, and evacuates casualties. Decontaminates killed in action (KIA) before medical evacuation.
 - d. Wraps, marks, and evacuates KIA to designated collection point.
 - e. Resumes mission.

- .5 ____ Platoon commander provides NBC reports.
 - a. Submits initial NBC 1 report (chemical).
 - b. Identifies type of agent.
 - c. Submits subsequent NBC 1 report (chemical) within 20 minutes after the attack.

- .6 ____ Platoon commander initiates unmasking-procedures with a chemical agent detection kit.
 - a. Chemical agent detection kit indicates negative results. Selects two or three individuals for the start of unmasking procedures.
 - b. Moves the selected individuals into a shady area to prevent false diagnosis.
 - c. Tells selected individuals to unmask for 5 minutes and to reseat and clear masks.
 - d. Observes for 10 minutes.

14 Oct 94

- e. If no symptoms are present after 10 minutes, gives the "ALL CLEAR."
- .7 ____ Platoon commander initiates unmasking procedures without a chemical agent detector kit.
- a. Uses a shady area, if available.
 - b. Selects two or three individuals to take a deep breath, hold it, break the seal of their masks, and keep their eyes wide open for 15 seconds.
 - c. Have individuals clear and reseal their masks. Observes individuals for 10 minutes.
 - d. If no symptoms occur after 10 minutes, have the same individuals again break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, clear, and reseal their masks.
 - e. Individuals should unmask again for 5 minutes, reseal and clear masks, and be observed for 10 minutes in a shady area.
 - f. If no symptoms appear in 10 minutes, asks permission from higher headquarters to unmask all personnel and give the "ALL CLEAR."
 - g. The remainder of the group unmask.
- .8 ____ Platoon commander replenishes chemical defense equipment and supplies.
- a. Requests replacement supplies.
 - b. Ensures replacement supplies are distributed.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon masks within 15 seconds of chemical agent alarm. MOPP level 4 is reached within 8 minutes. Starts chemical survey of area and reports all information to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10D.7.6 PERFORM CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Persistent agent attack has occurred, or contamination has been picked up from crossing a contaminated area. Support battalion provides replacement overgarments, one 5-gallon container of supertropical bleach (STB) per squad, and one long-handled brush for every two individuals. Individual survival decontamination is completed. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon conducts decontamination.
- a. Skin decontamination must be accomplished within 1 minute after the attack.
 - b. Conducts personal wipe down and operator's spraydown within 15 minutes.
 - c. Decontaminates only what is necessary.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander selects a squad and conducts MOPP gear exchange along with squad.
- a. Decontaminates gear. Both Marines perform individually.
 - b. Decontaminates hood. Buddy assists Marine.
 - c. Removes overgarment. Buddy assist Marine.
 - d. Removes overboots and gloves. Buddy assists Marine.

- e. Puts on overgarment. Buddy assists Marine.
- f. Puts on overboots and gloves. Buddy assists Marine.
- g. Secures hood. Buddy assists Marine.
- h. Secures gear. Both Marines perform this.
- i. Completes steps a through I in sequence.

.3 ____ Platoon resumes mission.

- a. Continues assigned operation mission.
- b. Continues to monitor NBC situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Platoon must perform decontamination actions within 15 minutes of directed actions. The platoon is decontaminated and resumes its mission without spreading contamination. No Marines in the platoon become chemical casualties.

TASK: 10D.7.7 CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): Time and the mission dictate a contaminated area cannot be bypassed without unacceptably delaying the unit. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander selects a route.

- a. Uses NBC 5 (chemical) report and/or recon reports to select a route.
- b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission.
- c. Obtains route clearance and approval.

.2 ____ Platoon prepares for crossing the area.

- a. Platoon commander directs MOPP level 4 for crossing the area.
- b. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders know route of march and/or have strip maps.
- c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up (mounted movement).
- d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material.
- e. Attached M9 detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.

.3 ____ Platoon crosses the area.

- a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.
- b. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible (if necessary).
- c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible.

- .4 ____ Platoon exits the contaminated area.
 - a. Checks for casualties.
 - b. Conducts necessary decontamination.
 - c. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon uses the best available route in accordance with METT-TSL and moves as quickly as possible through the area. No Marines in the platoon become chemical casualties.

TASK: 10D.7.8 CROSS A RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives orders to prepare for crossing a contaminated area. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon prepares for crossing.
 - a. Identifies extra shielding requirements and takes action to provide necessary items (such as using sandbags on the floor).
 - b. Places externally stored equipment inside, or covers it with available material.
 - c. Directs individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to wear a protective mask or cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags.
 - d. Establishes OEG and ensures all leaders and radiac equipment operators know it.
 - e. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, leaders, and radiac equipment operators are aware that the crossing is about to take place.
 - f. Checks radiac instruments.
 - g. Starts continuous monitoring.
- .2 ____ Platoon crosses the area.
 - a. Avoids stirring up dust.
 - b. Keeps out of dust cloud to greatest extent possible by increasing the internal or lateral dispersion between vehicles.
 - c. Conducts mounted movement buttoned-up to the greatest extent provided by each vehicle and weapon system
 - d. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible.
- .3 ____ Platoon exits the contaminated area.
 - a. Performs hasty radiological decontamination if mission permits.
 - b. Performs deliberate radiological decontamination if mission permits.
 - c. Arranges and plans for decontamination if mission does not permit.

ENCLOSURE (1)

d. Records radiation dose reading.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon crosses a contaminated area, by shortest route possible, without receiving radiation casualties or spreading contamination. No Marines become casualties as a result of crossing the contaminated area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-D-52

SECTION 10E

(AT) TOW PLATOON/SECTION

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10E.1 - MANEUVER</u>	
TASK 10E.1.1	X-E-1
OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	
TASK 10E.1.2	X-E-2
DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	
TASK 10E.1.3	X-E-4
CONDUCT ANTIARMOR AMBUSH	
TASK 10E.1.4	X-E-5
CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	
TASK 10E.1.5	X-E-7
MOVE MOUNTED	
TASK 10E.1.6	X-E-8
CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10E.1.7	X-E-9
MOVE (MOUT)	
TASK 10E.1.8	X-E-10
PREPARE DEFENSIVE POSITIONS (MOUT)	
<u>MPS 10E.2 - RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY</u>	
TASK 10E.2.1	X-E-11
EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	
TASK 10E.2.2	X-E-13
MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY	
<u>MPS 10E.3 - SUSTAINMENT</u>	
TASK 10E.3.1	X-E-16
PREPARE FOR COMBAT	
TASK 10E.3.2	X-E-17
CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE	
TASK 10E.3.3	X-E-18
PLAN AND CONTROL COMBAT OPERATIONS	
TASK 10E.3.4	X-E-21
REPORT	
TASK 10E.3.5	X-E-22
SUSTAIN OPERATIONS	
TASK 10E.3.6	X-E-25
CONDUCT VEHICLE OPERATIONS	
<u>MPS 10E.4 - NBC</u>	
TASK 10E.4.1	X-E-25
PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10E.4.2	X-E-26
RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10E.4.3	X-E-27
RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10E.4.4	X-E-28
PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10E.4.5	X-E-29
RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10E.4.6	X-E-31
PERFORM CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION	
TASK 10E.4.7	X-E-32
CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	
TASK 10E.4.8	X-E-33
CROSS A RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATED AREA	

10E.1 MANEUVER

TASK: 10E.1.1 OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon, as part of the battalion, occupies an assembly area, day or night, in preparation for combat operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon quartering party, under the supervision of the battalion quartering party NCOIC, marks the initial positions and acts as a guide when the platoon arrives. The quartering party performs the following tasks.
 - a. Reconnoiters the assembly area.
 - b. Determines and marks vehicle locations.
 - c. Improves entrances and exits, as needed.
 - d. Waits in covered and concealed positions. As the platoon clears the release point, moves out to guide them to selected or designated area without the vehicles halting.
- .2 ____ The platoon establishes and maintains local security.
- .3 ____ M8 alarms are positioned to provide warning.
- .4 ____ An OP is designated and provided with wire communications, if available.
- .5 ____ The leader establishes a priority of work to include:
 - a. Repositioning of vehicles and weapons.
 - b. Establishing wire communications between OPs and the sections.
 - c. Observing radio listening silence by section and platoon.
 - d. Constructing firing positions.
 - e. Camouflaging vehicle positions.
 - f. Clearing sector of fire.
 - g. Preparing range cards.
 - h. Distributing ammunition and special equipment.
 - i. Conducting personal hygiene and field sanitation.
 - j. Conducting rehearsal of mission (when needed).
 - k. Inspecting personal equipment.
 - l. Testing weapons (if tactical situation permits).
 - m. Allowing designated Marines to rest while others are on security alert.
- .6 ____ The platoon leader coordinates with adjacent units.
- .7 ____ The platoon leader forwards a sector sketch to battaLion CP. The sketches will include the following:
 - a. Platoon sector, including left and right limits.
 - b. Section positions, primary, alternate, and supplementary.
 - c. Maximum engagement lines.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Azimuth and distance to a known point.
- e. OPs and TRPs.
- f. Mines and obstacles.
- g. Indirect fire targets (covering dead space).
- h. Direction of north.
- i. Unit designation.
- j. Date/time group.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The quartering party guides the platoon into designated positions. Priorities of work are established, and the platoon provides local security.

TASK: 10E.1.2 DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to occupy a battle position as part of the battalion or in support of a company.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon moves to the battle position location.
- .2 ____ Platoon leader and selected personnel, with a security element, conduct a reconnaissance of the position from the rear and secure the battle position.
- .3 ____ Platoon leader assigns tentative positions.
- .4 ____ Tentative positions are selected so that squads are separated a minimum of 300 meters (either laterally or in depth) so that no two squads can be suppressed at the same time by the fires of a single volley of artillery from one battery.
- .5 ____ Firing positions are selected.
 - a. Observation posts are provided with communications (wire).
 - b. M8 chemical alarms, if available, are set up.
 - c. CP position is designated.
- .6 ____ Regardless of the method of employment, the entire platoon is assigned alternate and supplementary positions.
- .7 ____ Platoon members begin preparation of TOW firing positions either mounted or dismounted dependent on the OPORD. If engineer assets are available, key personnel are present at each position to determine correct dimensions for defilade positions.
- .8 ____ Priorities of work is as follows:
 - a. Establish local security.
 - b. Emplace claymore mines.

14 Oct 94

- c. Physically reconnoiter in front of the positions to become familiar with the terrain and to locate dead space.
 - d. Clear fields of fire.
 - e. Construct and improve the firing position.
 - f. Prepare range cards.
 - g. Camouflage entire position.
 - h. Stockpile ammunition, food, and water.
- .9 ____ Platoon leader coordinates with adjacent or collocated units.
- .10 ____ Wire is laid between sections and is checked for operability.
- .11 ____ Platoon leaders prepare sector sketch. The sketches will include the following:
- a. Platoon sector, including left and right limits.
 - b. Squad positions, primary, alternate, and supplementary.
 - c. Maximum engagement lines.
 - d. Azimuth and distance to a known point.
 - e. OPs and TRPs.
 - f. Mines and obstacles.
 - g. Indirect fire targets (covering dead space).
 - h. Direction of north.
 - i. Unit designation.
 - j. Date/time group.
- .12 ____ Platoon leader forwards the sector sketch to the battalion commander.
- .13 ____ The platoon is prepared to defend by the time specified in the OPORD.
- .14 ____ The unit conducts defense.
- .15 ____ Sections or squads move to alternate firing positions to avoid return fire, indirect fire, and to obtain flank shots at attacking enemy elements. Sections are displaced based on the following factors:
- a. Closing speed of the enemy.
 - b. Obstacles affecting enemy.
 - c. Distance to subsequent positions.
 - d. Covered and concealed routes to subsequent positions.
 - e. Availability of armor and infantry overwatch elements.
 - f. Effectiveness of enemy fire upon the position.
- .16 ____ The platoon leader/section leader(s) controls the fires and movement of the platoon and sections to ensure that they provide maximum antiarmor fire support.
- .17 ____ The platoon breaks contact on order or continues to defend.
- .18 ____ Casualties are evacuated IAW the OPORD.

- .19 ____ The platoon employs air defense measures consistent with the threat.
- .20 ____ The leader reports any change in his combat strength or tactical situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within the time specified in the OPORD, the platoon is prepared for the defense. Firing positions are selected. Enemy forces are detected and destroyed. Fires and movement are controlled. The platoon continues the defense or breaks contact (on order).

TASK: 10E.1.3 CONDUCT ANTIARMOR AMBUSH

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section, with attached infantry, is in an assembly area. The platoon/section is ordered to conduct an antiarmor ambush to destroy enemy vehicles and disrupt their reconnaissance efforts.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section leader and element leaders, accompanied by security personnel, conduct leader's reconnaissance to confirm the plan and return to the ORP.
- .2 ____ The security element departs the assembly area and moves to assigned positions where they can secure the flanks of the ambush site. Communications with the security element is maintained.
- .3 ____ The leader assigns positions that have:
 - a. Good fields of fire into the kill zone, offering maximum standoff for the TOW system.
 - b. Cover and concealment.
 - c. An obstacle between the platoon/section and the kill zone.
 - d. Covered and concealed withdrawal routes.
- .4 ____ The platoon/section leader plans indirect fire targets in the kill zone to cover the platoon's withdrawal.
- .5 ____ If possible, platoon members prepare or improve covered and concealed positions while waiting for the enemy.
- .6 ____ Upon observing the enemy, the security team alerts the platoon/section leader. As a minimum, the team reports direction of movement, size of target, and any special weapons and equipment carried.
- .7 ____ All platoon/section members remain motionless and employ noise and light discipline until the enemy appears in kill zone.
- .8 ____ The leader gives the method of engagement.
- .9 ____ The leader signals the initiating cue to commence firing.
 - a. Upon initiation of the ambush the remainder of the armor-killer team opens fire with remaining weapons.
 - b. Indirect fires should impact in the kill zone as soon as possible after the initiation of the ambush.
 - c. The platoon/section destroys the enemy.
- .10 ____ The leader signals cease fire.

ENCLOSURE (1)

14 Oct 94

- .11 ____ The platoon/section leader gives the signal to withdraw.
- a. The platoon/section withdraws to the ORP.
 - b. Smoke is used to cover the withdrawal.
- .12 ____ The platoon/section leader determines the method of withdrawal.
- .13 ____ The leader reports IAW the OPORD.
- .14 ____ The platoon/section halts at least one terrain feature away and disseminates information.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

Reconnaissance is conducted. The platoon is the support element. Cover and concealment is maintained. Enemy vehicles are reported as they approach the ambush site. The leader determines method of engagement. Fires are initiated and stopped on signal. The enemy vehicles are destroyed.

TASK: 10E.1.4 CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct a tactical road march to an assembly area as part of the battalion. Speed is essential; unit integrity must be maintained; road nets are available; and enemy contact is unlikely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon prepares for movement.
- a. The platoon leader issues movement order, which must address: mission; enemy and friendly situations; destination; route, rate of march; catch-up speed; order of march; start point, location, and time; vehicle distances; release point; critical points; CS and CSS; communications; and location of the commander during the march.
 - b. Drivers perform before operation maintenance checks on their vehicles before movement.
 - c. Crews prepare the vehicles for movement IAW unit SOPs (antennas tied down, convoy markings, reflector tape for night movement).
 - d. Leaders inspect personnel and equipment.
 - e. Leaders ensure each vehicle has a strip map, overlay, or marked map showing the route of march. As a minimum, the strip map will include the following information: start point, release point, critical points, and the distances between these points.
- .2 ____ The platoon conducts road movement.
- a. The platoon begins movement and does not stop once it has started movement to the start point.
 - b. The platoon arrives at the start point on time.
 - c. Drivers maintain their prescribed vehicle positions in the march unit.
 - d. Drivers maintain prescribed vehicle distance, whenever possible.
 - e. Platoon follows the prescribed route without deviation.
 - f. Drivers maintain prescribed vehicle rate of march.

- g. Drivers use prescribed catch-up speed to close with vehicle in front to reestablish vehicle distance.
 - h. Movement is controlled mainly with arm-and-hand or flag set signals with radios serving only as a backup.
 - i. Drivers perform during-operation maintenance checks on their vehicles at all halts.
- .3 ____ The platoon maintains local security throughout the movement.
- a. Each section maintains 360 degree observation.
 - b. Each squad is assigned a sector of fire.
 - c. An air guard is designated for each squad and maintains surveillance against air attack.
 - d. During scheduled halts, vehicles are moved to the side of the road maintaining the march interval between vehicles.
- .4 ____ The platoon takes immediate action for a disabled vehicle.
- a. The disabled vehicle is moved off the route of march.
 - b. A crew member of the disabled vehicle visually signals that the vehicle is disabled and for traffic to move around it.
 - c. Platoon continues movement.
 - d. The march unit commander is informed of the breakdown.
 - e. Once the vehicle is clear of the route of march, personnel from the vehicle try to repair it.
 - f. Personnel from the disabled vehicle establish local security, maintain aerial surveillance, and provide guide(s) to direct traffic.
 - g. The vehicle rejoins the convoy.
 - 1) If the vehicle is repaired and its march unit has not passed, the vehicle rejoins the march unit at the end.
 - 2) If the vehicle cannot be repaired or if its march unit has passed, the vehicle waits for the serial's trail party.
 - h. If the vehicle cannot be repaired in time to rejoin its march unit, vital equipment is transferred to another vehicle in the march unit.
- .5 ____ The platoon completes the road movement.
- a. The platoon arrives at the release point at the specified time in the OPORD.
 - b. The platoon passes through the release point without stopping.
 - c. The platoon quartering party guides (when used) meet the platoon at the release point.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon arrives at the start point and release point at the time specified in the OPORD. Prescribed positions, vehicle interval, and rate of march are maintained along the prescribed route. Security is maintained.

TASK: 10E.1.5 MOVE MOUNTED

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is moving tactically either separately or as part of the battalion formation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon maintains a tactical movement using traveling techniques.
 - a. The platoon maintains a column formation.
 - b. Sections maintain movement at a maximum safe speed or the speed set in the OPORD.
 - c. The platoon maintains all-round security.
 - d. Vehicles maintain 50 to 100 meter interval and lateral dispersion.
 - e. Each driver maintains observation on the vehicle to the front. A designated individual maintains visual contact with the trailing vehicle.
- .2 ____ The platoon conducts a tactical movement using traveling overwatch.
- .3 ____ The platoon conducts a tactical movement using bounding overwatch.
 - a. Overwatch vehicles occupy concealed positions that permit observation and fires to cover the bounding element's movement.
 - b. The overwatch elements are in position and ready to fire before the bounding element moves.
 - c. The bounding section moves using a covered and concealed route to the next position.
 - d. The platoon/section leader controls movement of the platoon/section.
 - e. The platoon/section leader designates the next bound position.
- .4 ____ Unit maintains all-round security.
 - a. The platoon leader assigns the platoon a sector to observe and cover by fire.
 - b. Air guards are designated and posted for advance warning of air attack.
 - c. The unit maintains all-round observation at all times.
- .5 ____ The unit maximizes protection during movement.
 - a. Covered and concealed routes are used, whenever possible.
 - b. Skylining is avoided.
 - c. Obvious kill zones are avoided.
 - d. Open areas are crossed quickly.
- .6 ____ The movement technique is changed to fit the likelihood of enemy contact.
- .7 ____ If contact is made, the overwatch element provides support.
- .8 ____ The vehicle crew in contact reacts to direct fire threat.
- .9 ____ Movement techniques are mainly controlled with arm and hand signals with radios used only as a backup.
- .10 ____ The platoon/section leader reports any changes in the tactical situation or unit status.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit moves using traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch movement techniques consistent with the mission, time, or Threat.

TASK: 10E.1.6 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section has to pass through a stationary unit as part of its operations. The passage of lines may be designated as a forward or rearward passage of lines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section leader makes coordination with the stationary unit. The same coordination is required whether the platoon/section is conducting a forward or rearward passage. This includes the following:
- a. Identification and types of unit(s) to pass.
 - b. Time(s) of departure and reentry.
 - c. Number of vehicles and types.
 - d. Mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - e. Battle handover line location.
 - f. Presence of NBC contamination.
 - g. Fire support plan.
 - h. Enemy situation.
 - i. Friendly Locations (day and night) to include OPs and patrol routes.
 - j. Contact point, coordination points, and dismount point (if required).
 - k. Passage points, lanes, and routes.
 - l. Obstacle locations and types.
 - m. Assembly areas or attack position.
 - n. Combat support and combat service support locations for emergency support provided by the stationary unit.
 - o. Recognition signals.
 - p. CEOI information.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section conducts a passage of lines.
- a. The platoon/section arrives at the designated contact point at the time specified displaying the coordinated recognition signals.
 - b. The unit picks up the stationary force guides, moves to the passage points, and continues to move on the designated passage lane without halting.
 - c. A platoon/section representative moves to the contact point(s) and counts platoon/section vehicles through each point to the passage point(s).

- d. The platoon/section moves rapidly through passage lanes to an assembly area or to a new overwatch position.
- e. The platoon/section avoids stationary force obstacles.
- f. A platoon/section representative at the passage point tells guide when all elements have passed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made with the stationary unit commander. The platoon departs or returns through friendly lines at the coordinated time and place.

TASK: 10E.1.7 MOVE (MOUT)

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is required to move through urban terrain.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon leader determines that his route will take him through an urban area.
- .2 ____ The platoon leader coordinates with other units in the march unit. Coordination includes:
 - a. Order of movement.
 - b. Intelligence about the route and Threat.
 - c. Availability of support assets (for example engineers).
- .3 ____ The platoon establishes an overwatch position outside the urban area.
- .4 ____ The platoon leader sends a reconnaissance element through the built-up area to establish overwatch on the far side.
- .5 ____ The rest of the platoon moves through the urban area on alternating sides of the street, as quickly as possible.
- .6 ____ Leaders control the movement using visual signals.
- .7 ____ Each vehicle commander maintains observation on the three dimensions of urban terrain (cellar, street, and roof).
 - a. Driver takes evasive action as required.
 - b. Vehicles not being fired on initially will provide supporting fire.
 - c. Indirect fire or smoke may be used based on the threat and the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon treats the crossing as a danger area. Movement and overwatch elements are designated. The three dimensions of urban terrain are observed. Dispersion is maintained. Actions on contact are conducted correctly.

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is given the mission to occupy a defensive position in an urban area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section leader establishes security.
 - a. Vehicles are concealed inside of or in the shadows of the buildings.
 - b. At least one OP with communications is emplaced within five minutes of occupation.
 - c. The chemical alarm is set up within ten minutes of occupying the position.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section leader conducts his leader's reconnaissance. The platoon/section leader-
 - a. Develops a tentative plan.
 - b. Conducts reconnaissance of the position with section/squad leaders, and security.
 - c. Assigns sectors and OP locations.
 - d. Selects tentative building or vehicle locations for defensive positions.
 - e. Selects a location for the platoon/section CP.
- .3 ____ Platoon/section leader(s) designates escape routes and priority of work, to include sleeping and feeding, positioning of Class IV and V, booby traps, and unused rooms and buildings.
- .4 ____ The platoon/section establishes and marks routes for movement between positions, both within and between buildings.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section establishes wire communication between positions.
- .6 ____ The platoon/section leaders give sectors of fire to gunners for range cards.
- .7 ____ Range cards and sector sketches are prepared.
- .8 ____ Platoon/section leaders inspect positions for camouflage, fortification, and obstruction to the TOW missile flight paths.
- .9 ____ The platoon/section leader designates alternate and supplementary positions.
- .10 ____ Obstacles are emplaced to deny the enemy access to streets, buildings, or to slow his movement (include rooftops and inside buildings).
- .11 ____ Vehicle positions are selected.
 - a. Vehicles using firing positions hidden inside of buildings enter through the wall opposite the likely direction of enemy advance.
 - b. The building must be sturdy enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
 - c. There must be a 9-inch mask clearance between the launcher and any obstruction.
 - d. All glass from windows, doors, and furniture that could be blown around are removed.
 - e. Vehicle tracks into the building are filled in or brushed over.
- .12 ____ A dismounted TOW position within a building should have the following:
 - a. A sturdy building.
 - b. A ceiling at least 2 meters (7 feet) high.

14 Oct 94

- c. A room that is at least 5 by 8 meters (17 by 24 feet) or larger.
 - d. Two square meters (20 square feet) of ventilation to the rear of the system (an open door 2 meters by 1 meter (7 by 3 feet) provides that much ventilation).
 - e. There must be 9 inches of clearance between the bottom of the launch tube and the window sill.
 - f. Glass is removed from all window, and doors, and furniture and other objects that could be blown around are removed from the room.
 - g. Everyone in the room wears earplugs and is positioned forward of the rear of the launch tube.
- .13 ____ The platoon/section improves movement routes within the platoon/section position.
- .14 ____ The platoon/section prepares the withdrawal plan.
- a. Routes are marked.
 - b. Leaders plan and disseminate primary and alternate withdrawal signals.
 - c. The withdrawal plan is rehearsed.
- .15 ____ The Leader reports his unit's status and any change in the tactical situation or combat strength.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon sets up security, occupies and prepares to defend per the OPORD.

10E.2 RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITYTASK: 10E.2.1 EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section must operate in the presence of an enemy air threat.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section employs an air attack warning procedure.
- a. The platoon/section establishes an alarm procedure to warn all personnel of an impending attack.
 - b. Air guard personnel maintain continuous surveillance of assigned sector.
 - c. OP personnel are assigned air guard duties.
 - d. Special air guards are designated if OPs cannot effectively observe local airspace.
 - e. Air guards are rotated.
 - f. Air guards use correct search techniques.
 - g. Air guards are familiar with signs of aircraft (sun reflections from aircraft canopies or cockpit windows; blade flash from rotating helicopter blades; smoke trails from jet aircraft, missiles, or rockets; dust and excessive movement of vegetation from helicopter blades; helicopter blade and aircraft engine noise).

- h. All Marines know emergency air attack signals.
 - i. Air guards detect all aircraft in their assigned sectors.
 - j. Air guards can distinguish friendly or hostile aircraft.
 - k. Air guards immediately disseminate air attack warning.
 - l. Air attack warning is disseminated in time for entire platoon/section to take damage limiting measures.
 - m. The platoon/section rehearses air attack alarms and warning.
 - n. The senior leader present reports enemy aircraft actions. Priority intelligence requirements are included in the report.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section takes attack avoidance measures.
- a. The platoon/section uses all available natural and man-made concealment.
 - b. Personnel camouflage themselves and equipment.
 - c. Shiny areas are covered or shaded, especially windshields and optics.
 - d. Leaders inspect to ensure their units are well camouflaged.
- .3 ____ The platoon/section takes damage-limiting measures.
- a. The platoon/section disperses consistent with the need for command and control.
 - b. The platoon/section uses available cover to maximum advantage.
 - c. The platoon/section continues to improve cover as time permits and consistent with mission.
- .4 ____ The platoon/section takes measures to reduce the enemy air threat during convoys.
- a. When possible, movement is performed during limited visibility (night, rain, snow, fog) and under strict blackout conditions.
 - b. The platoon/section moves along available hard-surface roads to avoid dust, when possible.
 - c. When traveling on unpaved roads, the platoon/section reduces speed to eliminate dust.
 - d. The leader selects routes offering the best natural concealment.
 - e. When crossing open country, the platoon/section attempts to avoid casting long, highly visible shadows.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section takes measures to limit damage to the convoy.
- a. If attacked, the platoon/section uses ditches and embankments along the road and other available cover or, on order, continues movement.
 - b. The platoon/section travels in open column with 80 to 100 meters between vehicles, METT-TSL permitting.
 - c. If attacked, the platoon/section has a plan or SOP to disperse vehicles to prevent bunching. Drivers use evasive driving techniques.
 - d. Vehicles are staggered to avoid linear patterns.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon or section maintains effective air attack warning system.

TASK: 10E.2.2 MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is operating where it can be detected by the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section employs camouflage and concealment.
- a. Personnel do not make unnecessary movement or move vehicles that would allow the enemy to observe them.
 - b. The outlines of the firing positions and vehicles are modified to blend their shadows with terrain shadows. Vehicles parked in shadows are moved as shadows shift.
 - c. Available shaded positions are used to hide the vehicles.
 - d. Obvious positions, such as road junctions and hilltops, are avoided.
 - e. Reflective surfaces are covered with nonreflective materials, such as cloth, mud, or camouflage.
 - f. Camouflage is used to break the distinctive outline of personnel and equipment.
 - g. The color of the camouflage is appropriate for the local environment.
 - h. The platoon/section practices dispersion of personnel and equipment.
 - i. The firing position camouflage does not obstruct weapons' fire or movement.
 - j. The foliage is not stripped near the fighting positions, and earthen berms are camouflaged.
 - k. The crews cover, fill in, or brush over the vehicle tracks leading into the positions.
 - l. Leaders inspect their unit's camouflage.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section establishes OP..
- a. Leaders supervise emplacement of OPs.
 - b. The OP. provide early warning out to a range that denies enemy observation or direct fire.
 - c. The OP personnel know in detail what they are to do, what actions to take if the enemy is detected, and when and how to occupy and return to the platoon/section's position.
 - d. Personnel in the perimeter know the locations of OPs within their sector.
 - e. OPs are repositioned when required by changing visibility conditions.
 - f. OPs are within range of supporting small-arms fire from the perimeter.
 - g. OPs have direct communication with the platoon/section.
 - h. OPs provide cover and concealment to occupants.

- i. OPs have covered routes to and from each post.
 - j. OPs are operated in reliefs. At Least two Marines man each OP relief.
- .3 ____ The platoon/section performs stand-to.
- a. Stand-to is performed at least 30 minutes before BMNT and EENT.
 - b. Personnel are awake, dressed, and ready for combat.
 - c. Vehicles are topped off with fuel, stacked with a basic Load of ammunition, and loaded to the extent possible, less deployed weapons.
 - d. Weapons have been cleaned, serviced, assembled, and ready for action.
 - e. Platoon/section radios are checked (by briefly turning them on).
- .4 ____ The platoon/section performs silent watch.
- a. The platoon/section minimizes all sounds that might be detected by the enemy and interfere with friendly security elements.
 - b. Silent watch is maintained during lulls in battle and limited visibility.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section maintains local security.
- a. Local security is continuous and in all directions.
 - b. The security plan denies the enemy the element of surprise.
 - c. Leader locates positions and sectors of fire are coordinated to ensure overlapping fires.
 - d. Sleep and work plans ensure continuous alert surveillance.
- .6 ____ The platoon/section emplaces warning and security devices.
- a. Early warning devices and security devices are emplaced as available and as time permits--for example, trip flares, booby traps, field-expedient early warning devices, mechanical ambushes, chemical alarms.
 - b. All platoon/section personnel are aware of the type and location of warning devices and free lanes.
 - c. Leaders supervise emplacement of warning devices.
- .7 ____ The platoon/section maintains noise and light discipline.
- a. Vehicle vision blocks covers are in position at night.
 - b. During evening stand-to, vehicle panel control lights are tested.
 - c. Movement of vehicles is reduced, mainly at night.
 - d. Volume on radios is turned down.
 - e. At night, Marines use red or blue-green filters on flashlights.
 - f. All unnecessary internal vehicle lights are turned off.
 - g. During darkness, one member of each vehicle checks the outside of vehicles for any visible light from inside.
 - h. Fast movements with vehicles and rapid idling are avoided.
 - i. Communication is limited to field telephones, when possible.

- j. Personnel avoid making loud noises (for example, loud talking, laughing) or creating light at night (for example, building fires, smoking, unnecessary use of flashlights).
- .8 ____ The platoon/section maintains electronic and communications security.
- a. Radios are used only when alternate, more secure means of communication do not meet mission requirements.
 - b. Radios are used only when alternate, more secure means of communication do not meet mission requirements.
 - c. Radio operators require other communicating stations to authenticate, using only authorized authentication systems.
 - d. The unit tries to use directional antennas, low radio power, remote antennas, minimum transmission times, and radio sites behind hills between itself and the enemy.
 - e. Leaders enforce net discipline, CEOI and radio procedures, and Limit transmissions to official traffic.
 - f. Leaders ensure radios operate in secure mode, when possible. When not in secure mode, information is transmitted using authorized codes; transmission patterns are avoided.
- .9 ____ The unit exercises information security.
- a. Information is controlled on a need-to-know basis.
 - b. Fraternization with civilians is prohibited.
 - c. Uncontrolled maps do not show the friendly order of battle.
 - d. All vehicle markings are removed or masked--for example, unit or personal identification, convoy series markings.
 - e. Personnel do not carry sensitive information among personal items--for example, letters, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.
 - f. Each section exercises trash discipline.
 - g. The platoon/section safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.
- .10 ____ The platoon/section reestablishes local security after enemy contact.
- .11 ____ The platoon/section maintains security during mounted movement.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon or section takes effective measures to disguise and conceal itself, to prevent the enemy from closing on or infiltrating without detection, and to deny the enemy information from radio transmissions.

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section has received a warning order and is preparing for a combat operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section leader issues a warning order.
- .2 ____ The leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance.
 - a. The platoon/section chain of command conducts a map reconnaissance of the area of operation.
 - b. The platoon/section chain of command conducts mounted, dismounted, or aerial reconnaissance of the area of operation (time permitting).
 - c. The platoon/section leader takes selected personnel with him on the reconnaissance.
 - d. Communications equipment is taken with the reconnaissance element.
 - e. A communications check is made between the main body of the platoon/section and the reconnaissance element (depending on radio security status).
 - f. A security element is included with the reconnaissance group.
 - g. The reconnaissance is conducted so that the mission is not compromised.
 - h. Reconnaissance is conducted to obtain the following information, as required.
 - 1) Terrain (using KOCOA).
 - 2) Identify tentative platoon/section positions, to include:
 - a) Primary, alternate, and supplementary weapon positions.
 - b) Sectors, limits of fire.
 - c) Fire control measures, potential targets, target reference points, and engagement areas to be used.
 - 3) Identify materials that may be procured locally that will assist in completing the mission.
 - 4) Enemy situation (using SALUTE).
 - i. Identify maneuver control points (checkpoints and phase lines) on the ground from platoon/section location to as far forward as possible.
 - j. Information gathered on the reconnaissance is used to confirm or to change the original plan.
 - k. New information gathered on the reconnaissance is quickly passed to higher headquarters.
- .3 ____ The platoon/section leader makes his tentative plan.
- .4 ____ The platoon/section prepares for combat. Preparation includes the following:
 - a. Drivers complete preventive maintenance checks and services and required maintenance in accordance with TM.
 - b. Vehicle commanders check all on-board communications equipment guns.
 - c. Crew conducts system operational checks and troubleshooting.
 - d. Section leaders draw ammunition, Class III, and rations.

- a. All members camouflage vehicles, themselves, and individual equipment per the unit SOP, under section and squad leaders' supervision.
 - f. All members bring their individual equipment to the vehicles. Load vehicles per the load plan under the supervision of a section or squad leader.
 - g. Section leaders obtain CEOI.
- .5 ____ The leader receives and issues the operation order.
- .6 ____ Leaders inspect personnel and equipment. All required equipment and ammunition (per OPORD and unit SOP) is checked and loaded.
- .7 ____ The platoon/section rehearses drills and operational or movement techniques that apply to the mission.
- .8 ____ The platoon/section is prepared to move by the time specified in OPORD.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon leader conducts a leaders reconnaissance. Within 10 minutes of the receipt of the warning order, squads are notified. The platoon is prepared for combat within the time specified in the order.

TASK: 10E.3.2 CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section has completed a combat operation. The platoon/section is required to consolidate and reorganize.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section consolidates.
- a. The platoon/section leader positions or repositions the OP forward to provide security. He ensures that members are alert for possible counterattack.
 - b. The platoon/section occupies or reoccupies hasty firing positions and establishes security.
 - c. Leaders adjust positions to cover likely avenues of approach and to ensure mutual support between section/squads and adjacent units.
 - d. The platoon/section conducts a search of the area to be sure it is free of the enemy.
 - e. The platoon/section leader assigns or reassigns temporary sectors of fire.
 - f. Section leaders assign sectors to cover likely avenues of approach.
 - g. Firing positions and obstacles are prepared as required or as the tactical situation permits.
 - h. Section leaders designate personnel to search and guard PWs and equipment.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section conducts reorganization.
- a. The chain of command and communication nets are reestablished.
 - b. Key positions are filled.
 - c. Leaders redistribute ammunition and equipment.

- d. Section leaders report ammunition, personnel, PWs, vehicles, and equipment status to the platoon/section leader, and request medical assistance.
- e. The platoon/section leader reports status of and requests replacement for personnel, vehicles, weapons, ammunition, fuel, and equipment.
- f. PWs are handled in accordance with the five S's and tagged.
 - 1) Search for weapons, documents, and equipment.
 - 2) Silence, use a gag if necessary.
 - 3) Separate by rank.
 - 4) Speed PWs to battalion collection point(s) along with captured documents and equipment (consistent with the situation).
 - 5) Safeguard the PWs from harm. Allow them to retain protective mask and personal safety equipment.
 - 6) Tag PWs, documents, and equipment with the date, time, location, and unit of capture.
 - 7) Designated guards take PWs to collection point.
- g. Designated Marines give first aid to casualties.
 - 1) Designated Marines gather personal effects and classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays, key lists, and other equipment) of killed-in-action and wounded-in-action. (Personal effects stay with wounded-in-action.)
 - 2) Evacuate killed-in-action to battalion trains (transport separate from wounded).
- h. The platoon/section prepares to engage counterattacking enemy or continues with the next mission.
- i. The platoon/section leader establishes priorities for vehicle maintenance or recovery.
- j. The platoon/section leader reports any subsequent changes to the tactical situation or combat strength.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon establishes local security. It is reorganized and prepared to repel a counterattack, or to continue the mission.

TASK: 10E.3.3 PLAN AND CONTROL COMBAT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): As required by the mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section leader issues a verbal warning order that includes:
 - a. The mission statement (WHO, WHAT, WHEN, WHERE, WHY).
 - b. The friendly and enemy situations.

- c. The earliest time of movement.
 - d. Who is to receive the OPORD and the time and location for issuance.
 - e. The warning order is given to all subelement leaders to ensure that all individual Marines receive the order.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section leaders (time permitting) conduct a Leader's reconnaissance.
- .3 ____ The platoon/section Leader makes a tentative plan.
- a. The tentative plan is consistent with METT-TSL.
 - b. The tentative plan supports the commander's intent.
 - c. The tentative plan supports accomplishment of all specified and implied tasks.
- .4 ____ The platoon/section leader issues an OPDRD (oral, written, or combination).
- a. The OPORD is issued at the specified time and location.
 - b. Detailed, formatted notes (five-paragraph field order) are used to reinforce presentation of the order.
 - c. The OPORD includes:
 - 1) Unit task organization.
 - 2) Friendly and enemy situations.
 - 3) A clear, concise mission statement (WHO, WHAT, WHEN, and WHERE, based on commander's intent.
 - 4) Commander's intent.
 - 5) A plan for movement and control measures (operations overlay).
 - 6) A plan for fires both direct and indirect.
 - a) Direct fire control measures as appropriate (that is, TRP, engagement areas, sectors and limits of fire, target priorities for each weapon system).
 - b) Indirect fires planned in coordination with the FO or FSC.
 - 7) Missions for all subordinate organic and attached units, and necessary coordinating instructions.
 - 8) A plan for reorganization and service support.
 - 9) Communications-electronics operation instructions information and platoon/section leader command post location.
 - d. The platoon/section leader asks for and answers all pertinent questions pertaining to the OPORD.
 - e. A time check (time-hack) is given.
 - f. Leaders query personnel on items stated as SOP in the OPORD to ensure that the items are understood by all personnel.
 - g. The platoon/section leader takes one-third or less of his available time and allows subordinates two-thirds or more of time remaining.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section chain of command contacts supporting units as required and arranges for necessary support.
- .6 ____ The platoon/section chain of command coordinates with adjacent units, as required.

- .7 ____ Leaders control direct fires by:
- a. Issuing fire commands.
 - b. Referencing TRPs and/or sectors of fire or PDFs.
 - c. Establishing or changing target priorities.
- .8 ____ Leaders control indirect fire support through the forward observer, FO, or fire support coordinator (FSC) by:
- a. Engaging or shifting from planned targets.
 - b. Employing fire support coordination measures, such as coordinated fire lines, boundaries, and free-fire zones, to speed the responsiveness of fire support units.
- .9 ____ The platoon/section leader issues fragmentary orders, as required, to control operations.
- a. Task organization. If changed.
 - b. Situation. Brief summary of situation.
 - c. Mission. If mission has changed.
 - d. Execution.
 - 1) Instructions to subordinate units on actions that must be accomplished immediately. If there is no change for combat support assets, state "Remainder, no change."
 - 2) Fire support. Changes to priority of fires (as applicable).
 - 3) Changes to coordinating instructions (if any).
- a. Command and signal. Current locations of headquarters.
- .10 ____ Leaders maintain orientation to the terrain (land navigation).
- .11 ____ Leaders control unit movements and fires, using graphics, radios, telephone or wire, messengers, and visual control measures (as appropriate), and report crossing start point/line of departure, phase lines, checkpoints, and other control measures as directed.
- .12 ____ The platoon/section leader establishes and operates a net control station.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The leaders issue the warning orders, operation orders, and fragmentary orders in a clear and concise manner covering all key elements. They control the combat operation through the use of direct fires, indirect fires, coordination with adjacent units, land navigation, and graphic and visual control measures.

TASK: 10E.3.4 REPORT

CONDITION(S): The unit has information that must be forwarded to the next higher headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The unit submits a SITREP IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The SITREP is sent by the fastest means available.
- .3 ____ The SITREP is dispatched within five minutes after receipt of the information.
- .4 ____ The unit submits the report even if the information is not complete.
 - a. The unit submits a SHELREP/MORTREP/BOMBREP IAW unit SOP.
 - b. The unit submits the report within 30 minutes after event.
 - c. The unit submits the report even if the information is not complete.
 - d. The encryption is IAW the unit and higher headquarters SOP.
- .5 ____ The unit submits a MIJI report.
 - a. The unit reports all meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference.
 - b. The unit submits the report to the net control station within 10 minutes after event occurs.
 - c. The report is submitted by a secure means, when possible.
 - d. The unit follows the unit SOP.
- .6 ____ The unit submits an operational occurrence report. (For example, crossing LD, reaching checkpoints, Logistic reports, intelligence reports.)
 - a. The unit submits a report immediately or as soon as the tactical situation permits.
 - b. The unit submits the report IAW the unit SOP or OPORDs/FRAGOs currently in effect.
- .7 ____ The unit submits NBC 1 report.
 - a. The unit submits an NBC 1 initial report within five minutes after the attack.
 - b. The unit submits its reports to higher headquarters.
 - c. The report is sent by a secure means, when possible.
 - d. The report includes the most reliable and complete information available.
 - e. The report has the correct precedence:
 - 1) Flash precedence for initial burst.
 - 2) Immediate precedence for subsequent attacks.
- .8 ____ The unit submits an NBC 4 report.
 - a. The unit submits its reports to higher headquarters.
 - b. The report is sent by a secure means, when possible.
 - c. The report includes the most reliable and complete information available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All reports are submitted on time, in the correct format, and disseminated to the appropriate level.

TASK: 10E.3.5 SUSTAIN OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section conduct extended operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section submits status reports.
 - a. The platoon/section reports personnel strength and casualties IAW unit SOP.
 - b. The platoon/section reports vehicle and equipment strength, status, and losses IAW unit SOP.
 - c. The platoon/section reports supply status IAW unit SOP.
 - d. Reports are submitted following major changes in status, which impair mission accomplishment or IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ Leaders ensure the platoon/section is sustained.
 - a. The platoon/section leader anticipates resupply needs and ensures timely resupply and maintenance requests are submitted.
 - b. Platoon sergeant ensures required basic load and platoon/section equipment are on hand.
 - c. Platoon sergeant issues timely ammunition resupply requests.
 - d. Platoon sergeant supervises ammunition prestockage, when used.
 - e. Platoon sergeant ensures maintenance is actively supervised by subordinate leaders.
 - f. Platoon sergeant coordinates and supervises resupply and maintenance support.
 - g. Platoon sergeant requests fortification materials.
- .3 ____ Section leaders supervise maintenance of section vehicles and equipment.
- .4 ____ Squad leaders implement squad sleep plan.
- .5 ____ Squad leaders supervise maintenance of squad and personal weapons and equipment.
 - a. All leaders know the locations of combat trains and field trains.
- .6 ____ Leaders submit support requests.
 - a. Requests are based on actual losses and expenditures, and forecasted requirements.
 - b. The platoon/section requests enough replacement personnel, rations, fuel, oil, lubricants, ammunition, and repair parts to meet expected needs until next resupply.
 - c. Requests are submitted soon enough so as not to impair current or future operations.
- .7 ____ The platoon/section coordinates resupply.
 - a. Resupply is performed as quickly as possible in covered and concealed positions.

14 Oct 94

- b. Supplies are distributed throughout unit consistent with their current and anticipated operations and needs.
 - c. When supplies have been prestocked at firing positions, the platoon/section uses prestocked items first.
 - d. When possible, platoon/section conducts resupply in position instead of out of position.
 - e. The unit prepares a resupply point, when appropriate.
 - f. Unit resupplies without restricting its communications, movement, ability to provide direct fire support.
- .8 ____ The platoon/section rearms.
- a. The platoon/section prepares for rearming.
 - b. The crew unpacks the ammunition and loads it on the vehicle IAW the vehicle TM and unit SOP.
 - c. Crew unpacks only enough ammunition to replenish it IAW SOP.
- .9 ____ The platoon/section refuels.
- a. When near the enemy, driver backs vehicle out of the position and moves, undetected, along a covered and concealed route to the fuel tanker.
 - b. When refueled out of position by a fuel tanker, the vehicle is positioned as directed by the fuel tanker crew.
 - c. The vehicle is refueled IAW TM.
 - d. The vehicle returns to the platoon/section immediately after refueling.
- .10 ____ The platoon/section conducts preventive maintenance on organizational equipment.
- a. The crew performs PMCS on all equipment when the situation permits.
 - b. Maintenance is performed IAW TMs, lubrication orders, and any other maintenance directives.
 - c. Priority for maintenance is given to weapons, vehicles, and radios.
 - d. Units perform emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued operation and availability of equipment.
 - e. Leaders inspect maintenance performed by their subordinates.
- .11 ____ The platoon/section sustains Marines.
- a. Ill and injured Marines who do not warrant evacuation are given medical treatment as soon as possible.
 - b. Marines try to get enough food, water, and rest.
 - c. Leaders prescribe a uniform consistent with weather conditions and the mission.
 - d. Corpsman routinely check the physical well-being of Marines.
 - e. Marines are trained to administer first aid.
- .12 ____ The platoon/section performs field sanitation operations.
- a. Marines shave each day.
 - b. Minor wounds (scratches and abrasions) are cleaned and bandaged to prevent infection.

- c. If wearing chemical protective overgarments continuously, Marines try to bathe and change undergarments every 48 hours to avoid rashes.
- d. Each Marine's ALICE pack or sea bag contains personal hygiene equipment and spare clothing IAW unit SOP.
- e. Marines drink only potable water.
- f. The platoon/section maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW unit SOP.
- g. The unit purifies potable water using iodine tablets, calcium hypochloride ampules, or by boiling.
- h. The unit builds heads at least 100 feet from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas. Hand-washing facilities are provided with a soakage pit beneath.
- i. Marines prepare, use, and fill catholes during mobile operations.
- j. All food is protected from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests.
- k. Marines clean and disinfect mess kits before and after use.
- l. Measures are taken to reduce exposure to insects and rodents:
 - 1) Unit locations consistent with the mission are chosen to avoid pests.
 - 2) Marines use protective measures to include wearing netting, using repellent, spraying, dusting, poisoning, and trapping.
- m. Marines wash hands before eating or preparing food.
- n. Leaders ensure their Marines follow field sanitation procedures.

.13 ____ The platoon/section plans and conducts tactical feeding.

- a. The platoon/section maintains local security and noise and light discipline.
- b. Marines do not use heat tabs in enclosed areas where fumes can be trapped.
- c. The platoon/section burns or buries garbage, waste, and trash. When not authorized, waste is carried with the platoon/section and disposed of as soon as possible.
- d. Marines remain 3 to 5 meters apart in the serving line and at the eating site.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Essential supply requirements are fulfilled and maintenance is performed on a routine basis. The health and well-being of Marines are maintained.

TASK: 10E.3.6 CONDUCT VEHICLE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is conducting a tactical operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The crew recovers or evacuates vehicles.
- a. The vehicle is recovered or evacuated as quickly as possible.
 - b. Personnel not directly involved in recovery or evacuation are dismounted and in position away from vehicle to provide local security.
 - c. The leader redistributes men and equipment among other vehicles, as necessary, consistent with the tactical situation.
 - d. Recovery or evacuation is performed IAW technical manual.
 - e. Recovery equipment is inspected before use to ensure it is serviceable.
 - f. Only one signalman is used to control the recovery operation.
- .2 ____ The crew abandons or destroys its vehicle.
- a. The leader decides to abandon or destroy the vehicle only after every effort has been made to recover or evacuate the vehicle. The decision to abandon or destroy vehicle is made by platoon/section leader or, when he is unavailable, the senior leader present.
 - b. The vehicle is stripped of all equipment possible.
 - c. The vehicle crew dismounts vehicle and moves to covered and concealed position at least 50 meters from the vehicle.
 - d. The vehicle is destroyed within five minutes.
 - e. The vehicle and equipment are destroyed IAW FM 23-34.
 - f. If abandoned, the vehicle is rendered inoperative so that it is of no immediate use to the enemy but can be readily repaired.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The crew safely recovers or evacuates its damaged vehicle. The crew abandons or destroys a vehicle that cannot be recovered or evacuated.

10E.4 NBC

TASK: 10E.4.1 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and that the platoon must implement actions to minimize casualties and damage. No Threat contact is anticipated.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon implements defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.
- a. Platoon commander issues warning order to the platoon.
 - b. Places vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.
 - c. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment; ties down essential antennas; takes down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.
 - d. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.
 - e. Zeros dosimeters.
 - f. Secures loose, flammable, and explosive items, and food and water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.
 - g. Ensures individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs.
 - h. Conducts periodic monitoring.
- .2 ____ The platoon takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation (FM 3-4, Chapter 3).
- a. Conducts periodic monitoring.
 - b. Reports all dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon hardens positions and equipment, conducts periodic monitoring, and is able to continue its tactical mission following the attack.

TASK: 10E.4.2 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom-shaped cloud.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes immediate protective action.
- a. Buttons up if mounted; drops to the floor if in shelter; or drops to the ground if in the open. Remains protected until blast effects have passed.
 - b. Reestablishes communications.
 - c. Prepares NBC 1 nuclear report. Forwards the NBC 1 nuclear report up the chain of command.
 - d. Reports casualties.
 - e. Identifies, treats, and ensures evacuations of casualties.
 - f. Evacuates fatalities.
 - g. Implements continuous monitoring.
 - h. Submits damage assessment to higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- i. Continues mission.
- .2 ____ Platoon personnel put out fires. Extinguish secondary fires caused by smoldering debris, both on and around tanks, before they spread.
- .3 ____ The platoon inspects optics, fire control systems, gun bores, and automotive systems for serviceability, and field strips and cleans weapons before firing.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon takes actions to minimize the exposure to the the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK: 10E.4.3 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is located within a predicted fallout area, and the unit mission does not allow significant movement. No Threat contact is anticipated.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander takes appropriate action.
 - a. Maintains continuous monitoring.
 - b. Submits NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required by secure means, when possible.
 - c. Gathers and reports dosimeter data.
 - d. Plots NBC 3 report (if received), informs commander.
 - e. Requests optimum time of exit from higher headquarters.
 - f. Recommends actions to keep radiation exposure status (RES) within operational exposure guidance (OEG).
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for fallout.
 - a. Covers equipment, munitions, petroleum, oils and lubricants (POL), food, and water containers or places them inside shelters or vehicles.
 - b. Ensures as many personnel as possible occupy shelters or closed vehicles.
 - c. Minimizes skin exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, or wearing MOPP gear.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander develops a contingency plan.
 - a. Compares present platoon RES to OEG.
 - b. Ensures platoon does not exceed established OEG.
 - c. Selects whether or not to remain in location or relocate, based on actual fallout arrival, radiation dose received, and guidance received from higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon prepares response in accordance with unit SOP, continues mission, and reports effects to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10E.4.4 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Chemical warfare has been initiated or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and damage. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The Platoon commander issues a warning order to squads and subordinates.
 - a. Platoon implements defensive preparation for a chemical attack.
 - b. Squad leaders direct actions to maximize protection consistent with the mission.
 - c. Squad leaders enforce MOPP level wear.
- .2 ____ Platoon takes additional action consistent with tactical situation by:
 - a. Increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP protection as appropriate.
 - b. Hardening individual and platoon position.
 - c. Using existing, natural, and manmade terrain features as expedient shelters.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures personnel are prepared.
 - a. Keeps clothes loosely fitted.
 - b. Performs field sanitation and personal hygiene.
 - c. Emplaces detection equipment properly.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon assumes MOPP Level 4 within 8 minutes, using the buddy system and completes the mission IAW OPORD.

TASK: 10E.4.5 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Automatic alarm sounds. Detector paper changes color.
Automatic masking event occurs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon takes action.
 - a. Stops breathing.
 - b. Puts on mask with hood.
 - c. Clears and checks mask. (Do not fasten the hood. Go immediately to the next step.)
 - d. Gives the alarm.
 - e. Takes cover.
 - f. Puts on gloves with liners.
 - g. Zips and fastens overgarment jacket.
 - h. Secures the hood, and then secures the overgarment to increase protection.
 - i. Puts on overboots.
 - j. Reports presence of standard and Warsaw Pact markers to supervisors, if present.
- .2 ____ Section leaders ensure Marines do no transfer contamination to interior of shelter.
 - a. Ensure entry and exit only when mission essential.
 - b. Ensure entry and exit procedures are conducted IAW unit SOP.
 - c. Periodically monitor interior air with M256 detector kit.
 - d. Implement MOPP level 3 or MOPP Level 4 if persistent agents are used.
 - a. Ensure contaminated items are not stowed inside collective protection shelter.
- .3 ____ Platoon decontaminates skin, if required.
 - a. Mask.
 - b. Removes one decon 1 wipe packet.
 - c. Folds decon 1 wipe at the solid line marked "BEND," and then unfolds it.
 - d. Tears packet open at the notch, removes the wipe, and fully opens the wipe.
 - e. Wipes skin for 1 minute.
 - f. Drops decon 1 wipe to the ground.
 - g. Crushes the enclosed glass ampules in decon 2 wipe packet.
 - h. Folds the packet on the solid Line marked "CRUSH AND BEND," and then unfolds it.
 - i. Tears packet open at the notch, and removes the wipe.
 - j. Fully opens the wipe. Lets the encased crushed glass ampules fall to the ground.
 - k. Wipes skin with the decon 2 wipe for 2 to 3 minutes.
- .4 ____ Platoon reorganizes.
 - a. Reestablishes chain of command and communications.

- b. Receives squad, team, and crew status, consolidates, and passes to higher headquarters.
 - c. Identifies, treats, prepares, and evacuates casualties. Decontaminates killed in action (KIA) before medical evacuation.
 - d. Wraps, marks, and evacuates KIA to designated collection point.
 - e. Resumes mission.
- .5 ____ Platoon commander provides NBC reports.
- a. Submits initial NBC 1 report (chemical).
 - b. Identifies type of agent.
 - c. Submits subsequent NBC 1 report (chemical) within 20 minutes after the attack.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander initiates unmasking procedures with a chemical agent detection kit.
- a. Chemical agent detection kit indicates negative results. Selects two or three individuals for the start of unmasking procedures.
 - b. Moves the selected individuals into a shady area to prevent false diagnosis.
 - c. Tells selected individuals to unmask for 5 minutes and to reseal and clear masks.
 - d. Observes for 10 minutes.
 - e. If no symptoms are present after 10 minutes, gives the "ALL CLEAR."
- .7 ____ Platoon commander initiates unmasking procedures without a chemical agent detector kit.
- a. Uses a shady area, if available.
 - b. Selects two or three individuals to take a deep breath, hold it, break the seal of their masks, and keep their eyes wide open for 15 seconds.
 - c. Have individuals clear and reseal their masks. Observes individuals for 10 minutes.
 - d. If no symptoms occur after 10 minutes, have the same individuals again break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, clear, and reseal their masks.
 - e. Individuals should unmask again for 5 minutes, reseal and clear masks, and be observed for 10 minutes in a shady area.
 - f. If no symptoms appear in 10 minutes, asks permission from higher headquarters to unmask all personnel and give the "ALL CLEAR."
 - g. The remainder of the group unmask.
- .8 ____ Platoon commander replenishes chemical defense equipment and supplies.
- a. Requests replacement supplies.
 - b. Ensures replacement supplies are distributed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon masks within 15 seconds of chemical agent alarm. MOPP level 4 is reached within 8 minutes. Starts chemical survey of area and reports all information to higher headquarters.

TASK: 10E.4.6 PERFORM CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Persistent agent attack has occurred, or contamination has been picked up from crossing a contaminated area. Support battalion provides replacement overgarments, one 5-gallon container of supertropical bleach (STB) per squad, and one long-handled brush for every two individuals. Individual survival decontamination is completed. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon conducts decontamination.
 - a. Skin decontamination must be accomplished within 1 minute after the attack.
 - b. Conducts personal wipe down and operator's spraydown within 15 minutes.
 - c. Decontaminates only what is necessary.

- .2 ____ Platoon commander selects a squad and conducts MOPP gear exchange along with squad.
 - a. Decontaminates gear. Both Marines perform individually.
 - b. Decontaminates hood. Buddy assists Marine.
 - c. Removes overgarment. Buddy assist Marine.
 - d. Removes overboots and gloves. Buddy assists Marine.
 - e. Puts on overgarment. Buddy assists Marine.
 - f. Puts on overboots and gloves. Buddy assists Marine.
 - g. Secures hood. Buddy assists Marine.
 - h. Secures gear. Both Marines perform this.
 - i. Completes steps a through 1 in sequence.

- .3 ____ Platoon resumes mission.
 - a. Continues assigned operation mission.
 - b. Continues to monitor NBC situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Platoon must perform decontamination actions within 15 minutes of directed actions. The platoon is decontaminated and resumes its mission without spreading contamination. No Marines in the platoon become chemical casualties.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10E.4.7 CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): Time and the mission dictate a contaminated area cannot be bypassed without unacceptably delaying the unit. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander selects a route.
 - a. Uses NBC 5 (chemical) report and/or recon reports to select a route.
 - b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission.
 - c. Obtains route clearance and approval.
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for crossing the area.
 - a. Platoon commander directs MOPP Level 4 for crossing the area.
 - b. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders know route of march and/or have strip maps.
 - c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up (mounted movement).
 - d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material.
 - e. Attached M9 detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.
- .3 ____ Platoon crosses the area.
 - a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.
 - b. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible (if necessary).
 - c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible.
- .4 ____ Platoon exits the contaminated area.
 - a. Checks for casualties.
 - b. Conducts necessary decontamination.
 - c. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon uses the best available route in accordance with METT-TSL and moves as quickly as possible through the area. No Marines in the platoon become chemical casualties.

TASK: 10E.4.8 CROSS A RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives orders to prepare for crossing a contaminated area. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon prepares for crossing.
- a. Identifies extra shielding requirements and takes action to provide necessary items (such as using sandbags on the floor).
 - b. Places externally stored equipment inside, or covers it with available material.
 - c. Directs individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to wear a protective mask or cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags.
 - d. Establishes OEG and ensures all leaders and radiac equipment operators know it.
 - e. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, leaders, and radiac equipment operators are aware that the crossing is about to take place.
 - f. Checks radiac instruments.
 - g. Starts continuous monitoring.

- .2 ____ Platoon crosses the area.
- a. Avoids stirring up dust.
 - b. Keeps out of dust cloud to greatest extent possible by increasing the internal or lateral dispersion between vehicles.
 - c. Conducts mounted movement buttoned-up to the greatest extent provided by each vehicle and weapon system.
 - d. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible.

- .3 ____ Platoon exits the contaminated area.
- a. Performs hasty radiological decontamination if mission permits.
 - b. Performs deliberate radiological decontamination if mission permits.
 - c. Arranges and plans for decontamination if mission does not permit.
 - d. Records radiation dose reading.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon crosses a contaminated area, by shortest route possible, without receiving radiation casualties or spreading contamination. No Marines become casualties as a result of crossing the contaminated area.